HISTORY FORM ONE TOPIC 1:

SOURCES AND IMPORTANCE OF HISTORY

Meaning of history

History is the study of man and his activities in different times. These activities enable man to obtain his needs. Man's basic needs are food, cloths, and shelter

In general, history can also refer to an academic discipline, which uses a narrative to examine and analyze the sequences of past events, and objectively determine the patterns of cause and effect that determine them. It is the record of human activities, which enable man to survival and attain essential needs from the environment.

IMPORTANCE OF STUDYING HISTORY.

1. Understand how African societies were formed, how they developed and the factors that influenced this development.
2. It also allows us to develop an understanding of the events, conditions and factors that shaped the past and those, which have shaped the present conditions of the world in order to predict the future.
3. Historical knowledge makes the present comprehensive, which is why journalists and writers of sensational stories spend some time explaining the history of a particular incident; it is only when one knows the past of a person or an incident that the present can became meaningful.
4. Develop an understanding and appreciation of the cultural, political, economic and technological advancements made by African societies before and after colonial rulers.
5. Develop the basic skills of critical thinking, reasoning, judgment, empathy and effective participation in human developmental activities.
6. Studying history also helps us to understand and appreciate the efforts made and strategies used by African people to regain their independence and resist neo-colonialism
7. Develop, understand and appreciation the need for African unity, cooperation and interdependence, conflict resolution and effective participation in social, economic and political development of Africa.
8. It also helps us to develop an understanding of the relationships between African's development problems and foreign intrusion, colonial domination, cultural subjugation and economic exploitation at various stages in history.
9. -Acquire knowledge for its own sake as you enjoy a novel with fiction, a film with an interesting plot. It is not clear why people are interested in these ventures and in the same way, people do enjoy to know the history of particular topics.
10. Develop our patriotism, history students know their heroes and heroes and traitors. This makes history a sensitive subject in places where political leaders are not sure of their legitimacy.

11. Enlightens people about the advantages of certain economic practices for example, the way the development in the world today is measured by the industrial revolution that took place in Europe in 1750.

12. Understand the level of development at different stages of human development. Without history, it is very difficult to determine or to tell what humans were doing in the past.

13. Helps us learn about technological transformations, for example primitive livelihood to advanced livelihood (using of stones and wood tools to iron tools)

14. Understand how humans adapted to their environment and how the struggled to earn a living from the environment. This therefore looks at the long struggle of man by exercises of his reason -to understand the environment and to act up on it.

15. Understand the relationship that existed between humans, and between humans and the environment.

16. Acquire skills in historical issues and becoming professionals in history, some people such as archaeologists and historians study history for career purposes.

SOURCES OF HISTORY

Refers to the avenues that can be used to get historical information. It requires inter-disciplinary Sources of history approach in order to get the actual historical information.

Therefore, the following are sources of history/historical knowledge:

a) Oral tradition
b) Historical sites
c) Written records/documents
d) Archives
e) Museums
f) Archeology
g) Audio- visual record, e.g. Cassets, Cd's, and TV programs etc.
h) Anthropology
i) Linguistics

1. ORAL TRADITION:

This involves the passing information by word of mouth through talking and listening. Oral tradition passes historical information into two ways

a) Through culture practices like art, music, religion, riddles, songs, proverbs, superstition, poems and stories.
b) Narration of past events.

FUNCTION OF ORAL TRADITION

- It preserves historical information of society
- I t collects and pass historical information between generations in the society.
- It helps researchers in data collection.

ADVANTAGES OF ORAL TRADITION

- It preserve and reveal historical information which are not recorded
- Both illiterate and literate people can obtain historical information.
- Within oral tradition, there are warning and teachings.

- Is the easiest and cheapest method of obtaining information?
- It is live source, since it involves physical interaction.

DISADVANTAGES OF ORAL TRADITION

1. It needs much attention and power of memory
2. False information can be given by storyteller.
3. Narration of historical events are centered to those people of status i.e. Kings, Queens, Chief. White talking little about common society.
4. There is a language problem when narrator uses vernacular language.
5. It is difficult to distinguish what is real and what is imaginary information.
6. Translation is very difficult because some languages are no longer in existence.

3. HISTORICAL SITES: Are special places where by the past human remains can be found and shown to the public. It is a place where the remains of once lived human in the past can be found.

1. They comprise man's physical development, tools that were made and used from time to time.
2. In these areas we find /see past human products and animal bones.

Examples of historical sites **in Tanzania** include Isimila, Olduvai George, Kondoa Irangi, Bagamoyo, Zanzibar, Kilwa, Mafia, Engaruka, Kagera etc

In Uganda Nsongezi, Biggo, Ntubi, Rusinga Island, Magosi and Ishago.

In Kenya. Lake Rudolf (Turkana), Lake Naivasha, Njoro, Olongesailie, Lake Magadi, Lamu, Mombasa and mt. Kenya

FUNCTIONS OF HISTORICAL SITES

(a) Preserves historical information for the coming generations.
(b) They are useful sources of information and to reconstruct history.
(c) They are the symbols of social cultural heritage to the society concern past human tools, rock, paints etc

DISADVANTAGES OF HISTORICAL SITES

1. They help for practical historical learning e.g. through observation of past human tools, rock, paints.
2. Used to reveal past settlement patterns, levels of technology, economic development of political organization reached by the past societies.
3. Acts as centers of tourism.
4. They helps in transforming theoretical teaching of history to practical historical learning.
5. It acts as the resource centers to researchers.
6. It provides employment opportunities e.g.: guiders

DISADVANTAGES OF HISTORICAL SITES

(i) It brings confusion to interpret the remains found in historical sites
(ii) Many of historical sites are found on remote areas hence difficult for many people to visit them.

3. ARCHAEOLOGY: *This refers to the scientific study of past human remain.*

It is the study of material remains of man's past through scientific methods. The one specializes in archeology is called *ARCHAEOLOGIST.* Archaeology involves excavations (digging) of the remains of man's past historical sites and interpretation.

The famous archaeologist in East Africa was Dr. Louis Leaky with his wife Mary Leakey

Archaeology involves the use of carbon 14 dating to determine plants and animal remains.

FUNCTIONS OF ARCHAEOLOGY

(a) Gives important information about man through different stages.
(b) It is a useful method of revealing soil covered historical remains.
(c) It arouse curiosity of searching past man historical information.

ADVANTAGES OF ARCHAEOLOGY

(a) It helps people to know when and how people lived in a certain place.
(b) Past objects tell us about the life and culture of past people.
(c) It helps us to know and reveal the technology, pastoral, agricultural and commercial activities of the past man.
(d) Through excavation, we get knowledge of artifacts e.g. Pottery, building etc.
(e) It reveals religious beliefs of the past man
(f) We can **compliment** other sources of information through archaeology e.g. History
(g) We can know the past relationship between different people such as trading activities, migration, marriage, birth, death and political relation.

DISADVANTAGES OF ARCHAEOLOGY

· It consumes time because of excavation.
· It cannot reveal the past people's language.
· It cannot give out the out reasons for historical events such as wars.
· It needs full experts and advanced technology.
· Poorly interpreted remains can bring false information
- It cannot tell anything about the past social organization

4. ARCHIVES: These are places where collection of public and private documents and old record are preserved. These documents includes personal letters, early travelers and missionary records, traders writings, personal and government files, political parties documents, etc.

FUNCTIONS OF ARCHIVES

- Archives preserve public and private records that have enduring value to the society.
- The public makes the records in archives available for use.
- However not all records can be viewed by everyone.
- Archives collect records of enduring value from various places. For example, the nation archives have records from different regions of the country.
- The archives staff maintains registers of the record in the archives.
- Archives have facilities for restoring damaged documents of enduring value.
- Archives have facilities for restoring damaged documents of enduring value.
- The historical information in the archives ensures continuity. For example, company policies from previous years can still guide the employee today.

ADVANTAGES OF ARCHIVES

- Easy to identify ideas and literacy level of the past man.
- It is easy to identify the exact date of historical event.
- It used to store historical information.
- Easy to get historical information from different places and different people.

DISADVANTAGES OF ARCHIVES

- It may lead false information, if author is biased.
- Illiterate people cannot get historical information.
- It is not easy to get information of society whose information is not documented.
- It is difficult to get remote information from archives.
- It is non renewable once disrupted either by wind or o

5. **MUSEUMS**: These are places or buildings where information and objects are preserved it involves all terms, which shows culture, political economic and technological development from the past to the present. Objects can be early coins, clothes, and mineral cowries, religious and ceremonial symbols. Museum can be national, Regional, District and village. e.g. National Museums in Dar es Salaam, Bagamoyo, Butiama, Kalenga Iringa.

FUNCTIONS OF MUSEUMS

- Preserve historical documents and objects.
- Shows concrete remains of objects.
- It is the place for tourist and study tour.
- It is the center for cultural and national identity.

ADVANTAGES OF MUSEUMS

- It preserves objects, which are used as the teaching aids.
- Museum preserves culture and national identity.
- It used by researcher (source of information)
- It acts as tourist center.
- People learn about technological development.
- Enable learners to arouse creativity.

DISADVANTAGES OF MUSEUMS.

- It needs knowledgeable people.
- It is possible to distort information through biases by the museum attendant.
- Poor preservation of the past items e.g. coins, pieces of cloth, slaves chain can distort information.
- It needs extensive care to maintain its beauty or origin.

6. **WRITTEN RECORDS**: Are the documents, which comprise written historical information. This includes books, letters, maps, magazines, journal, newspaper, minutes of meetings and conferences. Written records can be found in libraries, schools, colleges, universities, internet cafes, offices etc.

FUNCTIONS OF WRITTEN RECORDS

- Written records provide pictures of society.
- These records reflect public opinion at the time of writing. For example, the letter to the editor in newspaper expresses the readers' feelings on current issues.
- Written records serve as stores of a large variety of information, including discoveries, government policies, statements, religious beliefs, fashion, speeches and agreement.
- In-depth reports of daily events are kept as written records. For example in a diary, newspaper or biography.

ADVANTAGES OF WRITTEN RECORDS.

· It is easy to get information.

- Easy to make references
- It is helpful in doing researches.
- They can be kept for long time.

DISADVANTAGES OF WITTEN RECORDS

- ❖ It can give false information if they are biased by the author
- ❖ It is difficult to read everything from written records
- ❖ They are subject to be badly written.
- ❖ Illiterate people cannot get information.

7. **LINGUISTICS:** Is scientific study and analysis of language. It includes study of sound, structure, information and relationship between various language groups.

ADVANTAGES OF LINGUISTICS

- ❖ It helps to get information from various sources.
- ❖ Enables to discover links between different people.
- ❖ It helps to determine dates f historical event e.g. "Aluta continua" (Period of struggle for independence in Mozambique)

LIMITATIONS OF LINGUISTICS

- ❖ It consumes time and finance learning a particular language
- ❖ Through translation, one can commit some important work.
- ❖ The present language may be corrupted.

8. **ANTHROPOLOGY:** Is the study of the society's cultural systems, beliefs, ideas etc. The study can give important information about movements, settlements and production activities of the past.

DATING HISTORICAL EVENTS

Historians usually divide time into several categories, namely

- Day – is a duration of twenty four hours (24hrs)
- A week – is a duration of seven days (7days)
- Month – is the duration of four weeks (4 weeks)
- A year – is a duration of twelve months (12 moths)
- A decade – is a duration of ten years (10 yrs)
- A century – is the duration of one hundred years (100 yrs)
- A millennium – is the duration of thousand years (1000 yrs)
- A generation – is the average differences on ages between a child and his/her parent.
- Age – is the period based on ma's economic activities and type of tools used e.g. stone age, iron age, industrial age, science and technology age, etc.
- A period – is determined by one continuous event lasting for number of years

E.g. Period of slave trade in East Africa
Period of long distance trade
Period of colonial rule in Africa

Some points has chosen in order to divide time

- Year ZERO – present the year when Jesus Christ was born

It is known as Anno Domino (A.D) meaning the year of the Lord

- All years before zero are called (B.C) meaning (Before Christ)

HOW TO DETERMINE DATES

Dates are instrument in a science of history; these historians divided dates into four ways;

1. **Recalling events: -** here important events are recalled/remembered e.g. drought, farming, floods, birth, eruption of diseases etc.
2. **by studying languages: -** Some names helps people to remember dates of some events. E.g., Word "Karafuu" started when Cloves were introduced in Zanzibar.
3. **Carbon 14** is a scientific method of determining dates. It used in the finding dates for remains of animals or plants, which died beyond 5000 years ago. Carbon 14 is a gas found in carbon dioxide, which exists in the atmosphere. It absorbed by plant and other living organisms. When died carbon 14 that starts to decay at a fixed rate from the time of death.
4. **Orders of events:** ways showing order of events, period and ages, among them are-

- Time graph
- Time chart
- Time line
- Family tree

S/N	PERIOD A.D	EVENTS
1	1884-1885	The Britain Conference
2	1914-1918	The first World war period
3	1939-1945	The second world war period
4	1961	Tanganyika become independent
5	1962	Tanganyika became republic
6	1992	Introduction of multipart's in Tanzania.

FORM ONE TOPIC 2:

EVOLUTION OF MAN, TECHNOLOGY AND ENVIRONMENT

Evolution of Man Is the gradual changes development of plants and animals from a simple form to a -more complex form. This change leads to existence of plants and animals that are different from the -original plants and animals.

THE THEORY OF EVOLUTION OF MAN.

The theory of evolution tries to explain the origin of man by describing the changes that our ancestors underwent until they were like modern man. There are two theories, which attempt to explain the origin of man.

1st THEORY OF CREATION. This theory explains that there is super natural power that creates everything. This super natural power is God. Refer from the Holy Bible and Qur'an e.g. from Biblical knowledge (Genesis chapter 1:26) it says that: - God created man by using soil; at first, they created a man and then later a woman. These two creatures established their relationship and this marked the beginning of human family.

2nd THE THEORY OF EVOLUTION OF MAN: an English man known as Charles Darwin (1809 – 1882) proposed the theory of evolution of man.

The theory says that: - man's species has been changing gradually from lower stage to better stage due to environment. Changing goes hand in hand with improvement of methods of obtaining food, cloth and shelter. The gradual change of man is called evolution. The first man belongs to the family of **primates** that included Ape, Gorilla, Monkey and Chimpanzee. These animals lived in the forest walking on four limbs and their bodies covered with hair. Because of environmental changes and diminishing of forests, they started to live in open grassland. Environment forced them to adopt new way of walking. The forelimbs instead of walking become special for tool making and using. Forelimbs become free from walking. The walking is known as Bi – pedalism

STAGES OF MAN'S EVOLUTION

1. PRIMATES (Ape, Gorilla, Monkey, Chimpanzee)

Characteristics

- Their bodies were covered wit-h lots of hair.
- They walked on four limbs
- They lived in dense forest.
- They had poorly mental abilities.
- They totally depended on nature e.g. ate raw food

2. AUSTRALOPITHECUS AFRICAN FAMILY. This stage started about 12million years ago (B.C) when primates changed to near man. This stage is divided into two; Zinjanthropus and Homo habilis

Zinjanthropus

In this stage:

1. Fore limbs were free from walking.
2. Hind limbs were used for standing and body balance.
3. Man started to design, make and use tools.
4. Man becomes skillful.

Homo habilis

- It lived between 1,500,000 and 750,000 BC.
- Homohabilis become more skillful man, because was systematic tools maker.
- Homohabilis believed to be the direct ancestor of modern man.
- He had bigger brain and he was more systematic toolmaker.
- The skull of those creatures was discovered at Olduvai Gorge and in Eastern and Rudolf in Kenya.

3. HOMO ERECTUS. During this stage, man was fully moving upright. He becomes more skillful tools maker than Homo habilis. Its fossils have been dug up in Olorgesaille and near Lake Turkana in the Kenya, Olduvai Gorge in Tanzania.

4. HOMO SAPIENS
its characteristics

- He is a true man of today
- Has a large brain in size
- Has less thick jaws
- He was highly skillful man
- He made tools by using stones and bones.

NB: Archaeologist Dr. Leakey in Olduvai Gorge has supported the theory of evolution in 1959
Basic characteristics of human evolution.

(i) Development of man's ability to design make and use tools.
(ii) Ability of man to walk on two limbs. (Bi-pedalism)
(iii) Ability of man to think.
(iv) Ability of man to domesticate plants and animals.

5. HOMO SAPIENS SAPIENS. Homo sapiens is a modern man. Homo sapiens are believed to have evolved into Homo sapiens sapiens about 50,000 years ago. This man has a large brain and great intelligence.

DEVELOPMENT OF STONE AGE.

Stone Age: This is historical period in which man made and used stone tools. Is a period based on man's economic activities and type of the tools used. e.g., Stone Age, Iron Age, Science technology age etc.
Stone Age is divided into three ages;

(a) Early or Old Stone Age.
(b) Middle Stone Age
(c) (c) Late or new Stone Age

THEEARLY OR OLD STONE AGE: This is the first period of Stone Age. It existed between 1,750,000 B.C and 750,000 B.C.
Zinjanthropus was the only man existed in this period. The early stone tools were pebbles and chopping. Man used these tools for killing and skinning animal flesh, digging up roots, cutting tree branches, and for defense. Man obtained his food by hunting and gathering. In this period, man had low ability to control his environment.

THE CHARACTERISTICS OF EARLY OR OLD STONE AGE
In East Africa Stone Age sites are found at Olorgasaille, Nsongezi and Olduvai.
1. Man lived primitive life depending on nature.
2. Man made and used crude (poor) tools.

3. Man lived by hunting and gathering.
4. Man ate raw food i.e. meat
5. Man walked up right.
6. Man lived in caves.
7. Man did not wear clothes.

THE MIDDLE STONE AGE. This stage covered the period between 750,000BC to 50,000 BC. This period man improved his stone tools. Tools were -smaller, sharper and easier to handle. Tools used during this period were spear, Arrows, Needles, Stone picks, Knives etc. These tools were used for; digging up roots, killing and skinning animals, cuttings & chopping.

THE DISCOVERY OF FIRE. Man who was scratching pieces of wood using his hands discovered fire. The more he continued scratching, the pieces of wood got heat the smoke come out, the scratch caused friction of scratched wood and led to emission of fire.

IMPORTANCE/EFFECTS OF FIRE TO MAN DURING THE MIDDLE STONE AGE

The following were the effects resulted after the discovery of fire during the Middle Stone Age

- Man started to eat roasted food i.e. meat
- Man started to live in cold areas.
- Man used fire to clean bushes
- Man used fire to provide light at night.
- Fire used to kill small animals e.g. rabbit
- With fireman increased working hours.
- Man use fire to attract prey.
- Man used fire for defense from dangerous animals like lion.

THE LATE STONE AGE (NEW STONE AGE). In East Africa, late Stone Age started from around 50,000 BC to the first millennium AD. In this stage, man used better tools compared to the previous stone ages. Tools become sharper and smaller.

Tools were stone exes, blades, spears, arrows, etc. Man started permanent settlement. The tools were still largely made of stone but they were far better than those of earlier periods were.
This period marked the beginning of settled communities. In areas such as Kondoa Irangi, paintings and drawings in the carves proved this fact. The paintings and drawings show the shape of tools used and animal hunted.

Characteristics of the late stone age.
1. Man used better tools compare to the previous ages.
2. Man started to domesticated plant and animal.
3. Man became food producer.
4. Increase of population.
5. It was beginning of settled communities and villages.
6. This period marked to be primarily on division of labor.

Example: women become child bearers and cares while man for protecting the families and hunting
Informal education started in this period.

THE IRON AGE. Iron Age is believed to have started during the 1st millennium A.D. This was the period when manmade and used Iron tools. The discovery and use of iron improved man's standard of living. Iron tools were discovered about 3000 years ago.

The first people to make and use iron tools in Africa were the people of Ethiopia and Egypt. Iron skills and knowledge were not uniform or the same in Africa.

Famous iron Sites

The first important towns for iron smelting were Meroe in Sudan, Axum in Ethiopia, and Nok area in West Africa. In East Africa, it is believed that man started to use iron from the first millennium A.D e.g. Iron discovered earlier in Engaruka, Uvinza, Karagwe, Ugweno and Western shores of Lake Victoria. Iron tools included iron spears, arrows, Axes, Hoes etc also, Iron technology helped early African societies to produce and use iron tools as well as to produce better weapons for defense.

THE RESULT/EFFECTS/ IMPACTS OF USING IRON TOOLS

The discovery of iron tools in East Africa led to the following effects;

- It led to increase in food production. Man could now clear his areas for cultivation.
- Increase in population due to more food.
- There was emergence of specialization i.e. Iron workers (black smiths) and food producers.
- It led to the emergence of complex villages / development of political organization as kingdom and states.
- Tools were highly improved and more efficient,
- It led to the improvement of security due to better weapons like arrows, spears and pangas
- It resulted to the development of trading activities due to surplus production

TOPIC THREE

DEVELOPMENT OF ECONOMIC ACTIVITIES AND THEIR IMPACT

HANDCRAFT INDUSTRIES AND MINING IN PRE-COLONIAL AFRICA.
Handcraft industries: Man used hands and skills to produce tools and weapons of these industries.
Industries-Is the place where raw materials are processed into finished goods e.g. cotton-cloth

Specialized handcraft industries in Africa.
Salt making industries; iron working; copper mining; gold mining; pottery making; spinning and weaving industries; bark – cloth industries; canoe making industries

1. Salt making industries: These are industries, which engaged in production of soil in pre-colonial Africa.
Methods of obtaining salt

- **Obtaining salt from different reeds**: Reeds were collected, dried and burned, the ashes would be filtered while the ashes remain liquid would be evaporated and residue would be used as salt.
  Places: - Near Lake Victoria, Kyoga, and Albert, among Buganda and Bahaya tribes and among Mang'anja people near shores of Lake Nyasa.

- **Obtaining salt by boiling and evaporating method**. Sea or ocean water put into pans and left to evaporate, the salt crystals would be collected and used as salt.
  Places: around coastal areas.

- **Obtaining salt by mining under neath rocks**. Places: At Taghaza, Bilma around Lake Chad in western Sudan. Near lake Bangwela and river Luapala in central Africa.

- **Obtaining salt using water by fire.** Spring water containing salt was boiled and finally salt was obtained. Places with salt; in uvinza salt spring along river malagarasi in central Africa.

TRADE IN THE PRE-COLONIAL AFRICA: Trade is the process of buying and selling of goods and services between people. There was need to trade in order to get all things needed by the communities. Trade tends to develop in any society where there is surplus production.

LOCAL TRADE. Refers to the kind of trade, which is conducted within the same geographical area. In local trade, goods are exchanged between people living in the same geographical area, such as a town or village. Local trade was not for profit making but just to obtain essential goods. i.e. pastoral communities like the Maasai needed vegetables and grains from cultivators like the Nyakyusa and the Chaga.
Impacts of local trade.
1. Local trade united people within the same area.
2. Communities obtained goods such as tools, weapons, foodstuffs and medical herbs.
3. Transport routes were improved.
4. Some important market centers emerged along the market routes.
5. Local trade encouraged communities to expand production.

REGIONAL TRADE. Regional trade refers to trade conducted from one region to another (Trade conducted between two different geographical regions). Regional trade involved a wider variety of goods compared to local trade. It was not for profit making. For example, regional trade was Trans Sahara trade, Long distance trade of East Africa and Central Africa. Regional trade in the pre-colonial Africa took place in 19th century.

THE KAMBA. The Kamba were leading the long distance trade through northern route in the 19th century. They Kamba caravan brought ivory, guns, hides and beeswax from the interior. From the Coast they obtained cloth, salt, copper, cowrie's shells and jewellery.

THE YAO. The Yao traders got beads and cloth from Kilwa. They also captured and sold slaves from

neighboring communities, Yao chiefs such as Mpanda, Mataka, Machemba and Mtalika dominated the Southern route during the long distance trade.

THE NYAMWEZI. The Nyamwezi dominated the central route conducted trade between the interior of Tanganyika and the coast. The Nyamwezi sold slaves and ivory, hide rhinoceros horn..

Impacts/ effects of regional trade.

Positive consequences/impacts.

- Some traders became very rich. e.g. Mirambo and Isike.
- The communities were able to obtain new commodities e.g. guns, clothes, beads, ivory, etc.
- The rise of trade centers such as Saadans, Pangani, Bagamoyo, Tabora, Ujiji, Voi, and Taveta.
- The rise of trade routes.
- The rise of powerful Empires/Kingdoms such as Nyamwezi.
- New food crops such as maize, rice and cassava were introduced.
- Spread of Islam by the Arabs to the interior Tabora and Ujiji.

Negative impacts.

- The rise of inter-tribal wars in Oder to get slaves.
- Many elephants were killed, as there was high demand of Ivory.
- It led to depopulation and under development in some areas.
- Slave raids caused insecurity and loss of innocent lives.
- Foreigners used trade routes to reach to the interior.
- Exploitation of African wealth by Europeans and Asians.
- Decline of local industries in Africa.

LONG DISTANCE TRADE. Long distance trade was the trade carried out long distance as people/traders had to move for long distance going on exchanging goods with other societies and the major aim was to get profit for example a salt traders was exchanged salt foe hoes not because he wanted to use hoes but he wanted re sell them at a profit later.

TRANS SAHARAN TRADE: Trans Sahara trade was the trade conducted across the Sahara desert. It involved the people of Northern Africa and the people of Western Sudan. This trade started long time ago between 3000BC to 2000BC. It became important in the 1st century AD after the people of West Africa to discover the use of camel and led to formation of many trade routes. The Trans Saharan trade was known as dumb trade because there was no common language, which was used. People who involved in the trade; ***West Africa; North Africa and Savannah Region.***

MOVEMENT OF TRADERS.

People (traders) organized themselves in groups known as CARAVANS

Goods involved in the trade

Kola nuts, gold, salt, foodstuffs, Ivory, clothes, gold, bee-wax, slaves and ostrich feathers goods from West. In addition, from North Africa salt and animal skin. Goods from Europe and Asia were cotton and silk cloth, swords, guns, metal pans, horses and Arabic books.

Trade routes:

(a) Western route- From Sijilmasa, Fez in Morocco passed through Taghaza, Taodeni, Walata, Audaghost, and Kumbi Saleh to Timbuktu.

(b) Central route- This passed Tunis, Ghat, Ghamese, Kano, GAO and Hausa land.

(c) Eastern route- This began in Tripoli, Marzul and Bilma.

FACTORS THAT LED TO THE GROWTH OF THE TRANS-SAHARAN TRADE

The following are some of the factors that contributed to the growth of the Trans Saharan trade:

- Stability of the communities: Both North African and Western Sudan zone were politically stable. For example, leaders like Sundiata Keita and Mansa Musa collected taxes and established guides on trade routes. This enabled the people to conduct trade without fear. Up to the end of the 15th century AD, many traders were motivated to come to Western Sudan for trade.
- Western Sudan provided goods needed by traders from Europe. These goods included gold, ivory and slaves. Through trading Western Sudan exchanged her own commodities with goods from Western Europe and Asia. In turn, she got clothes, guns and other commodities. The surplus production in Western Sudan was adequate to sustain demand for products such as kolanuts and gold, hides, ivory slaves, whereas Taghaza produced enough salt to meet the needs in Western Sudan. The high production capacity in the region enhanced the growth of the Trans Saharan trade.
- Honesty: The Berbers of North Africa and the African traders of Western Africa trusted each other. Traders brought in commodities without fear of theft and robbery, enabling the trade to flourish.
- The use of camels for transport suited the desert conditions and facilitated the development of the Trans-Saharan trade. These animals could not only carry more commodities than horses and human porters, but also endured desert conditions. Camels can survive without water for a longtime. This convenient means of transport strengthened the development of the Trans-Saharan trade.
- Geographical location of the region: The location and climate favored the production of kola nuts and other foodstuffs that were needed in the community, especially the forest region to the south. The region of Western Sudan had no impassable forests because many areas were covered by short grassland. This enabled traders to cross the desert without fear or any difficulty.
- The invention of a medium of exchange contributed to the growth of the Trans Saharan trade. At the beginning, only the silent barter system of trade was practiced. Later on, cowrie shells were introduced as a convenient medium of exchange. This in turn facilitated the development of the Trans-Saharan trade.
- From the northern part, the Berbers provided capital to many traders who used to cross the Sahara desert.
- Removal of language barrier: This was attained after Arabic language became the trader's medium of communication. This in turn facilitated the trade by making communication between the traders easy.
- Absence of competition for trading activities in the region: There were no regular ships that visited the coast of West Africa. As a result, what was produced from the forest zone was peacefully transported to North Africa through the Saharan desert.
- Scarcity of commodities like gold and salt.
- Introduction of horses, which were used in conquest and expansion.

EFFECTS OF THE TRANS SAHARAN TRADE IN AFRICA.

1. It led to the growth of empires like Ghana, Mali etc
2. It increased development of Agriculture.
3. It led to the introduction of Arabic Islamic religion cultures.
4. Formation of mixed races example half cast
5. Growth of town and cities e.g. Jenne, Timbuktu, GAO and Walata.

THE DECLINE OF THE TRANS-SAHARAN TRADE

By the second half of the nineteenth century, the volume of Trans-Saharan trade started to decline. A number of obstacles or problems have been identified to explain the decline. These are:-

- ❖ Strong desert winds: The traders could not withstand the hazards of sand storms. Many abandoned the trade as a result.
- ❖ Traders faced the danger of getting lost in the desert because the routes were not clear. Once traders

got lost, they would wander in the desert for a long time and eventually die of thirst and starvation.

- ❖ Desert robbers who made their living by stealing from trade caravans subjected traders to attacks. In the process, traders lost their lives and goods. This discouraged traders from participating effectively in the trade.
- ❖ The extreme climatic conditions were unfavorable to traders. The heat and high temperatures during the day and every low temperature at night due to the absence of cloud cover discouraged traders.
- ❖ Traders faced the danger of highly poisonous desert creatures whose bites could result in death. These included snakes and scorpions.
- ❖ Traders faced language difficulties. This hampered communication during trade. As such, "silent trade" had to be used initially.
- ❖ The development of the Trans-Atlantic rout across the Atlantic Ocean to Europe: commodities like ivory and slaves were transported quickly to the coast of West Africa from where they were transported to Europe. Thus, the trade routes shifted from the Saharan desert to the Atlantic. Instead of the direct route to the North, they went via the coast of West Africa.
- ❖ Commodities obtained from Western Sudan such as salt and gold faced competition from similar goods from other America cheaply. As result, the volume of Trans-Saharan trade decreased because Western Sudan could no longer claim a monopoly in production of certain commodities like salt and gold. In addition, gold from Zimbabwe via Sofala port by the Portuguese ended up in Europe.
- ❖ The abolition of slave trade contributed to the decline of the Trans-Saharan trade. Slaves were the main item of trade. When slave trade was abolished, trade started to decline.
- ❖ Shortage of water also led to the decline in trade. The oases in the Saharan desert provided water seasonally but they sometimes dried up. This made it difficult for the traders to cross the Saharan desert.
- ❖ Wars: The war in Morocco and the one between Christians and Muslims disrupted the smooth running of the trade. The Moroccan invasion of western Sudan in 1591 AD disturbed the growth of the trade by taking gold at Wangara.

  Finally, the Trans-Saharan trade collapsed in the 16th century. From this period onwards, West Africa witnessed the expansion of European occupation on the coast of West Africa.

TOPIC 4:

DEVELOPMENT OF SOCIAL AND POLITICAL SYSTEM

Before the coming of colonialist Africans, they had their own social and political system of administration, African administration system was interrupted after the interaction with colonialist in 19th century. Therefore, in this topic we explain Development of social and political system of Africa.

THE CLAN ORGANIZATION. Clan was the organization, which involved combination of several related families with a common ancestor. Clan organization combined with both the matrilineal and matrilineal societies. In the patrineal societies clan heritage was based on the father, in the matrilineal clan heritage was based on the mother examples of this society were Mweras, Kambas and Kikuyus whom others are patrineals. The main economic activity in the clan organization was agriculture. Clan is controlled or ruled by the clan's head. More examples of matrilineal societies; The Ngindo, Zaramo, Makua and Matumbi.

DUTIES OR FUNCTIONS OF THE CLAN HEAD

1. To distribute land to the communities or clan members.
2. To preserve traditions and customs of the clan.
3. To preserve land belonging to the clan.
4. To settle disputes and quarrels.
5. To find wives for boys and husbands for girls.

Types of clan organizations in agricultural societies.

There are two types of clan organizations in agricultural societies; *Matrilineal and Matrilineal*

Matrilineal clan organization: This is a society where by the husband moved to the wife's family and children of the new family belonged to the mother's (wife's clan). As a result, clan heritage was based on the mother's clan. Uncles have to make all the important decisions concerning the children and the nephews of their sisters. Matrilineal age in Africa was practiced among the Makonde, Makua, Mwera, the Yao of Tanzania, and the Kamba of Kenya.

Matrilineal clan organization societies: This is the system of organization in which the clan heritage was based on the father's line and all children bared the name of the father. The husband had to pay substantial bride price in different forms such as cattle, goats, etc in order to get the wife, the bride price could be stored as wealth, in this system all the children of the new family belonged to the father's clan.
By the 18^{th} and 19^{th} century clan system changed to chief train, ship after several came to be controlled under one leader.

AGE SET ORGANIZATION. This kind of socio-political organization based on age and sex. In order for one to fit in the society one was required to fulfill certain obligations. Often the main productive activity was based on the harsh environments. Such as arid grass land and semi arid, in these areas poor soil could not support agriculture economy but vegetation could be used for animal husbandry.

Age set organization was the determinant form of organization in pastoral societies. The best examples of these societies were the Maasai, Nyakyusa of East Africa, Hausa in West Africa and the Khoi Khoi of South Africa.

The division of responsibilities and duties was based on age and sex and was usually done during intuition ceremonies. Youth were taught special responsibilities. Age set covered a specific group of years for example;

a) **Children group** aged 0-8years were regarded as non-producers group. They were not directly involved in production.

b) **Youth group** 8-18 years their main responsibility was to graze animals, trading young animals and milking cattle they were assisted by women.

c) **Moran group** (people between youth and adults aged between 35yers) and above these were soldiers of the society and the main responsibilities of the Moran were as follows;

i. To protect the whole society as trained soldiers.
ii. To protect livestock against dangerous animals and raiders
iii. To increase the number of animals through raiding their neighbors
iv. To travel with their herds in search for water and pastures.

d) **Laibons** this is the group of elders aged 40years and above it consisted of elders who were divided in groups namely; junior elders and senior elders.

Responsibilities of elders:

- To control livestock and all the properties on behalf of their communities.
- To enable norms and ethics to govern the society.
- They were top overseers of all the spiritual and political matters of the community.
- They were responsible for counseling other members of the society.
- To settle disputes among the society members.
- They were regarded as retired producers of the society but their ideas and skills were highly appreciated.

STATE ORGANIZATION

State is a community occupying a certain given territory and living under full control of its government and therefore it is independent form of external control. State in East Africa mostly started to emerge in the 18th century AD due to the rapid spread of agricultural communities and improvement of science and technology. Clan which possessed a deliquate labor and land resources or had better skills of iron use became dominant clan and leader of the community or village; they were respected and obeyed by other clan members. Those who disagreed with them migrated to other lands. In this way leader of the dominant clan assumed political and spiritual or ritual functions. Kings and queens were state leaders. Village heads who were leaders of many clans in villages were under state of kings or queens also had their court to deal with judicial matters.

GENERAL FACTORS FOR STATE FORMATION.

a) Conquest- some powerful states conquered the weaker societies and therefore making them strong and expand. For example, Buganda conquered Bunyoro in the interlacustrine regions.
b) Trade-trade such as the Long distance trade enabled the society concerned to become strong and powerful after acquiring commodities of different types including weapons which were used for strengthening their societies. Buganda got guns from the East Coast to defend and expand. The empire of the Mali, Ghana and Songhai got metal and hoes from North Africa to strengthen their military.
c) Good climate and fertile soils (soil fertility) it led to the increase of food and assurance of feeding which led to population increase, a factor that was very important for the state formation. For instance heavy rainfall and fertile soil enabled production of more food and surplus in Buganda.
d) Good leadership- some African rulers were strong and ambitious to expand their empire so they organized their people and got support from them for example: Kabanga of Buganda.
e) Availability of iron- iron promoted agricultural products and was used for making war weapons, which in turn became most important for conquering other states.
f) Migration-this was a complimentary factor it happened that some people migrated to other states and brought with them new technology and skills which were used to expand and strengthen the new societies concerned.
g) Size of the kingdom- kingdoms that were small such as Buganda and Ghana were easier to organize, to administer effectively and to defend unlike the larger kingdoms like the Bunyoro; the effective control was impossible.

THE WESTERN SUDANIC STATES

The early states in western Sudan were established in the region between the Sahara desert and the forest region of the South. The most notable states are/were Ghana, Mali, Songhai and Karnem Bornu.

GENERAL FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF WESTERN SUDANIC STATES

1. Good geographical location
2. Iron technology
3. The growth of population
4. Development of local industries
5. Taxation
6. Trans - Saharan Trade
7. Availability of valuable goods e.g. Gold
8. Good centralized government
9. Capable leaders
10. Strong Army

GHANA EMPIRE. During its rise, Ghana had two main towns, one occupied by Muslims and the other by Pagans. The rulers and the people were Soninke speaking group. The word Ghana as the King title emerged in 5th AD. The capital center of administration was Kumbisalehe.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF THE GHANA EMPIRE

1. Agricultural activities
2. Availability of valuable goods e. g gold
3. Trans – Saharan trade in gold and salt
4. Good leadership and efficient system of government.
5. Common language.

FACTORS FOR THE DECLINE OF GHANA EMPIRE

1. Almoravids' constant attacks
2. Disunity among people
3. Jihad wars
4. Lack of stable system of royal successions
5. The rise of rural kingdoms e.g. Mali

MALI EMPIRE. Early in the 3rd C Ghana fell apart as a result of the war between Samangwa the king of Ghana and Prince Sundiata Keita the king of Kangaba. Ghana was defeated and Ghana fell Under Sundiata's rule. Sundiata formed a large kingdom known as Mali the capital was Niami and the title of the rulers was Mansa.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF THE MALI EMPIRE

1. The fall of Ghana empire
2. Control of gold fields of Bure
3. Strong army
4. Agricultural activities

5. Trans – Saharan trade
6. Strong leadership of Sundiata Keita and later Mansa Kan Kan Musa
7. Islamic faith which promoted libraries and Islamic universities
8. Political system in Mali

DECLINE OF THE MALI EMPIRE

1. Weak leadership after the death of Mansa Mahmud IV

2. Empire became too large to control

3. Lack of unity and the empire was divided into three spheres of influence and they fought against each other.
4. Attacks by Tuaregs
5. Civil wars
6. The rise of Songhai empire

SONGHAI EMPIRE. In the late 15th Century the Songhai Empire originally the Gao, conquered neighboring states under the leadership of Sunni Ali and formed the large empire of Songhai. Gao became its capital earlier on around the 11th C and remained the capital under the empire. Its famous leaders were Sunni Ali, Askia Mohamed and Askia Daud.

FACTORS FOR THE GROWTH OF SONGHAI EMPIRE

1. Agricultural activities
2. Strong army
3. Trans – Sahara trade

4. Good administration
5. Taxation
6. Islamic faith

DECLINE OF SONGHAI EMPIRE

1. Weak leadership after the death of Askia Daud
2. The Moroccan invasion
3. The empire was too large to control
4. Religious hostility between Islamic and traditional beliefs
5. The shift in orientation of trade towards the Atlantic following the introduction of the Trans-Atlantic Slave Trade.

FOREST STATES

THE BENIN EMPIRE. Benin Empire was a very small state with the Edo speaking people. The highest authority at the time where chiefs known as Ogiso which meant the 'Kings of the Sky' and the administrative centre was Ubinu. Between 1388 – 1431, there was a series of civil wars, which badly divided the Edo. After the death of the last Ogiso, his son Prince Ekaladerhan left for exile and established himself in Ile-Ife, so when the Edo people requested his return, he sent his son instead, Prince Oranmiyan who took up the throne.

EXPANSION INTO CITY-STATE EMPIRE

By 15th C, the empire expanded into a city-state under the leadership of Oba Ewuare the Great

REASONS FOR THE RISE OF THE BENIN EMPIRE

1. Some of capable rulers the greatest of those was Aware

2. Good centralized system of government
3. Trade
4. Unity
5. Development of Handicraft Industry

DECLINE OF THE BENIN EMPIRE

- Introduction of Slave trade
- Trans- Atlantic trade
- Firearms that were introduced through the European trade caused tribal wars that led to the final decline of the Benin Empire.

THE EMPIRE OF OYO. Oyo Empire began in the late 14th C or early 15th C likely 1388 – 1431. The people of Oyo were Oranmiyan, their capital was Oyo-Ile and the King of Oyo was called Alafin. The Bashoran was the leader of the army.

REASONS FOR THE RISE OF THE OYO EMPIRE

1. It had organized political system headed by a number of great Alafins
2. Strong organized army
3. Agricultural activities
4. Development of local industries
5. Slave trade
6. Dahomey tributary

DECLINE OF THE OYO EMPIRE

1. Conflict between Alafin and Basharon
2. Conquest from the Fulani and Dahomey
3. Civil wars
4. Disunity

DAHOMEY EMPIRE. Dahomey rose after the decline of Oyo in the 19thC. It was founded by the Fon people. It had good leaders such as King Agaja and Houegbadja who built the Royal Palaces of Abomey.

THE RISE OF THE DAHOMEY EMPIRE IN THE 18th C

1. Growth of centralized and powerful monarchy
2. Boyul succession system was effective
3. Strong army

4. Good leadership of King Gezo and later Aguja
5. Control of Slave trade

DECLINE OF DAHOMEY

Dahomey declined after the arrival of the French.

ASANTE EMPIRE. Asante or Ashanti Empire was founded as a result of the emergence of several cities in the region of Kumasi.

The people of Asante were Akan ruled by the Oyuko clan. The King was Obiri Yeboa who was Osei Tutu. The capital city of Asante or Ashanti was Kumasi. The symbol of Asante union was a Golden stool. The ruler of Asante was known as Asantehene.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF ASANTE

1. Agricultural activities
2. Development of local industries
3. Some of its capable rulers e.g. Osei Tutu
4. Well organized political system
5. Trade

DECLINE - The state declined after the arrival of Europeans.

CENTRALIZED STATES OF CENTRAL AFRICA

Example: Kongo empire, it was founded in the 14th C. The head of the kingdom took the title of Manikongo or Mwekongo means lord of Kongo. The capital was Mbaza, which the Portuguese later baptized Sutrador.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF KONGO EMPIRE

1. Technological development e.g. Iron technology
2. Trade
3. Taxation
4. Development of local industries
5. Emergence of traditional leaders with a strong belief in spiritual and magic power

DECLINE OF THE CONGO EMPIRE

- The arrival of the Portuguese
- Slave trade
- Weak leadership after Manikongo Mingo Mkuwa who acquired up an Embassy in Portugal. His son Mzingo Mbemba was baptized as Dan Alfonce. He was a puppet of the Portuguese and caused civil war in Kongo.

MWENEMUTAPA KINGDOM. This Kingdom was created under the leadership of Mutola. Mutola conquered Tongu and Torura of the Zambezi valley. He acquired the title of Mwenemutapa, which

means 'Master of the conquered lands'. He was a political, military and religious leader. Mutola died in 1450 and his son Matope inherited, after Matope's death in 1480 Changamire took over in 1490.

REASONS FOR THE RISE OF MWENEMUTAPA

1. Agricultural activities
2. Good leadership of Mutola
3. Availability of valuable goods e.g. copper, iron and gold

4. They controlled trade routes
5. Trading centers

REASONS FOR THE DECLINE OF MWENEMUTAPA

1. The arrival of Portuguese who monopolized the gold trade
2. The kingdom became divided into two parts Mutapa and Ruzwi
3. Rebellion from local people

After the death of Matope, his son Nyahuma took over. He was younger than the other Chief so that Chief rebelled and caused civil war.

THE LUBA STATE. This state is found between the tributaries of river Kongo. The Songiye people migrated from Katanga led by a leader from the Kangolo clan. The united Kaniok and from Luba kingdom, Ilungambila married into the Kangolo clan. This intermarriage gave the rise of Luba lineage of Kalala Ilunga, the founder of Munza as capital of Luba.

REASONS FOR THE RISE OF THE LUBA STATE

1. Centralized system of Administration where the kingdom had final say in wars and external trade

2. The development of trade
3. Agricultural Activities
4. The presence of iron technology

THE LUNDA STATE. The centre of the empire lay in the Valley of Nkala River. The Luba kings took the title of Mwanta. It began as a simple village and their first ruler was called Mwantagaand. Ilunga Tshibinda who came from Luba married a princess from the area and their son became the first paramount ruler of the Lunda State.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF LUNDA STATE

1. Iron technology
2. Development of local industries
3. Agriculture activities
4. Good leadership
5. Trade.

The empire declined after the arrival of Europeans.

END OF FORM ONE TOPICS

WELCOME FOR FORM TWO TOPICS



TOPIC 1:
INTERACTION AMONG THE PEOPLE OF AFRICA

INTERACTION was the way in which people from a given community came into contact with another community. or
INTERACTION was a state in which people from one community got into contact with one another.
The contacts among African people resulted from their various struggles to meet their daily requirements and further social and economic development. Before colonialism, African communities had social and economic interactions.

A) SOCIAL INTERACTION:
Social interaction took place through migration, religion, war, music, medicine and marriage.

1. MIGRATION. East Africa belongs to four main language groups namely the Khoisan, the Cushites, the Nilotes and the Bantu. Historical evidences show that the earliest inhabitants of East Africa were of Khoisan origin. Their speech is described as had "click" sound. It was similar to the language of present day KhoiKhoi and San of South Africa. They were nomadic hunters and gathers. These early large groups interacted with the larger Cushites, Bantu and the Nilotes communities that began settling in East Africa from the first century A.D. The remnants of them include Sandawe and Hadzabe of Tanzania and the Okiek (Dorobo) of Kenya. The origin home kind of the Nilotes was in the Nile valley in Sudan. Some Bantu communities of East Africa included Nyamwezi, Sukuma, Chagga and Pare of Tanzania, kikuyu, Kamba. Luhya of Kenya and Buganda, Basoga and Banyoro of Uganda. Through interaction of one community practiced medicine interacted with another led to some changes such as introduction of iron technology in East Africa.

2. RELIGION. Religion played a crucial role in all African societies. Religious beliefs were taken seriously and affected every phase of life. There was a variety of religious activities in pre-colonial Africa. These included burial rites purifications, rituals naming of ceremonies and prayers to bless soldiers before they went to war. Religious activities took place at different levels such as family level, clan level and community level e.g. The Bushmen of Congo held prayers before going to hunt, as they believed that God was the source of all food. Among the Asante people of West Africa, the king of Asante (Asantehene) based his right to office on the possession of the Royal or Golden stool, Asantehene was regarded as the chief priest. Natural cults also existed in many parts of Africa. Their main aim was to please the spirits and legendary heroes e.g. the juju practiced in Western Africa the Shona held a cult called Mwani. The king of Shona (Mwanamtapa) was regarded as decline.

3. WARS. African communities engaged in war from time to time; they fought with various reasons such as to increase the number of the herds of livestock, to get fertile land for agriculture purposes and expansion of the kingdom e.g. Buganda conquered Buddu, Karagwe and Busoga to expand their kingdom by 1839.
Egyptian army had established their base at Gondokora the area located around Southern Khartoum and by 1869, Egyptian had raided and destroyed the Lango and Ancholi religion in the modern day Uganda.

4. MUSIC AND DANCES. African music and dances brought people together; communities' rites and ceremonies were accompanied by songs and dances. Every African society developed songs for work, Laborers sang while clearing fields, sowing and harvesting goods example of dances were Mdundiko among the Zaramo and Sindimba of Makonde. The Yomba of West Africa performed Orik music where by other songs praised or condemned certain characteristics including leadership and relation with neighbors. Dance were also performed for different purposes; some dance were open to everyone while others restricted to a certain secret society professional and artisans example Chagga men and women performed a dance called Rring during wedding ceremonies and Luguru led their dance called Gubi.

5. MEDICINE. Africans had medicine men and women who played important role both spiritually and medically. Those who practice medicine interacted with many members of the society as patient visited some of the well-known medicine men and women. Some medicine men and women were also political advisors and leaders example KinjekitileNgwale of Southern Tanzania most of the medicine were extracted from plant roots, barks and leaves e.g. The (name tree) Mwarobaini is mostly used by various medicine in Matebele.

6. MARRIAGE. Marriage occupies a position of great importance in African communities. Every member of the society jugs to build their own family. In Buganda, the Kabaka married from different clans in order to enhance political unity in the kingdom. Therefore, social interactions strengthened through marriage. At the same time, marriage led to emergence of new culture examples Swahili culture as the result of mixture of

Bantu and Arab culture.

B) ECONOMIC INTERACTION

Africa communities also interacted due to economic factors such as crafts, trade, farming and pastoralism.

1. METAL WORKING. African communities used various kinds of metal to make tools, weapons, utensil and ornaments; some of the widely used metals were iron, Bronze, Gold, Copper and tin. Archaeologists have discovered the remains of early in working beneath important religious shrine in the Great lakes religion dating back over 2,000 years ago. Egyptians were the first people known to have used copper; Benin the Bronze casters had guild called IgunEronwon through making various metal tools people interacted due to the need of the commodities through interactions.

2. AGRICULTURE. Many Africans communities practiced agriculture and different types of interaction took place in the process. Apart from few communities such as the pastoral Maasai who never tilled land; other communities cultivated a variety of crops by using different farming methods, tools and crops were passed from one community to another. The Kwari who were purely pastoral community eventually became cultivators as the results they interacted with agricultural societies.

3. FISHING. Was an economic activity that was practiced by communities that lived near water bodies such as lakes, rivers and the seas. The Luo were and still are named fishermen in Pre-colonial East Africa the Ndengereko's fished in the river Rufiji while the Zaramo and other coastal people in the Indian Ocean, such fishing communities interacted with pastoral and agriculturalist so as to acquire animal product and agricultural commodities.

5. **TRADE.** Trade conducted in pre–colonial period was in barter system, the trade network was based on the need to access what a community did not produce; Example pastoralists exchanged their animals' products for vegetable and grains. The limbo clans among the Luo specialized in occupation such as iron working and pottery. Between 8^{th}– 16^{th}C. AD community from the Sudanic belt engaged in trade with the communities from North Africa in the Trans – Sahara trade. Among the most important commodities of exchange were iron, gold, slaves and salts.

6. **THE NEED TO SEARCH NEW AREAS.** Areas with fertile land and reliable rainfall were very attractive to the people within the regions or those coming from outside the regions. Agricultural societies kept on shifting from the area with infertile soil to areas with fertile soil; examples in the interlacustrine regions were densely populated compared to areas like Central Tanzania and Northern part of Kenya where population was low.

IMPACTS /RESULTS /EFFECTS/CONSEQUENCES/ OUTCOMES OF THE INTERACTIONS.

A: SOCIAL IMPACTS OF INTERACTIONS AMONG THE PEOPLE OF AFRICA.

1. Loss of originality: in the process of migrations and trade interactions people moved from one place of their origin to various destinations, through this interaction probably there was interactions of new values, customs and beliefs.

2. Emergence of new language. As people of different languages like Bantu, Nilotes and Khoisan meet with other groups; they developed new languages, which were based on those new related groups of Swahili language developed in East Africa having most of the Bantu vocabularies.

3. Inter marriage. When people moved from their original areas and established settlement in new areas, they got married with the natures and established new social relations. These involved social conflicts since people were united together.

4. Population increased. The places, which were attractive for people's settlements, become highly populated. Those regions immigration was common than emigration.

B: THE ECONOMIC IMPACTS OF INTERACTIONS.

1. Growth of towns and cities. Trading activities stimulated the emergence of urban centers along the trade natures and centers. Areas that produced trade commodities in West, North and East Africa become remarkable urban center; example Taghaza, Timbuktu, Gao, Kumbisaleh in West Africa, Alex and Rial in Tripoli and Cairo in north Africa, Malindi, Mombasa. Bagamoyo, Zanzibar, Tabora and Ujiji in East Africa.

2. Exposure of Africa to the external world. The African coast and interior areas were invalided to the outside world. People were engaged in trading activities and slowly they created trading contacts with the Europeans. African was producing goods that were observed by the outside world.

3. Intensification of agricultural production. Due to good manufacturing and use of better tools and high demands of foodstuffs, cash crops and animals products became very important among Africans.

4. Development of technical skills and new areas. Trading activities stimulated the emergency and growth of technical skills. Africans were able to process gold, iron smelting and cloth making.

5. Over exploitation of African resources. Trade items such as ivory, gold, copper and animals skins, supplied within African and later to outside world. Later on those resources were highly demanded by the outside world like Asia and Europe. Therefore, traders take them to outside world of large quantities.

6. The decrease of work force. Many people in the Western Sudan and East Africa interior were captured as slaves to meet the high demands of slaves by long distance and Trans-Saharan trade.

7. Emergence of classes: The interactions of people on Africa resulted into classes of rich and poor; those who engaged in trade and agricultural activities became economically powerful than those who did not engage in these activities.

THE COMING OF THE NGONI

Who were the Ngoni?

The Ngoni were Bantu-Nguni speaking people of Northern Zululand in South East Africa. They were originally Ndwandwe people under Zwide's leadership. But when Shaka defeated Zwide, one part of his group in 1840s moved to East Africa into two groups of the Maseko and Tuta under Zwangendaba. They moved to Tanzania from Natal and Swaziland between 1840s due to **"Mfecane" (time of trouble).** They are currently settled in southwest Tanzania around Songea town.

MOVEMENT AND SETTLEMENT OF THE NGONI TO EAST AFRICA

They began their movement from South-East Africa in Northern Zulu land under the leadership of Zwangendaba in 1820. The Ngoni migration took place in the 19th century, and was the last major movement of Bantu people into East Africa

There were three groups of the Ngoni in East Africa as:-
(i) The Ngoni Tuta (ii) The Ngoni Ngwangara (iii) The Ngoni Maseko
They then crossed river Zambezi and river Limpopo and moved northwards in search of new land. Later in

1835, they divided into two groups. The one group under the leadership of Zwangendaba passed west of Lake Malawi and settled at Ufipa in 1840. They were attracted to this area here because of the many herds of cattle around.
Zwangendaba led the biggest Ngoni group that entered in East Africa. They crossed the Zambezi River, moved through Malawi and Zambia until they reached the fipa plateau in around 1840's. Zwangendaba died here in around 1845, and his followers splint up into five sections.

Three sections returned south to Zambia and Malawi while the other two such as Tuta and Gwangara sections remained at ufipa. Another group under the leadership of Induna Maputo (Maseko Ngoni) passed East of Lake Malawi and settled at Songea. When Zwangendaba died around 1845, the Ufipa Ngoni disagreed and split into five groups. Whereby the two groups remained in East Africa such as Tuta and Gwangara Ngoni, three groups moved out of East Africa that is to say, one group moved to Malawi and the two moved back to Zambia.
The Tuta Ngoni, the smallest group left in Ufipa, moved northwards fighting and crashing with the Holoholo near Lake Tanganyika, they disrupted the trade route between Tabora and Ujiji. In the1850s, they invaded the Nyamwezi capturing many and incorporating them in their ranks. They finally settled at Kahama South of Lake Victoria. The Gwangara Ngoni under the leadership of Zulugama moved eastwards to Songea where they met the Maseko Ngoni. The two groups fought and the Maseko Ngoni were defeated and pushed out of Songea in 1860's.

Some Maseko moved back to Mozambique while others moved to Kilombero valley where they became known as the Mbunga. Another splinter group moved to Newala, Masasi and Tunduru. From Songea the Ngoni raided widely, finally settling southern Tanzania among the Bena, Hehe and Sangu. The Ngoni migration, which started around 1820s, had ended by the year 1860s.

CAUSES OF THE NGONI MIGRATIONS.

1. The mfecane war. This was the period of political instability and upheavals in South Africa, which led to the creation of political alliances among the displaced communities. It covered the period 1820 – 1834 which referred as war of crushing the people.

The war was narrated by the Ngoni as Ufuaru that meant the crushing and it was named as Difaune. As a result of this contradiction wide warrior divided into two groups one was Under shoshangane created Gaza Empire in Mozambique and Zwangendaba migrated northern wards through central Africa into present day Tanzania.- One group under MputaMaseko crossed Zambezi River and passed to Eastern side of Lake Malawi (Nyasa) finally settled in present day Songea district.

- Zwangedaba lead another groups reached and settled in Ufipa, and in the areas of Lake Nyasa in 1840.Hence Zwangedaba died in 1845.

- The Ndebele under mzirikazi found their settlement in present day Zimbabwe.

- The Kololo under Swebatwane migrated north and built Lozi kingdom a centralized state.

- The Ngoni people were predominantly agriculturalists and pastoralists; in order to protect their traditional way of life they decided to move northwards to central and Eastern Africa.

2. Boer expansion. Since the Ngoni's economy depend much on land they wanted to expand southwards but due to presence of Boers it become difficult to them as they could not extend to west because Kens rub mountain or to East because of Indian Ocean hence they involved north wards.

3. Dictatorial rule of Shaka: The Zulu ruler was cruel in nature as he severely tortured people and those who failed to respond to his order were killed. Due to this, some people decided to seek refuge by migrating to other areas.

4. Overpopulation: This was caused by the fertility of soils and the reliability of rainfall between Drakensberg Mountains and the Indian Ocean.

5. Pastoralism reason: Some Ngoni people owned large herds of cattle and northwards looking for pasture and water for their animals. Therefore, they wanted to look for more fertile land for their cattle. They also experienced famine and drought that led to lack of food and water.

5. The influence of their leaders: Men like Zwangendaba, Maputo and Zulugama provided good leadership. This encouraged them to move onwards.

6. Overstocking: It could also have been due to overstocking of their animals as they were having spirit of cattle rustling, i.e. they had great desire to steal -other people's cattle. For example, they went on driving away and confiscating other people's cattle duri--ng their conquest and expansionist wars.

7. Increased knowledge of military tactics by the age regiments: These were powerful military forces and dedicated to professional war, which was their livelihood. They believed that they could have other territories through migration.

EFFECTS OF NGONI INVASION OR MIGRATION IN EAST AFRICA

POSITIVE EFFECTS

(i) Ngoni migration accelerated state formation in East Africa. The invasion gave rise to the formation of bigger political units for defensive purposes. Some societies re-organized themselves after the Ngoni invasion, forming strong armies reforms to strengthen their societies so as to resist their invasion. For example, Hehe and the Segu.

(ii) The Ngoni invasion led to the rise on outstanding leaders to prominence. These included Mirambo, NyunguyaMawe and Mkwawa, who used the Ngoni military tactics to build their states.

(iii) Introduction of new culture. However, there was spread of Ngoni customs and culture. They enriched the cultures of the people of Southern Tanzania, for example, people copied Ngoni traditional dances and annual festivities.

(iv) It led to the introduction of new weapons e.g. assegai, cowhides and shields.

(v) It led intermarriages between the Ngoni and the natives. There were intermarriages between Ngoni and Nyamwezi, which subsequently led to improved relationships between the invaders and indigenous people and an increased population.

NEGATIVE EFFECTS

(i) It led the loss of lives; this leading to depopulation in some areas where they got warriors this was especially in southern Tanzania. This was due to the killing of people in the expansionist wars e.g. the Mariti remnants of Rugarugas killed so many people.

(ii) It led to displacement of some tribes from their original homeland. That means the natives of the areas where Ngoni settled like the Yao were forced to settle in unfavorable areas.

(iii) It intensified slave trade in East Africa. Firstly, they themselves engaged in capturing people and selling as slaves. Again, people running away from the Ngoni invaders were once captured by Arab slave traders and sold off as slaves.

(iv) It led the destruction the of the east African people economy. In this case, the long distance trade and even agriculture was disrupted. For example, since people were running away from the invaders, they disrupted the normal farming, leading to famine. Then they grabbed the natives' cattle. Furthermore, the caravan routes from Bagamoyo to Ujiji and through Tabora were insecure.

(v) It led the destruction of property and villages. Ngoni were moving in large groups destroying crops and other properties wherever they crossed. Villages that tried to resist were in most cases burnt down.

(vi) It led famine and hunger. There was widespread famine due to the scotched-earth policy of fighting circumstances, crop could neither be planted nor harvested, and people were forced to abandon farming.

(vii) It led to increased warfare among the African societies, including those areas that had been peaceful before.

TOPIC 2:

SOCIO-ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT AND PRODUCTION IN PRE-COLONIAL AFRICA

SOCIAL ORGANIZATION

Refers to the mode of production existing in a particular place at particular time. Modes of production involve productive forces that are human labor, instrument of labor, economic activities and objects of labor and production.

MODES OF PRODUCTION: Is the relationship between production and productive forces including the following; human labor, surplus production, instrument of labor, objective of labor and population.

HUMAN LABOR**:** Is the consciousness and purposeful activity of people to produce material wealth.

PRODUCTION**:** Is a major in the series of economic processes that brings goods and services to people. It includes creation, distribution and consumption.

MEANS OF LABOUR**:** Are the things used in production such as hoes, machines, roads, buildings etc.

OBJECTIVE OF LABOUR: Are things upon which man's labor is applied (mostly land).

PRODUCTIVE FORCES: Are means of production created by a society especially objects and instrument of labor.

RELATION OF PRODUCTION: Are simple and direct relations which people enter to one another in actual production process either exploitive or exploited class.

CLASS STRUGGLE: Are conflicts that developed between exploitative mode and non –exploitative modes example capitalism and socialism.

TYPES OF SOCIAL ORGANISATION PRODUCTION

A: COMMUNALISM MODE OF PRODUCTION

This was the first mode of production to exist in pre-colonial African societies and is divided into two namely.

1. Primitive communalism, the first mode of production through which all societies passed was primitive communal ism. It is called "primitive" because of the low level of productive forces and "communalism" because there was no exploitation of man by man. This mode of production existed for much longer period than any other mode as it ranged from the emergence of man more than one million years ago.

2. Advanced communalism, during that era man advanced in his tools through various discoveries like iron tools. It is because of this technological advancement that is why it came to be known as advancement communalism The nonproductive members of the society such as the elders, disabled and children were exempted from work due to their disabilities.

The invention of agricultural tools encouraged man to cultivate bigger plots of land. Rapid increases in population also encouraged people to increase their farms so as to get more food, which could feed the growing population.
Some of African societies in the present days are still practicing communal mode of production. These include;
The Tindiga and Hadzabe of Singida and Lake Manyara and Central Tanzania.
The Dorobo (Okiek) of Maumau forest and Tesoin Uganda.
The Mbali found in the equatorial rain forest of the Congo DRC.
The bushman (san) of South Africa.
The KhoiKhoi of Kalahari Desert of Botswana
The Tur of Ghana.

CHARACTERISTICS OF COMMUNAL ISM

1. Absence of exploitation, there was no exploitation among the people in a community. All the able-bodied members of the society worked hard and shared what they produced.

2. Low level of production, the level of productive forces were low hence none or very little surplus was produced. The implements used in food procurement were crude and simple.

3. Dependence on nature, in communalism life was entirely dependent on nature therefore the environment dictated how man lived.

4. Communal ownership, the communal ownership of properties was a major characteristic of communalism.

The major means of production like land, tools and minerals were owned by the community.

5. Hunting and gathering, this was the main occupation in these communities; people were grouped together in collective groups known as hunting bands to facilitate this means of production. This later led to the development of stock raising and agriculture then it brought the division of labor.

6. Subsistence economy, due to low level of development of science and technology people produced enough food for their consumption.

7. Lack of specialization, Because of limitation of their science and technology (knowledge) these people learnt to perform all types of jobs. They worked together in marking roots, hunting and looking for food later on very simple division of labor based on gender occurred.

8. People in communal society treated each other equally, there was no standing army and ruling classes; even elders were not lords or rulers.

9. Learning by doing, people in communal societies shared knowledge. This was acquired through learning by doing, youth and children obtained knowledge and skills from their elders.

FACTORS FOR TRANSITION FROM PRIMITIVE COMMUNALISM TO SLAVERY AND FEUDAL MODE OF PRODUCTION.

1. Neolithic revolution is the term for the first agricultural change describing the transition from nomadic, hunting and gathering to permanent settlement. Neolithic revolution brought socioeconomic changes such as establishment of permanent settlement, extension of division of labor based on age and sex, emergence of specialization, surplus production and spread of diseases due to permanent settlement.

2. Advanced in science and technology, this turning point gave improvement in agricultural production. The tools produced were sharper and stronger than the older ones. The improvement of tools led to the expansion of socioeconomic activities beyond hunting and gathering.

3. The reliable rainfall and fertile land, Allowed the expansion of agriculture especially the cultivation of permanent crops such as banana in Uganda.
4. Population growth, by either natural increase through giving birth or artificial means through immigration that was associated with transformation of the social organization and forming of strong empire.
5. Development of permanent settlement, even with nomadic pastoralist or shifting cultivation the area of operation became limited as the number of people increased due to the Neolithic revolution.

B: SLAVERY MODE OF PRODUCTION.

SLAVERY refers to a situation in a society where a person is owned by another purposely as an instrument of production.

SLAVERY MODE OF PRODUCTION was the second mode of production and the first exploitative mode of man by man. The emergence of surplus production created two different classes these were the rich and the poor. Under slavery systems slaves could not acquire wealthy and could not cultivate own land. Slavery in Africa

existed in; Egypt where they constructed dams and pyramids.

Chagga, Haya, Ganda, Hehe. Kerewe and Sambaa in East Africa interior.
Along the coast of East Africa, slaves were used in carrying loads buildings, cities, constructing dams and irrigation scheme. Slavery in Africa never existed as an institution except in Egypt Muslim communities and on the coast of East Africa.

FEATURES OF SLAVE MODE OF PRODUCTION

1. Existence of two classes, that is the slave masters who were exploiters and the slaves who were exploited group.

2. Private ownership of the major means of production. The slave masters owned slaves, cattle and all implements of production.

3. Low productive force, under the slave mode of production the productive forces were still low though more advanced compared to those used during communalism.

4. Existence of surplus production, there were extra products due to the use of advanced tools and improved skills of man to control his environment. The slave masters owned surplus production produced by slaves.

5. Existence of political institutions, these began to emerge and existed in various areas example slave masters had state apparatus such as army, prisons and police which were employed in exploiting and suppressing slaves.

6. Class struggle existed between slaves and slave masters, the slaves started to resist in form of strikes, rebellions, idling and running away.

C: FEUDAL MODE OF PRODUCTION (FEUDALISM)

The term feudalism originated from **the Germany word "feud "which means fees**. In this context fees refer to payment of tax.

Feudalism; was the third mode of production and second pre-capitalist mode of production based on exploitation of man by man. The economy of feudal society was based on private ownership and renting of land and livestock by the ruling classes.

CHARACTERISTICS OF FEUDALISM

1. Agriculture became the major economic activity: Following the discovery of iron technology productive forces were improved drastically.

2. Payment of rent to the property owners; rent was paid in various forms.

> **Labor rent**; existed in form of labor or service in which peasants (serf) were required to work for three days in week for the property owners.
> **Rent in kind**: The serfs regularly had to deliver the quantities of his products to the property owners. The products could be in form of grain, cattle or vegetables.
> **Money rent**: Was the system in which money used as a major means of paying rent.

3. Exploitation of man by man, example peasants (serf) were exploited by property owners and the distribution of production was not equal.

4. Little freedom to peasant, peasants were tired due to various restrictions as they were treated as children.

5. Private ownership of major means of production, such as land, mining sites, houses and cattle all these belonged to feudal lords.

6. Division of labor, this based on age and sex where men specialized in military while women specialized in farming and taking care of children.

7. Existence of classes, property owners as exploiters and serfs as exploited class.

8. Existence of strong political empires, example Bunyoro, Buganda and Karagwe. Feudalism in Africa existed in various forms. Its nature depended on place in which it was practiced for instance societies that exercised feudalism were those found in the inter lacustrine region of East Africa, South Africa, West Africa and the North Eastern Africa

9. Improved productive forces: Especially tools applied in agriculture and military warfare, this was brought about by iron technology. Generally, African kingdoms such as Buganda and some forest states of West Africa, used means of production centered around either land or livestock-especially cattle-peasants could use the land freely but they were required to pay rent.

FEUDAL RELATIONS/FORMS OF FEUDALISM

1. Nyarubanja system: In this form of feudalism the major means of production was land. Under Nyarubanja system in Buhaya and Karagwe there was two classes, that is the Batwazi (ruler) and Batwana (serfs). These two classes had to pay rent in kind and rent in labor services to the property owners.
In Buganda Nyarubanja system known as Mvunjo and Busulo, there were two classes that is Bataka (chiefs) and the poor people who rendered labor service and paid of their products to the property owners known as Bakopi. Under the system labor services provider was known as Akasamvu and part of their products was provided to the ruling class known as Obusulu. Bunyoro was the kingdom-practiced feudalism in East Africa. The kingdom was divided into provinces known as Saza's under chiefs.

In addition, there was caste system in East Africa under this feudal system there was two classes, which were Bahima (pastoralists), and Bairu (agriculturalists). Bahima who were pastoralists dominated and employed the Bairu who were agriculturalists. It was common in Rwanda, Burundi and Buhaya.

2. Umwinyi system: was another form of feudalism found along the coast of East Africa. Wamwinyi controlled the productive forces such as land, serfs and tenants; also monopolized the political and economic power. The serfs and tenants were given land by Wamwinyi (feudal lords) to live on them in return of labor services and tributes which were paid to Wamwinyi. Before Arabs colonization, The Mwinyimkuu was the greatest property owners and ruled Zanzibar with the help of Shehe in Unguja and Diwani in Pemba.

3. Ubugabire system: was another form of feudalism practiced among the Tutsi and Hutu in Rwanda and Burundi. The Tutsi (donor) also known as **SEBUJA** could transfer their cattle to the Ifutu (recipient) as sometimes known as **BUGABIRE.** The Omugabire and his family were obliged to perform several duties for

the masters including house-building cultivating.

4. Ntemi system: This was practiced among the Nyamwezi and Sukuma. The power of ruler was based on the control of land The Mtemi organized his people to open up new land wherever it was available. The process of opening up new land was known as**Kutema.**

MERITS OF FEUDALISM

(i) The rich supported the poor with food during drought and famine.
(ii) The weaker people in the society were protected by the king or the rich land owners. For example, among the Rwandans, the Tutsi had an obligation to protect their tenants, the Hutu.
(iii) The landowners gave all poor people in the society a piece of land to cultivate.
(iv) The society was highly stratified, with each class of people knowing their position and role.
(v) There was peace in the state as the rich classes maintained law and order.

DEMERITS OF FEUDALISM

(i)The rich exploited labor force of the poor.
(ii) Only a few people in society owned land.
(iii) There was inequality in society between the rich and the poor.
(iv) The peasants were forced to undertake military duties and endanger their lives for their property owners.
(v) It encouraged inter-community warfare as property owners fought in order to increase their land and vassals.

BASIC ASSIGNMENT

1. Explain the term social organization and production
2. Identify the types of social organizations and production that existed in Africa up to the19th century
3. What is communalism mode of production?
4. Identify the characteristics of communalism
5. Show examples of the societies that had communalism up to the 19th century
6. What is slavery and slave mode of production?
7. Explain the features of slavery in Africa.
8. Show areas where slavery was practiced in Africa.
9. What is feudalism as mode of production?
10. Explain the characteristics of feudalism.
11. Show societies in east Africa that had feudalism up to the 19th century.

12. Explain the feudal relation (forms of feudalism) that existed in the following areas. (i) Interlacustrine region of Lake Victoria (ii) Indian Ocean coast of East Africa.

TOPIC 3:

AFRICA AND EXTERNAL WORLD

EARLY CONTACTS WITH MIDDLE EAST AND FAR EAST

Early contact was a period when East Africa began to interact with people from Middle East and Far East as early as 200 BC. These contacts were mostly developed through commercial activities. The early visitors were Persians, Syrians, Indians, Chinese, Lebanese, Burma and Arabians. The visitors managed to travel to the coast of East Africa through the use of Sea Vessels with the help of South- Eastern monsoon winds.

Trade contacts between East African coast and the Far and Middle East intensified between 8^{th} and 10^{th} Century when many traders from China, Indonesia, India, and Arab came to trade to African countries. Such commercial contacts are evident from Archaeological findings such as China porcelains, coins, and foreigners tombs in areas like KilwaKisiwani and Old Bagamoyo. The Early contacts were facilitated through legitimate trade; the second phase of Contacts (from 10^{th} century onwards) included slaves among the commodities taken from East African coast.

MOTIVES/AIMS OF THE CONTACTS BETWEEN AFRICA, MIDDLE AND FAR EAST

SOCIAL MOTIVES

(i) Spreading of Islamic religion, Islam religion began in the Middle East in 7^{th} AD from there it spread to many parts of Asia. In addition, Arabs wanted to spread their religion to new parts of the world including Africa.

(ii) Seeking refuge, some visitors who came to Africa experienced religion and political persecution in their countries so they came in search of peacefully place to settle.

(iii) Establishment of settlement, some visitors decided to live permanently in Africa especially along the coast and they built permanent stone houses in the Arabic style.

ECONOMIC MOTIVES

(i) Commercial exploration, some of the early visitors came to explore Africa and assess its resources. They wanted to know the climatic conditions, mineral resources, wildlife and economic activities found on the

African continent. They plan to exploit resources available.
(ii) Trade, many of the early visitors were interested in products from Africa to take back to their home countries.

GOODS EXCHANGED BETWEEN AFRICA, MIDDLE AND FAR EAST

Origin of Visitors	Goods brought to Africa	Goods taken from Africa
Arabia	Beaker, Iron pans, swords, glass ware, daggers, beads, ornaments. Porcelains, bowl, plates, silk and clothes.	Ivory, Gold, Slaves, tortoise shells, horns, copper, iron and coconut oil.
China	Pots, glass bowls, swords and ornaments.	
Persia	Cotton cloth, metal spears, beads, swords and daggers.	
India	Iron pans, bowls beakers and swords.	
Syria	Stone pots and jars	
Burma		

EFFECTS OF THE EARLY CONTACTS BETWEEN AFRICA AND MIDDLE AND FAR EAST

A: POSITIVE SOCIAL EFFECTS
(i) The rise of coastal city States, these states included Mogadishu, Zanzibar, Mombasa, Kilwa and Sofala, they were once small unimportant coastal villages but they grew into cities due to settlement by foreigners.
(ii) Development of Swahili language, Swahili language and culture developed as a result of intermarriage between the people of East Africa Coast towns. Swahili language consists of roughly 65% of Bantu words, 30% of Arabic words and other few Indian words. It provided a common language for the African and Arabs on East Africa coast to use in trade.

(iii) Spread of Islam, Arabs and Persians who settled along the Coast of East Africa spread Islam along the coastal state of East Africa. It also extended into the interior. Arabs built Mosque wherever they settled. This was alongside with the introduction of Islamic laws in order to maintain justice and order and these laws were taken from the Muslim Holy book (Quran) and they were administered by the Kadhi (Judge).

(iv) New Architectures designs, the Coastal city-states adopted new style of building. For example, the Persian traders who settled along the coast introduced building using stone style similar to that found in Persia. Evidence of buildings seen in Historical sites such as ruins of KilwaKisiwani and Zanzibar.

(v) Introduction of new style of dressing, the people of Africa adopted new style of dressing from the

foreigners. Examples those who converted the adopted the Islamic mode of dressing. This included the buibui (a long black rib for women), kanzu (a long while ribe for men), vails for women and barghashia (a small cap) for men.

(vi) Intermarriage, the foreigner intermarried with African, creating a new race of half-castes.

NEGATIVE SOCIAL EFFECTS

(vii) Cultural interference, this was experienced though interacting with foreigners and adopted their customs. Some Africa forgets their traditional religion, language, mode of dressing and food. This interfered African way of life.

(viii) Warfare and depopulation, Contacts brought slave trade between African and Arabs. The demand of slaves caused warfare between African communities. The wars caused insecurity, loss of life, depopulation and underemployment in many parts in Africa.

(ix) Social stratification, through trading with foreigners, some Africans acquired greatly wealth. This led to the emergence of super rids class of people among the Africans. These people exercised a lot of power and influence in the community. As result there was greatly stratification, with a big difference between the have and have not.

B: POSITIVE ECONOMIC EFFECTS

(i) Introduction of new crops, new crops such as rice, wheat, cloves, sugarcane and orange were introduced to the African continent from the Middle East and Far East. Their crops improved the diet of African. In fact, some grew so well the many people adopted them as their stable foods. For example, rice is a staple food among many people along the Coast of East Africa.

(ii) Exposing Africa to the world, African contacts with the Middle and Far East exposed this continent to the rest of the World. Visitors who came to Africa also travelled to other parts of the world. Africa became involved in the world economy, African products such as Ivory, Gold, Leopard skin and copper became popular and were sold all over the World and in turn African got access to products from outside the world.

(iii) Introduction of money economy, Foreigners introduced the use of currency in trade. This was more convenient and replaced barter trade as the method of exchange. Coins begun to be minted and used in the East African city-states.

(iv) Introduction of new technology, People from the Far East and Middle East brought new technology to Africa. For example, they introduced advanced navigation techniques and the art of keeping records by writing. These things helped African along the Indian Ocean shoreline to travel further. Fishermen could also sail into deeper, get larger catches and dhows, and still used in some fishing communities.

NEGATIVE ECONOMIC EFFECTS

(v) Unequal Exchange, Traders from the Far and Middle East traded with African using goods with unequal values. They took goods of high value such as slaves, gold, ivory and animal skin in exchange of low value items such as beads, cowrie shells and colored clothes. These commodities from Africa were then sold at great profits in foreign markets; this means that the foreigners gained a lot of expenses of the African.

(vi) Slave Trade, Oman Arabs introduced slave trade to East Africa. Sultan Seyyid Said introduced clove plantations in Zanzibar and then got slaves to work in them. In additional they sold slaves to Europeans who began sugar plantations in America.

(vii) Exploitation of African resources, due to high demand of African commodities in outside world African resources were greatly exploited. For example, large number of elephants and rhinoceros were killed for their horns and many strong young people were captured and sold as slaves. Therefore, this contributed to reduction of African resources.

(viii) Decline of Local industries, the introduction of foreign goods led to the decline of African local industries. Due to the availability of many varieties of clothes, utensils and other tools from abroad few people bought local products so as a results local production also declined.

THE CONTACT BETWEEN AFRICA AND EUROPE

THE COMING OF PORTUGUESE

The Portuguese became interested in controlling the Indian Ocean trade in the 15th century due to the commercial capitalism in Europe. At the time, there was great demand for gold, silver silk and spices especially among the kings and wealthy, people, gold and silver were used to make coins and expensive ornaments.

At that time Portugal was a poor country with a small population, it was greatly overshadowed by its larger neighbor Spain. At the beginning of 15th century Portugal had begun to exceed in one area; Navigation. Portugal **Price Henry** the navigator set up a navigation school in the country and encouraged exploration voyages. By sailing to Africa, the Portuguese hoped to control trade and enrich the country.
In the 1470's The Portuguese landed on the Gold coast of West Africa. They built a port which they called **Elmina.** From this fort they controlled the gold trade between Africa and Europe.

In 1487,Bartholomew Diaz, a Portuguese explorer reached the Southern cape of Africa and called it the **Cape of Good Hope.** On **1st March 1498, Vasco da Gama reached Malindi** on the East African Coast. The same year he arrived in Calicut, India and became the first European to sail directly from Europe to India.

MOTIVES/AIMS OF THE CONTACT BETWEEN AFRICA AND THE PORTUGUESE

A: ECONOMIC MOTIVES

(i) Finding sea route to India, in the 15th century, the Ottoman Turks had occupied a large part of the Middle East, blocking the overland trade route between India and Europe. Therefore, Europeans could not get much valued silk, spices and Gold from Asia. The Portuguese came to Africa as they attempted to find a sea route through which they could trade with India.

(ii) Trade, the Portuguese wanted to trade with Africans and replace the Arab middlemen who took African goods to Europe. Portuguese traders got valuable items such as ivory, gold and gum from Africa and sold them profitably in Europe. In exchange, they brought European cloth, copper and brass items to the Africans. This trade helped to strengthen the Portuguese economy in the 15th century.

(iii) Creating Portuguese Trade Empire, Portugal wanted to dominate the trade between Asia, Africa and Europe and creating a trading empire. To achieve this the Portuguese had to overcome the Arab traders who dominated the trade. In addition, it was necessary to prevent other European nations from colonizing the African coast because the world interferes with Portuguese trading interests.

(iv) Exploiting of African resources, Portugal was a poor country, so Portuguese were in search of resources that could bring them wealth and recognition in Europe. Therefore, they established settlements and plantations on the Islands of Sao tome and Principle and they used African labor to grow sugar cane there. The produced products were exported to Europe and America.

(v) Establishment of strategic ports, along the East African coast there were many natural harbors that could serve as stop over point for Portuguese ships. The sailors could rest and restock their supplies at those harbors. Portuguese built forts at some of those harbor in order to protect their trade from Arabs and other European competitors. For example, of such forts are Elmina Castle in Modern days Ghana and Fort Jesus in Mombasa Kenya.

B: SOCIAL MOTIVES

(i) Adventure, Some Portuguese explorers visited Africa in search of Adventure, through their advanced ships building and Navigation skills enabled them to travel everywhere in search of new land to explore. These voyages were supported by the leader in Portugal especially Prince Henry The navigator.

(ii) Spreading Christianity, The Portuguese felt that it was their duty to spread the Christian faith and reduce the influence of Islam along the coast of Africa.

(iii) Search for the King Prester John, there was a rumors that this Christian King named Prester John whose Kingdom was believed to be somewhere around Ethiopia in North East Africa. The Portuguese wanted to find this King and form alliance with him against the Muslim.

THE PORTUGUESE EXPLOITATION RESULTED INTO DISCOVERIES OF POTENTIAL AREAS

The Portuguese established trade with societies found in the coastal areas. They also created central point where ships could stop on the way to India. After establishing trade, the Portuguese obtained items such as ivory, gold, copper and silver; they exchange them with cloth, guns, gunpowder etc.

By 15th C Portuguese succeeded to establish their rule in East Africa. After that the Portuguese built the Fort Jesus in Mombasa which could strengthen their military power thus establishing the effective control over the East Africa coastal areas.

1592 was the built of Fort Jesus.
1698 was the broke down of Fort Jesus.
1499 was the year when Vasco da Gama returned back to Portugal.

THE IMPACTS OF PORTUGUESE INVASION IN AFRICA
THE ECONOMIC IMPACTS OF PORTUGUESE

(a) Introduction of crops especially cash crops in Africa e.g. Sugarcane, yellow maize, cassava, rice, pineapples, potatoes etc.

(b) Decline of trade; the trade between East Africa, Far East and Middle East was interrupted by the Portuguese.
(c) Change of major trade routes.
(d) Exposed Africa to the external world.
(e) They built several forts, example; Fort Jesus in 1592 in Mombasa, Fort at Kilwa.
(f) They acted as the introducers of new arts to the indigenous of Africa continent.

SOCIAL IMPACTS OF PORTUGUESE

(a) Decline of cities and states.
(b) Growth of Swahili language. E.g. new Portuguese words i.e. Mvinyo from word Vincho, Meza Etc.
(c) Insecurity and loss of manpower.

THE REASONS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF PORTUGUESE

1) They suffered from tropical disease like malaria.
2) The climate conditions of East African coast were unhealthy for the Portuguese.
3) Social, culture and religion differences i.e. Muslim against Christians.
4) Loss of trade due to Portuguese taxes and restrictions.
5) Harsh treatments and punishment practiced by Portuguese in their leadership.
6) Role played by Oman to the coastal city people. Hence that capture of fort Jesus marked the end of Portuguese in East Africa around 1700.

THE DUTCH SETTLEMENT AT THE CAPE

SOUTH AFRICA BEFORE THE COMING OF EUROPEANS

The Earliest Inhabitants of South Africa were The San (Bushmen) and the Khoikhoi then followed by Bantu people who inhabited South Africa.

THE SAN: The San people were short and had light brown skin. They had click sound in their language. They lived in highland areas of South Africa. Their main economic Activities were hunting and gathering. They had permanent settlement and they lived in caves.

KHOIKHOI: The Khoikhoi resemble the San but they are taller, Khoikhoi means "men of men" in their language. The San group helped the Khoikhoi to graze their animals. The frequent contact between San and Khoikhoi as they referred to one group of Khoisan.

THE BANTU: These made up the largest group, this was the early inhabitants of South Africa. They include the Iswana, Venda, Gueza, Zulu, Ndebele, Swazi, Shona, Xhosa and Ngoni. They lived a settled life and grew crops such as maize, beans and pumpkins. They used iron tolls and produced enough food which encouraged population growth. The surplus encouraged trade between the communities.

THE DUTCH SETTLEMENT AT THE CAPE

The **Dutch or Boers** came from **Holland (Netherland)** and firstly settled at the cape in **Table Bay** in April **1652** under the leadership of **Jan Van Riebeek.**

Dutch farmers called themselves - **"BOERS"**. When they settled at the cape they called themselves by the name of **Afrikaners** that meant the **"whites of Africa"** who developed language known as **Afrikaans.**
Dutch had a company known as **United Dutch East India company (UDEIC).** The company had trade with India and other Arabs in Asia**.** At the cape, they grew vegetables, fruits and kept animals such as cattle.They had barter trade with Khoikhoi exchanging tobacco and alcohol for the cattle.

REASONS FOR DUTCH SETTLEMENT AT THE CAPE

1. The cape was a good place where ships could stop to be refueled.
2. The cape had a good climate to support settlement of the whites. (Temperate and cool climate).

3. The Dutch wanted to produce vegetable and fruits for the ships which sailed to India.
4. The cape could provide fresh water for the sailors.
5. The cape could be a base of projecting their ships on Atlantic and Indian Ocean.
6. The cape was a center for caring sick people.

THE EFFECTS/IMPACTS OF THE DUTCH SETTLEMENT AT THE CAPE

(i) Enslavement of African, Boers established large plantations, so they needed labors to work to their fields so African were forced to provide their labor.

(ii) Displacement of the African communities, The Dutch displaced the native Africans from the fertile areas and took their livestock by force.

(iii) Occurrence of social segregation, The Dutch thought that they are superior so they mistreated and exploited the African and buying foundation for the Apartheid.

(iv) Expansion of European settlements, Dutch established settlement at the cape in 1685 and their families increased to 150 families.

(v) Introduction of new culture, The Boers introduced the Dutch culture to South Africa that involved their way of life which was totally different from that of African.

(vi) Political structure of the Khoikhoi was destroyed.

(vii) Dutch raided cattle from the Khoikhoi.

AFRICAN REACTIONS TO THE DUTCH SETTLEMENT

THE SAN: They resisted Dutch settlement by raiding the Boers cattle's and Boers took revenge by the hunting down the San in order to wipe them out so many san people were killed.

THE KHOIKHOI: The Boers occupied the traditional Khoikhoi grazing land so many Khoikhoi were enslaved and forced to work on Boers farms in 1659, The Khoikhoi declared war on the Dutch famers and took the war then hundreds of cattle and sheep died.

THE BANTU: Bantu groups included the Zulu, Ndebele, Swazi, Ngoni, Tambu and Xhosa communities. They cultivated variety of crops such as sugarcane, melons, maize and beans. The level of production they had reached enabled them to accumulate surplus and trade began to be conducted among them. The Boers got the Great Fish River, they encountered the Xhosa who lived around that region. The Boers fought the major wars against the Xhosa. The Xhosa called these war **"Wars of possession"** but the Boers called them **"Kaffir wars".**

THE KAFFIR WARS OR WARS OF DISPOSSESSION.
These were series of wars carried out by the Xhosa from 1779 against Boers – at the great fish river.
The first three wars were in 1779, 1789 and 1803.
The fourth (known as Ndhalambi) happened in 1812
The fifth (known as Makanda) in 1819.
The sixth in 1834.

The seventh in 1846>
The 8th (Malenjin – 1850 –1853)
The last resistance by the Xhosa (Mlakaza was an advisor to one of the Xhosa).
The Battle of Vegkop of 19th October 1836.
Ndebele under Mzilikazi fought against the Boers in the Orange Free states.
The Battle of the Blood River on 11th February, 1837.
ZULU UNDER Dingane fought against Boer settlement in natal.
Anglo Zulu war.

Zulu under Cetshowayo fought strongly and defeated the British at the Battle of Island lwana.
But later the British suppressed the Zulu during the battle of Ulundi 4th July, 1879.

MFECANE MOVEMENTS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA

The word **'Mfecane'** originated from zulu word which means 'crushing'. Mfecane was the period of wide spreading warfare, plundering, disturbances, destruction and migrations among the southern African tribes dominated the first half of nineteenth century. This was the period of serious upheaval among the Bantu-speaking groups in southern Africa, the period when emerging small chiefdoms were waging expansionism wars among themselves. This was in the high area which lies between the Drakensberg Mountains, Kalahari Desert and the Limpopo River. By the late eighteenth century, and early nineteenth century, the Ndwandwe, Mthethwa, and Ngwane were emerging as powerful kingdoms south of the Highveld. The powerful chiefdoms with chiefs ambitious to expand their possessions began the conquest and assimilation of neighboring groups. The all turmoil commenced around 1810's when Zwide of Ndwande andSobhuza of Ngwane fought over land along the Pongola River and Sobhuza was defeated after which he led his people further inland to the area that is known as Swaziland today. After defeating Sobhuza, Zwide came into conflict with Dingiswayo of Mthethwa over other resources like land and water. Both kingdoms became more centralized and militarized. The Zulu were still a small group among the Mthethwa by this time. The Ndwandwe appeared victorious again in 1818, Dingiswayo was killed, and his forces scattered. Shaka who was previously a warrior in the Dingiswayo's army, had already ascended the chief of the Zulu under full support of Dingiswayo upon the death of Senzangakona his father in 1816. As the Mthethwa nation fell apart after Dingiswayo's death Shaka who became ambitious to create new strong kingdom, used the opportunity to defeat all the chiefdoms in the area. Zwiderealised that Shaka could become a threat and decided to stop him, thus became the Shaka's great enemy, but was defeated in 1818 by the Zulu's superior strategy and disciplined army. In 1926, under Zwide's successor Sikhunyani , they challenged the Zulu forces again and were completely destroyed. Nguni speaking people, the Ndebele and many other tribes not ready to be ruled by Shaka emigrated. Thus Zulu became very vast strong kingdom in southern Africa. This period between 1810's-1850's is what is known as the period of Mfecane.

CAUSES OR REASONS OF MFECANE

(i) Population pressure, Zulu land is part of the Eastern corridor of South Africa between the Drakensburg Mountains and the Indian Ocean. Due to the favorable climate and absence of diseases such as malaria, its population tended to increase rapidly. As the population increased conflicts between those societies became common and intensified leading to the Mfecane.

(ii) Shortage of land, the people who occupied Zulu land were farmers, but the existing land was not enough due to population pressure, therefore the search for more land caused conflicts that later contributed to the outbreak of the Mfecane.

(iii) The role of Shaka, Shaka pursued an aggressive and expansionist policy to expand his Kingdom, Zulu

state. He attacked many states in the attempt of expanding his state, this action created conflicts that contributed to the outbreak of the Mfecane.

(iv) Expansion of cape whites, there was the great desire by whites at the capes to expand in the interior in order to acquire more land. Therefore, the expansion of whites in cape worsened the shortage of land and thus crushes among the tribes in the interior.

(v) The control of trade at delagoa bay, trade in ivory with the Portuguese in Delagoa Bay was another factor provoked conflicts among them. Because of the desire to control trade some Nguni tribes began to attack others in order to control and acquire more tribute.

(vi) The coming of the Boers, during the Boer Trek, the Boers left Cape Town away from British control and moved into the interior of South Africa, the penetration of the Boers into the interior of South Africa intensified the pressure on land which led to conflicts that caused the Mfecane.

EFFECTS OF MFECANE

(i) It led to the loss of thousands of lives, as it was the warfare and crushes among the people, many chiefs and common people lost their lives in the course of fighting.
(ii) It caused depopulation in many communities, thousands more were uprooted from their homes and were forced to travel great distances. Example of these were Ngoni and Ndebele.

(iii) Destruction of properties, refugees moving in larger groups fleeing Shaka's army caused destruction in many areas they passed through.

(iv) Emergence of any new kingdoms, many migrating tribes went to establish strong states where they settled. For example, Zulu empire emerged as a very strong political entity with very wide range expansion base.

(v) It led to the decline of many central and east African kingdoms, those kingdoms which could not stand against the military strength of the tribes from the south declined. Example of those kingdoms that were destroyed partly due to Nguni invasions were the Lozi, RozwiandTumbu.

(vi) Famine and hunger, although the mfecane in many ways promoted the political development of southern Africa, it also caused great suffering. Thousands died because of famine.

(vii) It led to the more European penetration into the interior,As many areas became depopulated, made it very easy for the Dutch famers (Boers) to easily take over the place when they were looking for new lands to establish homes. Great numbers of people were displaced and frightened communities left their own areas in places like the Orange Free State, Natal and the Transvaal occupied by whites.

EAST AFRICA UNDER OMAN'S RULE 1840.
The Oman Arabs helped East Africans to defeat Portuguese along the coastal in 1698. Oman now became rulers. Therefore, people of East Africa were not free apart from defeating the Portuguese.
In 1741, Mombasa established her independence chief domain under Mazrui family; this was an order from Arabs family of Oman in origin the Mazrui family was conquered by Sultan Seyyid Said of Oman. From 1840 onwards, Sultan Seyyid Said becomes the master of the East African coast.

MOTIVES/AIMS OF OMAN ARABS IN EAST AFRICA.

1) To have clear control/monopoly of trade existed at the coast especially Indian ocean trade.
2) They wanted to control all the city-states along the coast.
3) To stop the spread of Christianity led by Portuguese and maintaining Islamic culture.

WHY SULTAN SEYYID SAID SHIFTED HIS CAPITAL FROM MUSCAT OMAN TO ZANZIBAR

The following were the factors for sultan Seyyid Said to shift his capital from Muscat Oman to Zanzibar in 1840.

1) Good climatic condition supported the settlement of Arabs.
2) Fertile soil for agricultural purpose especially clove and coconut products.
3) Deep natural harbor in Zanzibar for importation and exportation of goods.
4) Trade activities examples controlling the Indian Ocean trade.
5) Abundant fresh water for irrigation and soiling.
6) To avoid conflict in his home after killing his brother Iman said.

IMPACTS OF OMAN ARABS (SULTAN) DOMINATION IN EAST AFRICA.

A: ECONOMIC IMPACTS.

1. Increase of slave trade.
2. Land alienation.
3. East African people were exposed to international trade.
4. The expansion of trade.
5. Introduction of new cash crops example; coconut and cloves.
6. Establishment of feudalism where African become serfs and tenants
7. Exploitation of African resources.

B: SOCIAL IMPACTS.

1. Death due to resistance against the Arabs
2. Spread of Swahili language.
3. Development of Swahili language. E.g. Addition of Arabic words like Sali, habari etc.
4. Spread of Islamic religion.
5. Slavery activities.

SLAVE TRADE IN INDIAN OCEAN SEA BOARD

Slave: Is the person who is illegally owned and controlled by another person and is forced to work for them.
Slavery: Is an act of owning and using slaves.
Slave trade: Is the activity of buying and selling human beings like other commodities.
Slave trade in East Africa began after the arrival of Portuguese in 15th Century up to 1873 during the SayyidBarghash treaty or free treaty.
Africa experienced two types of slave trade.

1. The Indian Ocean slave trade which was conducted by Asians.
2. The Trans-Atlantic Ocean slave trade conducted by European merchants.

1. THE INDIAN OCEAN SLAVE TRADE

Main peoples involved: Arab traders, European merchants, African chiefs e.g. Mirambo and NyunguyaMawe, The Nyamwezi, The Kamba, The Yao, Buganda, Banyoro, Khartoumers.

The Nyamwezi: They were called Nyamwezi (people of the moon) because they came from the West direction in which the new moon is first seen. Their involvement in slave trade was partly caused by the demand for slaves in the interior. They dealt in ivory, copper, slaves and wax they wanted to acquire commodities like glass, spices, clothes, mirrors, guns in exchange for slaves.

The Role of chief Mirambo

Mirambo was born around 1830 AD and spent part of his life as a captive of the Tuta Ngoni in Bugoma. He organized a strong army of highly paid mercenaries (rugaruga) who were the basis of his power.
He established friendly relations with KabakaMutesa of Buganda with whom they trade in salt, slaves, iron implements grains and livestock. He acquired guns from Arab and Swahili traders and this helped him during his empire building process.

He controlled major trade routed in his territory by imposing taxes on traders passing through his area. Between 1860-1870, Mirambo carried out extensive conquests

Vinza and Tongwe and recruited some abled men for his army and sold others in slavery.
Unfortunately, when Mirambo died in 1884, his empire also collapsed because it lacked a military leader as powerful and courageous as him.

The Role of NyunguYamawe: The name NyunguYamawe was a praise name meaning "Pot of stones" Nyungu was a prince of the NyunguYembe ruling family but failed in 1865 after the Arabs had beheaded the Chief Mnwasele.

After the Arabs had beheaded the chief of Nyunguyamawe was terrified and ran away in 1865 and established himself at Kiwele south from where they systematically attacked and defeated the people of the regions.

His society was strategically located such that he controlled all trading activities along the routes. From the East African coast to Utipa, Tanganyika and other trading activities. This economic progress contributed to his political development.

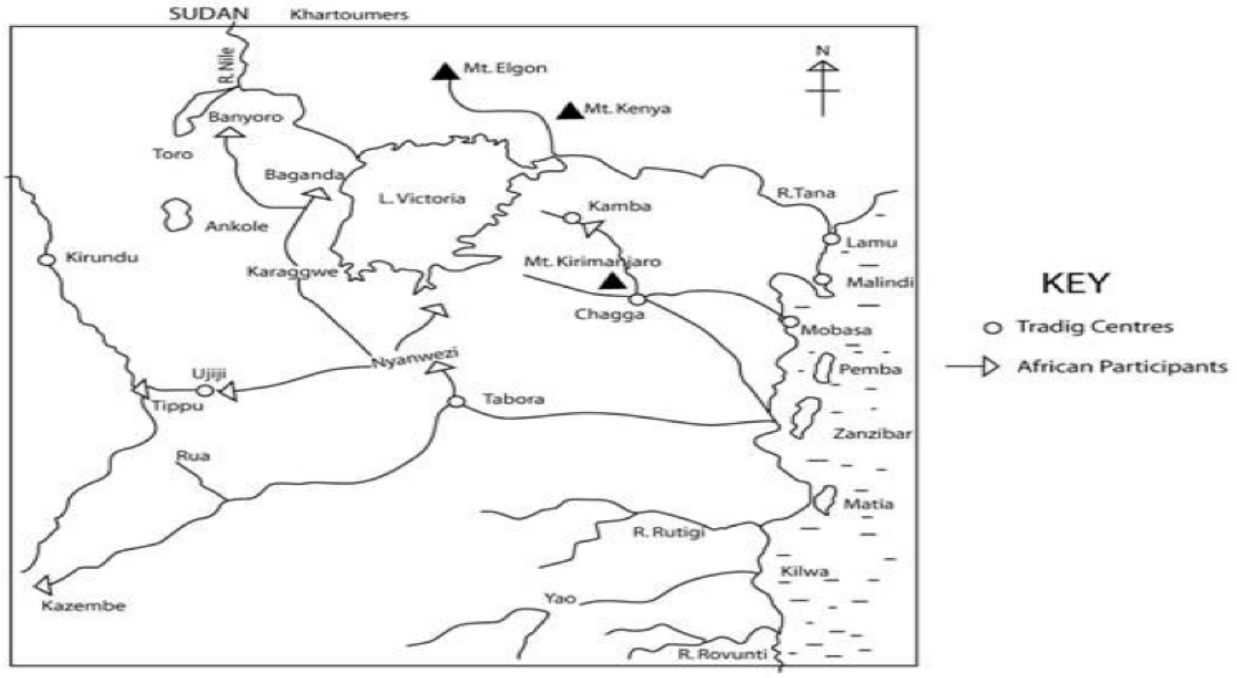
He conquered people and those who tried to oppose him were punished severely and others sold off as slaves. Unlike Mirambo 's empire that collapsed immediately, Nyunguyamawe 's empire went on for many years after his death mainly because of economic organization and efficient political system he had created. Nyungu's rulers took over the collection of ivory from the conquered clients and sent it to him at Kiwele. He formed a strong centralize administration with his own rulers (vatwale) placed over conquered chiefdoms directly responsible for him.

The role of Akamba: These lived in southern Kenya highlands. Their ancestors lived here as hunters and shifting agriculture when they grew rich, some Kamba communities bought slaves from the coast to do their farming. The YaoThe role of YaoThe Yao were the most active East African slave traders. This was mainly because of the growing demand for slaves at the coast and also the nature of the Yao society. It was the custom for ambitious Yao rulers to increase their power not just by capturing territories but also by raiding their neighbors for slaves who then became their personal followers.

The role of Buganda: These lived in the central region of Uganda. Their importance was significant in the commercial life of the region; they traded in Bark cloth, ivory and slaves. They were friendly to Arabs who supplied them with guns that they used to protect and expand their Kingdom.

The role of Khartoumers: These were Egyptians and Sudanese traders who dealt in ivory and slaves. They were semi-official representatives of the Egyptian government with several hundred armed men in their pay. Banyoro, Buganda and Bunyoro were enemies, kabakaMutesa I stopped slave traders from going to Bunyoro. However, they dealt in backcloth, slaves and salt.

A sketchmap of East Africa showing the African participants in slave trade



REASONS FOR THE EXPANSION OF THE INDIAN OCEAN SLAVE TRADE

1. The Oman Arabs who were ruling the East African coast at the time introduced clove plantations in Zanzibar and Pemba. These plantations required large numbers of labors to tend to them.

2. There was also a high demand for slave labor for the French sugar plantations in Mauritius and Reunion Island. Initially, the French mostly depended on the area around present-day Mozambique for slaves, but by the 1770s the demand exceeded supply. Hence, the French came further north, to East Africa, in search of slaves.

3. Slaves were needed as porters. They ferried goods such as ivory and gold from interior of Africa to the Coast. This was important for the ivory trade, especially to the American, Indian and British traders who took part in it.

4. Portuguese slave traders supplied slaves to the Portuguese coffee and sugar plantations in Brazil. In the first half of the 18th century, the Portuguese expanded their plantations. As a result, their sources of slaves in West Africa and Mozambique became inadequate, so they came to East Africa.

5. Slaves were in great demand as domestic workers and soldiers in the Muslims nation Arabia. The Quran forbids Muslims from enslaving other Muslims. Thus, the slaves had to come from non-Muslim regions such as the interior of East Africa. There were major slave markets in Zanzibar, Bagamoyo, Pemba, Kilwa,

Mikindani and Mombasa.

CHARACTERISTICS OF SLAVE TRADE.

There were the characteristics which prevailed during slave trade.
1. There were several human torture and transits.
2. Humiliation and dehumanization of the slaves.
3. Slave were chained and forced to carry heavy loads like salt, ivory and copper.
4. They were brutally whipped by their organizers.
5. They were blended like animals. Those who were unfit were killed or left to die on the way.

COMMODITIES EXCHANGED

From interior to the coast – Ivory and slaves, animal skins, minerals.
From the coast to the interior caravans brought clothes, salts wine, glass ware beads and ornaments.

HOW SLAVES WERE OBTAINED (TECHNIQUES USED TO OBTAIN SLAVES)

Slaves were obtained through various ways:
(i) Through raiding village and capturing people.
(ii) Through selling prisoners of war obtained from local civil wars.
(iii) Through selling criminals.
(iv) Through selling of domestic slaves.
(v) Through ways of laying and ambush.
(vi) Through use of trickery and false pretense.
(vii) Through inter-tribal wars many Africans become destitute.

IMPACTS OF SLAVE TRADE IN INDIAN OCEAN SEA BOARD.

SOCIAL EFFECTS

(i) Depopulation; many people were taken to work as slaves and others died on the way.
(ii) Insecurity and fear among the people.
(iii) Development of inter-states war.
(iv) Human torture and suffering
(v) Hunger due to lack of good in areas where slave trade operated.
(vi) Growth of Arab towns such as Tabora and Ujiji.
(vii) Eruption of diseases among overcrowded slaves. E.g., The Spaniards introduced Syphilis.
(viii) Displacement of people and many became homeless.
(ix) Introduction of Swahili language, this was introduced in land and is now being widely spoken in Tanzania, Kenya, Uganda and eastern Congo.
(x) Introduction of Islamic religion, Islam as a religion was introduced by the Arabs and it spread, especially in Yao land and in Buganda land.

ECONOMIC EFFECTS

(i) Killing of economic activities, agriculture, pastoralism and industries were killed due to lack of manpower.

(ii) Technology stagnation, no innovation was made as all able-bodied people were taken as slaves only children and old ones were left behind.

(iii) Underdevelopment of East Africa, slave trade increased dependence on European capitalist countries.

Generally, slave trade had negative effects in East Africa and it created many problems

(iv) Introduction of new foods. E.g. maize, pawpaws, rice, and groundnuts.

(v) The increase of farming plantations, in some areas especially the clove plantations were slaves worked.

THE PSYCHOLOGICAL EFFECTS OF SLAVERY ON ITS VICTIMS

(i) Damage of slave's self-worth.
(ii) Inferiority complex before their masters.
(iii) Sufferings due to difficult work.
(iv) Separation of families and homes.
(v) Loneliness.
(vi) Stress due to unsure about their future, survival and food.
(vii) Fear and Insecurity.

A TRADE ROUTE: is a logistical network identified as a series of pathways and stoppages used for the commercial transport of cargo.

MAP OF EAST AFRICA SHOWING TRADE ROUTES



2. TRIANGULAR SLAVE TRADE

Refers to that type of trade that involve three continents America, Africa and Europe.

The Atlantic slave trade was divided into two eras, known as **first and second Atlantic system.**

(a) The first Atlantic system

This was the trade of enslaved Africans primarily to South American colonies of the Portuguese and Spanish empires; it accounted for only slightly more than 3% for all Atlantic slave trade. It started (on a significant scale) in about **1502** and lasted until **1580,** when Portugal was temporarily united with Spain.

(b) The second Atlantic system

This was the trade of enslave Africans by mostly British, Portuguese, Brazilian, French and Dutch traders.

The main destinations of this phase were the Caribbean colonies, Brazil and Americas a number of European countries built up economically slave dependent colonies in the New World. Amongst the proponents of this system were **Francis Drake and John Hawkins.**

ORIGIN OF TRANS-ATLANTIC SLAVE TRADE

The Portuguese were the first foreigners to capture slaves off the coast of West Africa. They built a fort on **Arguin Island (Mauritania)** where they bought gold and slaves from Gambia and Senegal. Most of these slaves were taken to plantations in Portugal and Southern Spain. By **1471,** the Portuguese expanded their gold and slave trading activities to Ghana. In **1482,** they built Elmina castle to serve as their base there.

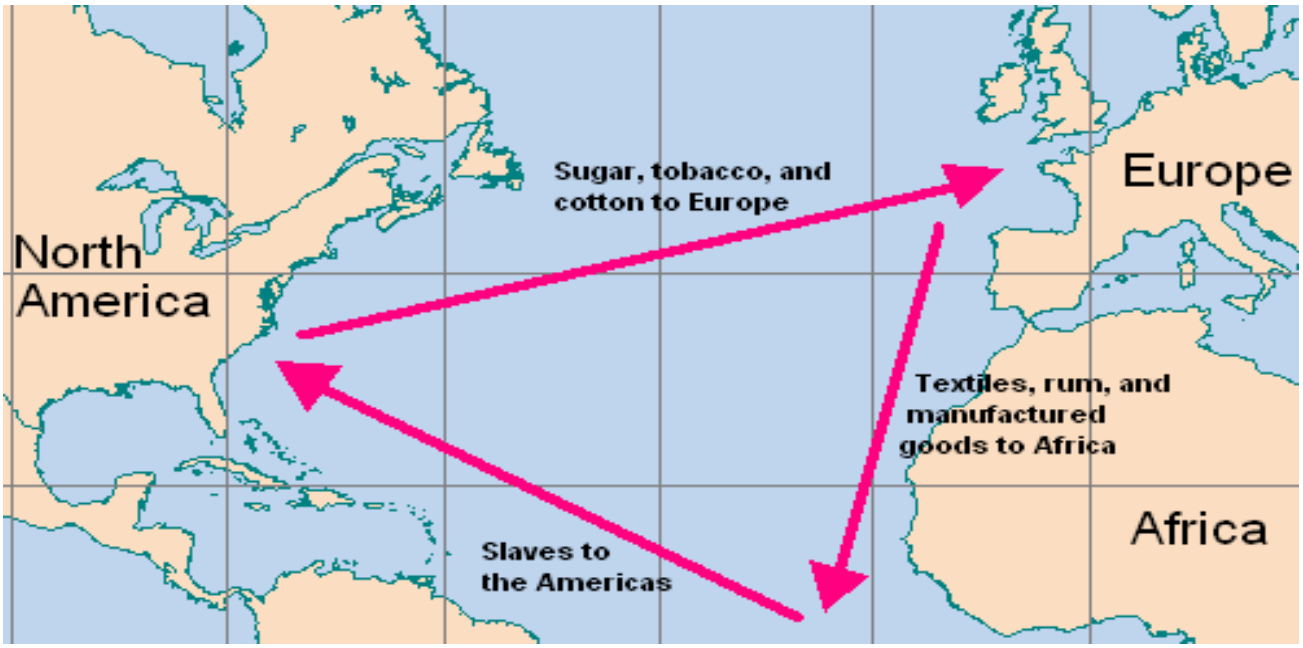
COMMODITIES OF EXCHANGE. The major commodities of exchange in the triangular trade were;

AFRICA – Exported slaves, gold, ivories and animal skins.

AMERICA- exported sugar, cotton, Tobacco, Gold and Silver.

EUROPE – Supplied manufactured goods such as clothes, gunpowder, glassware, sugar and tobacco.

MAP SHOWING TRIANGULAR SLAVE TRADE



FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF TRIANGULAR SLAVE TRADE

(i) The rise of capitalism, this mode of production depended on exploitation of one man by another. Capitalism emerged in Europe after the decline of feudalism in Europe especially the first stage of capitalism mercantilism where slaves became part of the commodities to be traded to accumulate wealth.
(ii) Discovery of marine technology, the invention of gunpowder, shipbuilding, compass direction, and motor engine acted as a pushing force for the rise of slave trade, it facilitated the transportation of the commodities and slave dealers.

(iii) The discovery of the new world, on 24 October 1492 Christopher Columbus discovered a new world that

opened a new chapter as far as slave trade was concerned it brought high sky demand of cheap labor to work in the new plantations in the Caribbean islands.

(iv) The profitability factor, this acted as an attracting force for many mercantilists to join a trade based on unequal exchange imagine exchanging human being with spices, umbrella, gold, ivory with guns, mirrors and cloth.

(v) Accumulation of wealth, Mercantilists accumulated a lot from this trade which enabled them to sustain super profits obtained and in addition to that, many crops could not be sold for profit, or even grown in Europe.

(vi) The expensiveness of White slaves, Before the mid of 17th century the European mercantilists depended on indentured labourers, criminal convicts, contract labourers and refugees from Europe who proved to be expensive and undependable compared to Africans who were not paid anything apart from their basic needs for survival and were slaves for life.

(vii) The establishment of plantations, after the discovery of the new world, many Europeans flocked to America; these included the British, French, Portuguese and the Dutch. Many of these immigrants established plantations that caused more demand for slave labor. The increased demand contributed to the development of Trans– Atlantic slave trade.

(viii) Accessibility, the accessibility between the new world and the West African coast facilitated the rise of the Trans-Atlantic slave trade. The distance from West Africa to the new world is very narrow thus it made it possible for the transportation of goods between the two regions.

(ix) The inability of the indigenous people, at first the Europeans were using Native Americans, red Indians to provide cheap labor on the plantations and mining centers; but these later died in huge numbers due to plague. This called for the importation of African slaves which contributed to the rise of the Trans-Atlantic slave trade.

(x) Climatic conditions of the New World, meant that Africans could easily live there since they were used to tropical climates and had immunity of tropical diseases more than people from Europe and Asia. They were able to withstand diseases and conditions of the New World.

(xi) The existence of seasonal winds, like the northeast trade wind, north equatorial current, the southwest and the Gulf streams encouraged the growth of this trade by enabling the vessels of the merchants to sail to Africa, New World and Europe.

IMPACT OF THE TRIANGULAR SLAVE TRADE

ECONOMIC EFFECTS

(i) Removal of African labor, the Trans-Atlantic slave trade was associated with the uprooting of many Africans who were taken to provide cheap labor on European plantations in America. The ones who were taken were between the ages of 15 and 35 who made up the productive force in Africa.

(ii) Stagnation of African technology, the Trans-Atlantic slave trade contributed to the stagnation of African technology. It led to the flooding of European manufactured goods which were exchanged for slaves.

(iii) Decline of African agricultural production, there was decline in agricultural production due to the loss of

labor. Those who were taken as slaves were the ones who were very active in farms, thus their removal led to shortage of labor consequently causing the decline in agricultural production.

(iv) Decline of African traditional industries, due to these goods Africans abandoned production and exchanged their fellow Africans with the Europeans goods. The manufactured goods from Europe also destroyed African traditional industries by killing the market for African local goods.

(v) Land alienation, Africans were robbed of their best arable land and were turned into serfs and tenants who had to sell off their labor to Arab landowners for their survival. Watumbatu and Waamidu provided their labor in coconut and cloves plantations.

SOCIAL EFFECTS

(i) Depopulation, it led to depopulation because millions of Africans were uprooted and exported to America as cheap labor. It is believed that during the 400 years of slave trade, around 100,000,000 Africans were taken as slaves.

(ii) Famine, the Trans-Atlantic slave trade contributed to famine in Africa. The trade was characterized with insecurity because of slave trading activities, the insecurity made it difficult for people to engage in agricultural production.

(iii) Destruction of African culture, the Trans-Atlantic slave trade was associated with an influx of foreigners especially Europeans. This led to a destruction of African traditional values because Africans were coping European culture.

(iv) Separation of families, some abandoned their homes due to insecurity, some died while trying to escape and some were taken away as slaves.

POLITICAL EFFECTS

(i) Decline of states, some states declined because they were weakened when their subjects were captured and sold as slaves. For example, Wanyasa were greatly weakened by frequent slave raids from their Yao neighbors.

(ii) The rise of states, some strong states arose due to accumulation of wealth from slave trade. E.g., the Yao state under Machemba, Nyamwezi under Mirambo and Buganda kingdom under KabakaMutesa.

TOPIC 4:

INDUSTRIAL CAPITALISM

The Meaning of Industrial Capitalism

Capitalism is the social, political and economic system based on private ownership of the major means of production. It first developed in Europe during the 15th century when feudalism collapsed.

Under the capitalism system companies and individuals own and direct most of the resources used in production of goods and services. Capitalism underwent different stages before reaching its maturity. These

stages included:

1. Commercial or mercantile capitalism
2. Industrial capitalism
3. Monopoly capitalism

1. Commercial or mercantile capitalism: Was the first stage of capitalism where by its economic system was based on trade and commerce. It took place between the year 1500 and 1750. The merchants obtained wealth through trade activities. A lot of wealth was accumulated during this period and therefore increased new demands that resulted into development of another stage of capitalism known as industrial capitalism.

2. Industrial capitalism: This was the period when machines begun to be used for production in industries. The transition to industrial capitalism was the period when mercantile capitalism was giving way to industrial capitalism. This stage of industrial capitalism took place between the 1750s and 1870s.

The transition was manifested by five major events namely:
(i) Political revolution (ii) Agrarian revolution (iii) Demographic revolution (iv) Commercial revolution
(v) Transport revolution

THE DEMANDS OF INDUSTRIAL CAPITALISM

(i) Needs for raw materials, the increasing production due to expansion of industries needed large quantities of raw materials supply. These materials included cotton, coffee, tea, iron ore, palm oil, sisal, sugar cane, tobacco and rubber. The available raw materials could not meet the demand needed by industries. This resulted into the search and control of the sources of raw materials.

(ii) Need for Market, due to the investment of capital in production, industrial goods flooded the European markets. Overproduction and under consumption became a critical problem among the industrial capitalists hence they were forced to look for markets outside Europe.

(iii) Need Areas for investment; due to unreliable markets and high concentration of capital in Europe, profit marginalization occurred. As a solution new areas for investment were needed among other areas, Africa provided the best areas for investment of such capital. In Africa the tropical crops could do better compared to other countries it was also a good source for non-agricultural raw materials such as minerals and forest products.
(iv) Need areas for Cheap labors, due to labor consciousness caused by working class in Europe and Britain in particular, the need to search for cheap labor become important. This was a measure taken to compete in production for profit maximization.

(v) Need area for settlement; also they demanded the area for surplus unemployed personal population in their countries.

REASONS FOR THE INCREASING DEMAND OF INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT IN 19TH CENTURY

(i) Competition in industrial production, European capitalist nations increased the demand for industrial development as a result of competition in industrial production.

(**ii) American independence,** resulted in the development of the industrial sector. By the beginning of the 1870s, Europe could not easily enter U.S.A since it had introduced protective tariffs to keep out foreign

manufactured goods and protect its industries. By the 1860s, markets for manufactured goods and sources of raw materials in Europe had greatly declined.

(iii) Accumulation of wealth, in order to ensure this, they decided to invest the wealth that was being obtained in industries into other areas outside Europe.

(iv) Overpopulation and unemployment, the problem of overpopulation and unemployment was also rising in European countries. Therefore, the solution to those problems was sought outside Europe.

(v) Demands for raw materials, the highly demanded raw materials were cotton, oil, sugar cane, ivory, rubber and iron ore. Most of these raw materials could not be found in Europe in large quantities. In fact, those tropical crops could not grow in Europe. Following this Europe decided to produce such raw materials in Africa, India, New Zealand, Australia and China. In those areas raw materials were produced in large quantity than in Britain and other nations in Europe.

AGENTS OF INDUSTRIAL CAPITALISM

There were about four groups of agents of industrial capitalism in Africa namely:
1. Explorers 2. Missionaries 3. Traders

1. EXPLORERS. During the nineteenth century, the major aim of European powers was the exploration of Africa. In east Africa, exploration was done by the prominent explores such as Speke, Burton, Grant, Samuel Baker, Henry M. Stanley and Dr. Livingstone, while in central Africa and parts of Congo the prominent explorers were Dr. Livingstone and later Henry M. Stanley. And in West Africa the prominent explorers included Richard Lander, Dr. Barth Mungo Park, Clapperton, Dr. Baikie, Gaspard Mollien and Cailie.
The journey of exploration was financed and supported by European capitalists. The main aim was to gather information about Africa because they needed a wider knowledge of the continent. They also wanted to know about the raw materials which African had to sell and the location of the main centers of population. Moreover, they were interested in the knowledge of transport potentialities of African great river systems. For example, the British explorer, Mungo Park in 1780s, followed by Clapperton and Richard Lander explored the Niger and gathered important information about the economy and politics of West Africa.

THE ROLE PLAYED BY EXPLORERS IN THE COLONISATION OF AFRICA

(i) They reported back about the potentialities of the African resources, Clapperton reported about the river Niger to the British government while Speke reported about the potentiality of Lake Victoria and named it Victoria to honor Queen Victoria of the United Kingdom.

(ii) They provided important information about the nature of African societies, they reported about the hostility, calmness and hospitality of the African people. This information played a central role for the European colonialists during the decision making process regarding the colonization of Africa.

(iii) They explored important mountains and researched the geology, climatic conditions, topography, lakes and animal species in Africa. This knowledge later attracted European powers to colonize Africa.

(iv) They provided messages to their government about the evils of slave trade, and the areas where slave trade was still conducted. Dr. Livingstone's third journey through Tanganyika and Lake Regions of central Africa was targeted for that as a result he informed the English that the Yao's land was still characterized by slave raids and the effects of slave trade such as sufferings, insecurity.

2. MISSIONARIES. By the 19th century, missionary activities had started in Africa. The pioneers were the protestant churches of Europe and America. It was only later that Roman arrived especially from France. The domination of missionaries were the London missionary society, the church missionary society, Roman Catholic missionary society and the universities mission to central Africa (UMCA). Few Christian missionaries were directly active agents of imperialism. They were essential ingredients of the increasingly assertive European access to Africa. However, in most cases European Christian played an important role in promoting and shaping the advent of European capitalism.

THE ROLE PLAYED BY MISSIONARIES IN THE COLONISATION OF AFRICA

(i) They acted as interpreters and propagandists at the time of treaty making, Moffat stayed among the Ndebele for about 30 years serving the British South African company (BSAC) for treaty making between the companies **(BSAC)** and **King Lobengula.**

(ii) They acted as advisors to African chiefs, the British missionaries of the church missionary society convinced Kabaka to accept protectorate.

(iii) They introduced Western civilization to the interior through education, this aimed to prepare people of low ranks to serving colonial masters at the time of colonization.

(iv) They softened the minds and the hearts of Africans, their activities were influenced by European imperialists' interests by preaching and emphasizing the spiritual beliefs such as “give to God what which belongs to God," and "give to Ceaser what belongs to Ceaser”. In the long run this preaching weakened African opposition and shaped the regions for future colonial administration.

(v) They converted Africans to the new faith, they were easily employed as puppets to extend colonial rule. Typical examples are the converts of Sierra Leone, Nigeria and Ghana who were able to protect the British economic interests and paved the way for future colonization by the British.

(vi) They reduced resistance among African societies; this was done by converting some societies and preaching obedience to administrators.

(vii) They Introduced new crops, Horner grew coffee at Bagamoyo around 1870 the church missionaries society grew cotton in Uganda. This prepared people to acquire the skills, which were important for future cash crop production during the colonial era.

(viii) They helped in the abolition of slave trade; they planned for successful Christianization of the freed slaves as they preached the word of God. They wanted to create the conducive and peaceful environment for the development of legitimate trade which was exploitative in nature and was after capitalists’ interests.

(ix) They had closer links with rulers and interfered even in political matters, they allied European imperialism while they were working in the interior of Africa. This situation provoked the hostility from African rulers. In this case, missionaries appealed strongly for the protection from their home governments, which later led to effective colonization.

3. TRADERS. Traders were among the first Europeans to visit the interior and coastal areas of Africa. They came under the influence of capitalists who also supported missionaries and explorers.

Their main aim was to exploit the new sources of raw materials, markets and new areas in which industrial capitalists had to invest their capital. Examples of traders are **William Mackinnon, James Stevenson, Harry Johnston and Carl Peters.**

THE ROLE PLAYED BY TRADERS IN THE COLONISATION OF AFRICA

(i) They opened a new an exploitative system, therefore, Africa became the target for European interests. This resulted in stiff rivalries and competition among European industrial nations.

(ii) They introduced legitimate trade; this involved the importation of European manufactured goods. Thus, the chain of dependence was created and the African local industries and the arts were destroyed.

(iii) They exposed Africa to the world capitalist system of economy, the use of currency, banking and credit facilities began to be witnessed by Africans. This resulted into exploitation of African resources. The fair and quick turns obtained by traders attracted European colonialists to come into Africa.

(iv) They opened communication systems, this laid the foundation for future colonial infrastructure. For example, the road from Lake Nyasa to Tanganyika known as Livingstone road was opened by traders and was used during the colonial administration.

COMPANIES AND ASSOCIATIONS

Companies and association were among the most important agents of colonization of Africa. Agents organized themselves into companies and associations. They received finance from their home government so as to operate effectively and differently in those areas, where the governing powers had their economic interests. They aimed at financing the exploration that showed the interest of coming to Africa.
Examples of the association included the Royal British Geographical society, financed by **John Speke** to explore the river Nile. Another was the African Association of British, which in 1788 financed Mungo Park. Its major aim was to explore and identify the areas suitable for agriculture, which could produce enough materials for export. Another concern of that association was to identify the navigable rivers, mineral deposits and assessing the market available for industrial goods.

In the abolition of slave trade, merchant companies became increasingly involved in the interior of Africa. The major aim of these companies was to establish the so-called "legitimate trade". This was trade in commodities and other resources that industrial capitalist required as raw materials or as food for the urban working classes. The legitimate trade did not involve the selling and buying human
Several companies in Africa were established at strategic points for the purpose of collecting important commodities for export and supplying manufactured goods from Europe.

In East Africa examples of these companies were the **Imperial British East African Company (I.B.E.A.C)** founded in **1886 by William Mackrnnon.** It was also known as the British East Africa Association. Another company was the **Germany East African Company (G.E.A.C)** founded in **1884 by Carl Peters.** In West Africa examples of companies formed included the **Royal Niger Company (R.N.C)** which was formed by **George Turban Goldie in 1884.**

The association was concerned with commercial activities. **King Leopald** expected that the company could improve the lives of native as well as civilizing them, exploiting natural resources and abolishing slave trade and slavery in the region.
In central Africa the company prevailed was the **Livingstone central Africa Company (L.C.A.C).** it was formed by **Scottish capitalists James Steven in 1878.**

In south Africa there was the **British south Africa company (B.S.A.C)** formed by **Cecil Rhodes** as a private company and operated in south and central Africa by the year **1889,** the company was given a royal charter that included the full powers to administer the company.

THE ROLE PLAYED BY COMPANIES IN THE COLONISATION OF AFRICA.

(i) They exploited African resources, these resources were highly needed by the European capitalists in their industries. In all parts of Africa Company played a crucial role of collecting raw materials and carried out trade activities.

(ii) They eliminated local middlemen, this was carried out by the companies which attracted the imperialists powers to control Africa.

(iii) They encouraged their home government to colonise Africa, for example, the Royal Niger Company encouraged the British to colonize Nigeria after gaining the control of the different trading areas in the region.

(iv) They Signed treaties, the company played an important role of signing different treaties with African local chiefs. These treaties helped imperial powers to claim and justify the colonization of particular territories, especially during the Berlin Conference. One example was a treaty signed between Harry Johnston and chief Mandara of Uchaga in 1884 to control thirteen square kilometers of land in Kilimanjaro. In addition, Dr. Carl Peters of the society for German colonization signed treaties with a number of chief between Pangani and Rufiji. These treaties were later used by the German government to control Tanganyika.

(v) They created infrastructures; these included commercial centers, administrative headquarters, roads, railways and waterways. They were allocated in those areas where they operated where by later on were used by the imperial powers to transport administrators to colonize and impose laws on the land.

(vi) They paved the way for colonization of Africa; they suppressed African resistance through a police force used to maintain peace, order and stability within the region. For example, in East Africa, the German East African Company recruited Swahili, Sudanese and Buganda soldier to counter the coastal Arab resistance of 1888-1889.

(vii) They provided important information about economic potentiality of African areas; Africa was exposed to the imperial powers which aimed to colonize the continent.

(viii) They provided rudimentary administration in areas of their operation, some company leaders such as Sir. George Turban Goldie of the Royal Niger Company, Harry Johnston, the representative of Cecil Rhodes of the British South Africa Company, attended the Berlin Conference of 1884-188 5. They also notified the conference about areas where they operate on behalf of their mother countries.

(ix) They played an important role of marking of the administrative boundaries, which were later identified as boundaries of the European spheres of influence. They prevented any other rival European imperial power from taking their territories. This was evidenced in East Africa where the German East Africa Company marked the area of the German in the Anglo-German rivalry and achieved the 1886 agreement. While in South Africa the British South Africa Company managed to map the claims of Britain, thus preventing the Portuguese from interfering in the British sphere of influence.

ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE

Refers to the state of ending slave trade. Or was the act of freeing slaves and stopping the use of human being as commodities. Britain was the first nation to Establish abolition of slave trade campaign. In 1833,

Britain abolished slavery, in 1865 U.S.A also abolished and the total abolition of slave trade in East Africa took place during the colonial period.

REASONS FOR THE ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE

ECONOMIC REASONS

(i) Capitalist production, this involves two classes of societies, which are the capitalists who control the major means of production and the workers who are employed by the capitalists. For the workers to be effectively employed, they must be free and not slaves.

(ii) Need for markets, due to the industrial revolution, there was increased production of industrial products in Europe that lacked enough demand; this forced the British to abolish slave trade so that markets can be created in Africa for their manufactured goods.

(iii) Need for raw materials, due to the industrial revolution, there was increased demand for raw materials in Britain. The existing raw materials were limited to supply due to the mushrooming of industries. This situation necessitated the abolition of the slave trade so that Africans can produce the needed raw materials.
(iv) The use of machines, the industrial revolution was characterized by the use of machines in the production process, these machines replaced human labor. The owners of the machines campaigned for the abolition of the slave trade because slave labor had become redundant.

(v) French and British competition over sugar production, for so long period, the British had a monopoly on sugar in the European market. The sugar was produced by slave labor in the British West Indies. The British was selling their sugar at very high prices thus making huge profits. However, by the end of the 18thC, the French West Indies and re union islands were producing sugar in large quantities and selling at a cheaper price thus making more profits than the British. This situation made slave labor in British West Indies useless thus forcing the British to abolish the slave trade.

(vi) The rise of men with new ideas, Prof. Adam Smith (challenged the economic arguments that were the basis of slave trade when he argued convincingly that hired labor is cheaper and more productive than slave labor, Rousseau spread the idea of personal liberty and equality of all men.

(vii) The ship owners stopped transporting slaves from Africa, and began raw materials directly from Africa and America to Europe, which led to a decline in slave trade.

SOCIAL REASONS

(i) Religious reasons, the religious bodies contributed to the abolition of the slave trade in Africa. They argued that slave trade was against the will of God because he had created all people equal but slave trade was treating Africans as an inferior class. The Christians denounced slave trade in the name of God and argued that it must be abolished.

(ii) French revolution of 1789, the French revolution of 1789 had a role to play in the abolition of the slave trade. The slogan of the revolution was fraternity, liberty and equality. Philosophers such as Rousseau campaigned for the abolition of slave trade. These philosophers claimed that slave trade was against the ideals of the French revolution thus it had to be stopped.

(iii) Humanitarian movements, the humanitarians such as Granville sharp and Thomas Clarkson played a

certain role in the abolition of the Trans-Atlantic slave trade. These people argued that slave trade had caused a lot of suffering to the people thus it had to be abolished. These efforts were followed by British declarations of 1807 and 1833 which abolished slave trade and slavery.

TACTICS USED TO ABOLISH SLAVE TRADE

Abolitionist and humanitarians used several methods to pressure nations to abolish slave trade in the world. These tactics include the following;

(i) They used campaign meetings, sometimes they asked freed slaves to address the realities and how they were mistreated in slavery.

(ii) Anti-Slavery trade patrol ships from Britain; they patrolled the seas to prevent ships from sailing from Africa with slaves.

(iii) Intellectuals and writers used books, newspapers and magazines to condemn slavery and slave trade.

(iv) Treaties to stop slave trade were signed between nations. Some of the treaties signed between the Sultan of Zanzibar and the British in East Africa were;

- In 1807, British parliament outlawed slave trade for British subjects.
- In 1817 British negotiated the "the reciprocal search treaties" with Spain and Portugal.
- Equipment treaties signed with Spain 1835, Portugal 1842 and America 1862. In east Africa in 1822 Mores by treaty was signed between captain Moresby and sultan Seyyid Said it forbade the shipping of slaves outside the sultan's territories. British sips were authorized to stop and search suspected Arabs slave carrying dhows.
- In 1845, Hamerton treaty was signed between Colonel Hamerton and sultan Seyyid Said. It forbade the shipping of slaves outside the sultan's East Africa territories i.e. beyond to the North.
- In 1871, the British set up the parliamentary commission of inquiry to investigate and report on slave trade in East Africa.
- In 1872, sir. Bartle Frere persuaded sultan Barghash to stop slave trade but not much was achieved.
- On 5th march 1873, the sultan passed a decree prohibiting the export of slaves from mainland and closed of slave market at Zanzibar. Zanzibar slave market was to be closed within 24 hours
- In 1876, sultan decreed that no slaves were to be transported overland.
- In 1897, decree left slaves to claim their freedom themselves
- In 1907, slavery was abolished entirely in Zanzibar and Pemba.
- In 1927, slavery ended in Tanganyika when British took over from Germany after the Second World War.

EFFECTS OF THE ABOLITION OF THE TRANS-ATLANTIC SLAVE TRADE

(i) Foundation of sierra Leone and Liberia, these areas were established by the Europeans powers as settlements for the freed slaves. They received freed slaves from America. It should be noted that the Trans-Atlantic slave trade uprooted millions of Africans who were supposed to offer labor in America.

(ii) Introduction of legitimate trade, there was introduction of legitimate trade that involved the buying and selling of natural resources, Example palm oil and cocoa. The colonial powers introduced legitimate trade so that it can facilitate the acquisition of raw materials and markets which were crucial in Europe after the industrial revolution.

(iii) Exploitation of hinterland, before the abolition of the slave trade, the colonial powers operated along the coast of West Africa searching for slaves, but after the abolition of slave trade they penetrated the interior searching for raw materials and market where they can sell their manufactured goods.

(iv) Increased spread of Christianity, the European powers increased the spread of Christianity after the abolition of slave trade. Christianity was a way of compensating for the ills committed by slave trade. This religion was also spread to counter the spread of Islam in West Africa.

(v) Increased provision of social services, the colonial powers increased the provision of social services especially education. The main aim of colonial education was to train Africans to become better producers of raw materials that were needed in Europe. Colonial education was also supposed to change the mentality of Africans to prefer European goods thus created a ready market for them.

(vi) Improvement of the agricultural sector, the colonial powers improved the agricultural sector by introducing better methods of farming to increase the production of raw materials. It should be noted that the colonialists discouraged the production of food crops in Africa.

(vii) Linguistic studies, the colonial powers studied native languages so that they can be able to translate the Bible into local languages. This move was to convert many Africans to Christianity. The languages that were studied by the imperialist were Hausa and Fulani.

BRITISH OCCUPATION AT THE CAPE

Britain took control of the cape during the period of Mercantilism in Europe. **In 1580 Sir Francis Drake** became the first British man to round the Cape of Good Hope.

At the end of 18th century, The British became interested in seizing the cape colony from the Dutch.
The British first occupation of South Africa was in 1795 when they attacked and defeated the Boers at the Cape. There was a peace treaty between the Dutch and the British in 1802 and the Cape was given back to the Dutch in 1803. However, in 1806 the British decided to re-occupy the Cape by defeating the Dutch.

MOTIVES FOR THE BRITISH INTERESTS IN THE CAPE

(i) They wanted to protect their ships on the sea route to India.
(ii) They wanted to control the trade route on seawater (India & Asia).
(iii) They wanted to protect themselves against ships of enemies.
(iv) They wanted to get raw materials, market and area for investment.
(v) They wanted to increase colonies.

TACTICS USED BY THE BRITISH TO OCCUPY THE CAPE

(i) Introduction of land legislation system, they aimed at discouraging pastoralism among Boers and to encourage sedentary farming since the policy limited the size of an individual's land. The Dutch thought that the British introduced the land law to take land from the Boers and redistribute it to the landless Khoikhoi so they opposed the land law.

(ii) Abolition of slave trade and slavery in 1807, The British government abolished slave trade in all their colonies and offered compensation for slaves but the money was only paid in London as a result the majority did not get their compensation. However, freeing slaves endangered the economic survival of the Boers as they depended much on slave labor.

(iii) Imposition of the English language as the as the official language, of administering the law and justice and the medium of instruction in schools in 1822. Hence, English language replaced the Dutch as he official language.

(iv) Abolition of internal trade restriction imposed by the Dutch company, officials on the farmers and other settlers at the cape. This created more trade opportunities as they could now trade freely without strictly control from the administration.

(v) Introduction of the pass in 1809, to reduce the exploitation of African labor as the system required African workers to carry passbooks which indicated their residence and employment, and those who did not carry them were regarded as criminals. The pass prevented the Africans from moving from district to district or moving into areas occupied by Europeans.

(vi) Introduction of contract system, through this the Boers were to sign contracts with their workers. In those contracts, they were to mention the wages and other fringe benefits that they gave to their workers. Therefore, the Boers regarded the contract system as British interference in the traditional Boer-Africans relationship of master-servant.

(vii) Introduction of the Black circuit court system in 1811, in order to reduce acts of violence committed by European employers against African employees. The law angered the Boers who considered themselves a superior race and thus natural masters of the Africans.

(viii) Introduction of English law, as the basis of the legal system in South Africa.

(ix) Provision of financial aid to the British settlers by the British government, this encouraged more of its citizens to immigrate to the Cape as a result in 1820 some 300 British settlers arrived in South Africa increasing the total white population by almost 12% within weeks.

THE BOERS TREK

A TREK simply means a movement of people from one place to another in large groups.

BOER TREK was the migration of the Boers from the Cape of Good Hope to other interior parts of South Africa in order to find new settlement areas.

The historical background of the Boers movement can be traced back with the arrival of British towards the end of 18th century, who established their administration at the cape colony. With presence of British, everything at the cape changed into negative to Boers. For example, Bores were now treated of equal status with the Africans. The migration took place from 1830s to 1840s where the Boers moved in groups of families at different times to different parts of interior South Africa, in a movement that later became known as the **BOERS GREAT TREK.**

REASONS/CAUSES FOR THE BOERS TREK

(i) Introduction of British government, British established their settlements at the Cape of Good Hope early in 19th century. Here, both Boers and natives were under British domination. The Boer did not want to be under the British government, that's why they decided to move out from the Cape of Good Hope, to interior where they could establish their independent states.

(ii) Abolition of slavery and slave trade, the other fundamental change that British rule brought about was the ending of the slave trade and then the total banning of slavery. The British abolished slavery and slave trade in 1833 which was established by the Boers. Nevertheless, many of the original Dutch settlers were extremely unhappy about the emancipation of slaves.

(iii) Introduction of English language as an official language, the coming of the British led to introduction of English language as an official language in 1822 that was to be spoken by all people at the cape. This made the Boers to become discontent hence Boer Trek.

(iv) Shortage of land at the cape, the coming of the British at the cape led to increase of population. The Cape of Good Hope became overpopulated. This led to shortage of land hence Boers decided to move to interior in search of the new land for agricultural undertakings.

(v) To transform the Composition of the local white population, the British encouraged the immigration of British settlers of South Africa with the aim of transforming the Composition of the local white population.

(vi) British Introduced land privatization, this put limitation on the amount of land that one could own. This violated the Boers practice of owning large farms.

EFFECTS OF BOERS TREK

(i) Establishment of Boer Republics, the movement of the Boer from the cape to interior led to the establishment of two Boer Republics which were Transvaal Republic and Orange Free State.

(ii) Occurrence of Afro-Boer Wars, the movement of the Boers to the interior led to conflicts between the Boers and Africans. This was due to the fact that Boers confiscated natives' lands. A good example of those conflicts was the Zulu war with the Boers in 1837.

(iii) It accelerated mfecane movements on the interior Southern Africa; this is due to the fact that their penetration increased shortage of land in the hinterland.

(iv) The Boers had in the interim developed their own culture and language, in the interior areas where they settled.

(v) Discovery of Minerals, The Boer Trek also led to discovery of minerals in the interior parts of South Africa. The minerals discovered in the interior were: Diamond discovered at Kimberley in 1867 Gold discovered at Witwatersrand in 1880's.

(vi) The Boers lost touch with their homeland, their movement to the interior of South Africa developed a new language and culture known as Afrikaans and referred to themselves as Afrikaners.

(vii) The British regarded the Boers as rebellious, The British colonial government felt responsible for the cruel treatment to these Boers and hence influenced Boers to move to the interior part of South Africa.

(viii) The Boers forcefully took African resources, such as land and livestock in the interior of South Africa.

BASIC ASSIGNMENT/ ACTIVITIES TO DO

1. Explain the meaning of industrial capitalism
2. Explain the demands of industrial capitalism
3. Explain the roles of the agents of industrial capitalism in preparing Africa for colonialism
4. Outline the major causes of the Boer Trek in South Africa.
5. Write shot notes on the effects of the Boer Trek on people of South Africa.
6. What are motives of the British at the Cape?
7. Explain why the Boers managed to defeat the Africans in the interior of South Africa.
8. Mention five tactics used by British to occupy the Cape.

END OF FORM TWO TOPICS

WELCOME IN FORM THREE TOPICS



TOPIC ONE
ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIALISM IN AFRICA.

Colonialism can be defined as the domination and subordination of one country by another powerful country economically, socially and politically. It is largely, the direct subordination of one country by another country politically, socially and economically with the aim of exploiting its resources.

By the second half of the 19th century, the imperialist powers from Europe in particular, established colonialism in Africa in order to meet their capitalist demands such as **raw materials** for their industries in Europe, **new areas of investment** where they could invest their capital, **market areas** for their manufactured merchandise (goods), **cheap labor** and **areas to settle the surplus population** which was increasing at an increasing pace especially soon after the industrial and demographic revolutions in Europe from the 1750's

STAGES OF COLONISATION

The colonization of Africa was not an overnight process, rather a slow process that was well organized. The process of colonialism was fundamentally of three (3) main stages namely,

1. The first phase was the penetration of the agents of colonialism namely explorers, missionaries and traders who are in other words referred to as the forerunners of colonialism.
2. The second phase was the intensive scramble for and partition (division) of Africa amongst the imperialist powers from Europe in particular. The process of the scramble for and partition of Africa was characterized by rivalries and conflicts, things which led to the summon of the Berlin Conference **(the Feast of the Beasts)** from November 1884 to February 1885 under the then German Chancellor Edward Otto Von Bismarck. The main objective of the conference was to divide Africa amongst the imperialist powers as peacefully as possible.

3. The third phase was the establishment of colonial rule from 1880's to 1900. This phase was characterized by the establishment of company rule, establishment of colonial economy and suppression of African resistances (reactions) against the colonial rule.

AGENTS OF COLONIALISM IN AFRICA AND THEIR POSITIONS (ROLES) IN THE COLONIZATION PROCESS.

INTROCTION: Colonial agents were the Europeans who came in Africa in order to pave way for the process of colonialism. For instance, Missionaries as the people who came on behalf of their home government in order to accomplish the three major objectives: To spread civilization, Spread Christianity and to do commerce. The case of Traders came in Africa in order to look for raw materials and area for investments. Whereas the Explorers came in Africa in order to search for information that was needed by the capitalists (David Livingstone, Henry Morton Stanley and Samuel Baker.
The agents of colonialism were/are the forerunners of colonialism. These were in three stages as follows;

1. **EXPLORERS.** This was the first group which came to Africa for the purpose of colleting various information about Africa especially the geographical information about Africa. Examples of some explorers are/were Barton and Speke 1856, they passed Tanganyika to Uganda, they discovered Lake Victoria, the name of the Queen of England by then, Henry Morton and Stanley, David Livingstone (born on 19th March 1813 and died on 1st May 1873; he died of malaria and internal bleeding due to dysentery) a famous explorer in East, Central and South Africa, De Brazza etc.

   THE ROLES OF EXPLORERS

   1. They informed the colonialists of the geographical position of Africa that helped and guided them in the process of dividing Africa.
   2. They provided valuable information about economic potentialities of Africa like the existence of minerals, fertile soil and so forth, which attracted the colonialists to Africa.
   3. They participated in the abolition of slave trade and gave information on the slavery that was taking place in the interior of Africa; such information was used by the abolitionists to abolish slave trade in Africa, a move which prepared the fertile grounds for the establishment of colonialism in Africa.
   4. They sketched the map of Africa showing all the potentialities found in Africa, the map was so very important as far as the process of colonization was concerned. David Livingstone mainly did this.
   5. The explorers signed some bogus treaties with some friendly African Chiefs, the treaties that provided the basis for the colonization of Africa.
   6. Some other explorers came to Africa in order to open up the interior for commerce. For instance, between 1878 and 1880 Joseph Thompson surveyed the region between Dar-es-Salaam and Lake Nyasa in order to construct a road for Zanzibar's Sultan. William MacKinnon came for the purpose of opening a short route from the coast to Lake Victoria via Kilimanjaro to develop commercial activities in the interior of East Africa.

   -

2. **MISSIONARIES.** These were so called religious people who came to Africa on behalf of their home governments in the pretext of civilizing Africans, spreading Christianity and abolishing slave trade, who considered it as an illegal/illicit/illegitimate trade. However, these people had a hidden mission of softening the hearts and minds of Africans to accept colonialism as easily as possible. That is why some Africa's scholars argue that the church was part and parcel of the capitalist system as it acted as a tool for exploitation of the Africans.

   Examples of some early missionaries in Africa were Ludwig Krapt, John Rebman, and John Moffat from Britain. They established missionary societies, by the 19th century; the whole continent was full of evangelical societies like the;

   i) The Holy Ghost Mission from Britain (1837)
   ii) The Church Missionary Society (CMS) from Britain 1799.
   iii) The Scottish white fathers from Scotland (1791).

THE ROLES OF THE MISSIONARIES IN THE COLONIZATION OF AFRICA.

(a) They provided information and feedback to their home countries about the nature of the people of African population, structure and of course the natural resources.
(b) They brainwashed and softened the hearts and minds of the Africans. They used Holy scriptures as documented in the holy bible like "The poor are the blessed for them the kingdom of God," Leadership comes from God" Do not admire what your friend possesses, forgive those who wrong you."
(c) They trained Africans in western education in missionary schools to meet the production needs of the colonialists.
(d) They largely succeeded in abolishing slave trade in Africa.
(e) They conducted many treaties with the African local chiefs on behalf of their home governments. For example, Stanley in Buganda, Francis Coillard of the Paris evangelical society was very instrumental in persuading Chief Lewanyika of Southern Rhodesia in 1890 to sign a treaty with the British South African Company.
(f) Some missionaries provided social services for other colonial administrators in case of shortage. For example, accommodation, schools and colleges.
(g) They divided Africans along religious lines as one of the ways of ruling Africans via divide and rule tactic.
(h) They introduced European culture to the Africans; the missionaries regarded the Africans as barbaric.

3. **TRADERS.** These came to Africa purposely to look for raw materials, markets and new areas for investments. They established legitimate trade and encouraged the production of commodities such as cotton, coffee, and rubber, cocoa and so forth.

Examples of the early traders in Africa were James Stevenson, William Mackinnon, Harry Johnson, Karl Peters, Cecil Rhodes, and George Goldie and so on. These traders opened up different companies (Chartered companies) in Africa for the purpose of meeting their capitalist demands. Such companies include.

a) The German East African Company, which was founded by Karl Peters on 28 March 1884.
b) The Imperial British East African Company (I.B.E.A.C.O), which was founded by the British trader William MacKinnon on 18 April 1886.
c) The Livingstone Company, which was founded in 1878 by James Stephen to trade ivory, gold and other products in East Africa.
d) The United African Company (U.A.C) in 1881 and to the Royal Niger Company in 1886.
e) The British South African Company, which was founded by Cecil Rhodes in 1889.
f) International Du Congo

THE ROLES OF THE TRADERS IN THE COLONIZATION PROCESS.

1) They provided financial support to the colonial governments in the construction of physical infrastructure such as roads, railways, and harbors in order to facilitate the exploitation process.
2) They conducted business on behalf of the colonial governments in their respective areas of administration in Africa.
3) The traders signed bogus treaties with the African local rulers on behalf of their home governments. For example, Sultan Mangungo of Msowero in Kilosa and Karl Peters on behalf of Germany on 29 November 1884.
4) The European traders bought manufactured goods from their countries to Africa.
5) They opened routes to the interior of Africa laying the foundation for future European exploration. The colonialists later on used the routes, which were used by the traders.
6) The traders competed for and exploited Africa's resources, this in turn created rivalry between European

countries for the right to control resources in various parts of Africa.

7) The traders encouraged settlers to come to Africa to invest in various sectors like agriculture, mining etc. and the traders gave settlers loans with dear interests as one of the ways of encouraging them to come and stay.

HOW THE COLONIAL AGENTS PAVED WAY FOR COLONIZATION OF AFRICA

The colonial agents played a very great role in the whole process of colonization of Africa in the following ways:

i) They facilitated and speeded up the process of the scramble and partition of African continent among the imperialist nations, through important information that was provided to their home government.

ii) They consolidated colonialism through constant assistance, in the process of colonialism e.g. some explorers became governors, whereas missionaries trained collaborators in their schools.

iii) They led to the abolition of slave trade whereby, all colonial agents participated in its abolition good example; missionaries preached against slave trade by regarding it as against the will of God, traders on other hand introduced legitimate trade.

iv) It led to the spread of Christianity by training catechists who under took the role of converting Africans in the new religion and adaptation western culture which led to de-culturalization of Africans.

v) Missionary won the confidence of African people and reduced the African resistance against colonialists, some African chiefs gained materially, militarily, and politically from the strangers they usually allowed and sometimes encouraged them to stay on. E.g., king Kasagama of Toro pleaded for the extension of the stay of lugard.

vi) They led to the introduction of commercial agriculture whereby cash crops and plantations were introduced at the expense of African self-sustaining agriculture.

vii) They integrated African economy into money economy I this case, African became the source of raw materials for the European industries.

viii) They led to the establishment of so-called legitimate trade by monopoly companies, which was unfair to the Africans and only favored the Europeans. This was because African resources were exploited to the maximum.

ix) They promoted disunity among the indigenous people that promoted civil conflict defending the white man's' religion e.g. in Buganda religious war between 1885-8 among the Catholics and the protestants.

THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF AFRICA.

The meaning of the concepts.

The word scramble simply means fight for something or struggle for something normally by many in order to get it before others do. The word partition means divide something into small portions.

Generally, the scramble of the European powers over Africa was the process of fighting for colonies in Africa,

which took place in the second half of the 19th C.
The scramble for and partition of Africa were very remarkable events in the African history. They were a beginning of the end of African freedom. The scramble for and partition of Africa covered remarkably short period from 1884 to about 1900. It involved the occupation of the interior of Africa by European nations.
The scramble for and partition of Africa were due to European economic and political changes. Largely, the European capitalist powers quarreled against themselves for fighting in Africa, which they considered very important and potential for them. The scramble for and partition of Africa led to the complete confiscation of African independence and sovereignty to the European powers.

FACTORS FOR THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF AFRICA.

By and large, there are two (2) main schools of thoughts, which explain the motives (reasons) behind the scramble for and partition of Africa, namely **Eurocentric school of thought** which combines reasons as to spread Christianity in Africa, to abolish slave trade, to civilize Africans and so on. On the other end of spectrum, there is Afro-centric school of thought by African scholars and believers.

1. **ECONOMIC FACTORS**

a) **Industrial Revolution in Europe.** This was the primary factor, which led to the scramble for and partition of Africa and later on total colonization of Africa. The Industrial Revolution was the drastic change in the industrial production system that firstly occurred in Britain in 1750. This period was characterized by inventions of machines and mushrooming industries in Europe. The industrial revolution led to the construction of many industries in Europe something, which led to industrial competition over raw materials, and of course, markets for the European manufactured goods. Such a competition led to the rise of the five (5) major capitalist demands such as raw materials, areas for investment, cheap labor, areas to settle the surplus population and market for the European manufactured goods. All these demands led to the scramble for and partition of Africa, hence colonialism. Industrial revolution led to the needs of industrial demands as follows;

i) **Demand to get both agricultu-ral and mineral raw- materials**. This was because agricultural raw materials like c-offee, cotton; sisal as well as mineral raw materials such as gold, diamond and copper were highly needed in Europe just to feed their hungry industries. As raw- materials in Europe were highly obtained in competitive leading to be sold in high price. Thus, low profit to the industrial owners (Europeans) in that case, to solve these problems Europeans decided to come in Africa where they would get cheap raw materials.

ii) **Demand to get market for the European Manufactured goods.** This caused the scramble for and partition of African continent simply because with invention of new technology together with application of heavy machines in Europe, European powers found themselves producing to the surplus, which could not be consumed completely within their (reach) country. The only solution was to find market elsewhere (outside) so that they could sell their surplus manufactured goods for high profit African in particular.

iii) **Demand to get cheap labor needed in European's plantations and mines.** This caused the Scramble for and partition of African continent simply because with invention of new technology as well as application of heavy machines in Europe, they opened up large plantations which needed intensive labor, worse still it was expensive to hire (employ) European labor because they needed high pay compared to African labor who in a sense could work under meager (low) pay, thus a need to come in Africa where they could get cheap African labor to maximize their profit.

iv) **Demand to get areas where they could invest their surplus capital.** This is because European powers since primitive accumulation of capital had invested heavily to the extent that they had surplus capital. The accumulated capital needed to be invested somewhere else for further profit making in this case Africa having not been invested by any power was seen the only place where European powers would invest their capital. Hence, Europeans scrambled the area.

v) **Demand to get areas where they would settle surplus population.** This was because with better improvement of social services like medical care, water supply, as well as good housing facilities it was apparent that large population in Europe were un employed eventually been in fear over being engaging in evil things like robbery, prostitution, and other chaos Europeans decided to come in Africa so as to get areas which would be used to settle such surplus population as the way to minimize and remove chaos that would affect their population.

vi) **Due to the demand to solve different movements as pioneered by workers and proletarization in Europe or trade unions:** Such movements were like Chartism, Ludism and new model trade unions as these demanded high payment, good working condition, and the reduction of working hours. In this case, production in Europe became very expensive and fall in profits of the bourgeoisie (capitalists).

2. **Strategic reasons.** The colonization of Africa was also motivated by the strategic reasons, as some areas were considered more attractive than other was economically, thus, the scramble for and partition of Africa. Such areas included those which had potential minerals like gold, diamond, and copper which had accessibility to the interior, fertile soil and enough people to supply labor power in the colonies;
3. **Prestigious reasons.** Some European powers especially the imperialist ones considered the scramble for and partition of Africa towards colonization as a prestigious thing. The more colonies one country had the more powerful it was considered.

4. **European balance of power.** The issue of balance of power was considered to be one amongst the main reasons for the scramble for and partition of Africa. Following the European nationalism, for example German nationalism in 1870's led to the need of balance of power for example after the Franco-Prussian war of 1870 to 1871, France lost its two potential provinces Alsace and Larraine to Germany as the result, France looked for Tunisia and Morocco in Africa as a way of balancing the power, hence the scramble for and partition of Africa.

5. **Humanitarian reasons and civilization reasons,** some European scholars argue that the scramble for and partition of Africa was for civilizing Africans who were considered to be barbaric i.e. totally uncivilized, killing one another, undertaking slave trade and other animal like practices.

6. **Due to the role played by the colonial agents:** This is because colonial agents (*Missionaries, Traders, and Explorers*) provided the information/ feedback and reported on the economic potentiality of Africa that persuaded their home government to come and take over African countries. Thus through the information given they paved way for the colonization of Africa since Africa became globally known.

FACTORS, WHICH MADE SOME AREAS IN AFRICA TO EXPERIENCE MORE INTENSIVE SCRAMBLE THAN OTHERS.

European powers were interested with different parts (areas) in Africa. This was because these areas would help Europeans to meet their demands as they had special qualities and significances. Some of the areas that experienced intensive Scramble in Africa were as follows.

1. **Easy accessibility to the interior/ Accessibility to the interior.** Areas like Egypt and the Nile valley and of course the Congo basin have easy access to the interior since the areas have big rivers, which made navigation easier done during the colonial era. The transportation of raw materials was possible. Thus, those areas, which had easy access to both the interior and the coast, experienced more intensive scramble than others. In this case, areas, which had navigable rivers as if Congo, Niger and Nile were highly, scrambled by different European powers some of the powers who showed much interest here included Portugal, Belgium and France.

2. **Presence of fertile land// Agricultural Potentialities**: Those areas which had proven soil fertility which ensured both growth and development of agriculture and growth of cash crops such as palm oil, cotton, coffee, sisal, rubber and so on were more scrambled than other areas. Some of these areas were like shire highlands in Malawi, Kikuyu high lands in Kenya and many other places that were fertile attracted many European powers because such areas were vital particularly in provision of reliable rainfall and good fertility which eventually fueled quick development of Agricultural activities. Other areas with fertility soil were Niger basin, Congo basin, and Nile valley. In these areas, different European powers showed much interest to ensure that they take lead of it. The well-known powers whose ambition was stifle included Britain, France, Belgium, and Portugal.

3. **Presence of minerals/ mineral potentialities**: Those areas, which were naturally endowed with minerals such as gold, diamond, and copper, experienced more intensive scramble than others. These areas attracted mostly the European powers because of its presence of valuable minerals like gold, silver and diamond, which were essential for the provision of raw materials to feed their hungry industries. In this case different areas in Africa assumed to be potentiality as witnessed by Angola, Nigeria, Gold coast, presently called as Ghana and Congo (DRC). In all these areas different European powers showed much interest but the most over leading powers were Belgium, Britain France and Portuguese.

4. **Dense population/areas with high population.** Those areas, which had dense population, were mostly preferred because they ensured constant supply of labor as opposed to those areas, which had no dense population. The dense population did not only ensure constant supply of labor but also the source of market for the goods, which were produced in the colonies. Some areas in Africa that had high population were like Cameroon, Senegal, Gold coast, Ghana and Nigeria.

5. **Geographical location.** Those areas, which were geographically located in areas with conducive climatic conditions, were more scrambled than others were. For example, those in the equatorial region like the Congo and Niger basins were more scrambled by the European powers than others. Nevertheless, the process of the scramble for and partition of Africa led to the conflicts amongst the European powers, which threatened the peace amongst those powers. For example, the Congo crisis, the Egyptian crisis, the Niger crisis and so on. All these crises necessitated the call for the **Berlin conference** in order to divide Africa as peacefully as possible.

a) **The areas, which were too strategic,** strategic areas, attracted Europeans in Africa because these areas would enable them to meet their demands, which all together focused on economic gain. In this way different parts (areas) in Africa became too strategic as such they motivated European powers to have more interests over such areas. Good example is Egypt that had Suez Canal. The British occupation of Egypt could make them benefit from the canal as it could be used as a shortcut and gateway to the trade caravans (ship) between Asia Africa and Europe through Mediterranean Sea.
More than that Egypt assumed of great significant during the Scramble for and subsequently the partition of Africa because it had substantial population, which could provide cheap labor in the capitalist

investments. Cheap labor in Egypt was expected to increase profit maximization.

Again Egypt had Nile River which seems to be of a great importance because it enabled (served) for Agricultural purpose in which both food and raw-materials needed for European industries and food for the industrial workers could be easily obtained, above all it would serve for navigation purposes.

It served also as attraction to tourists due to its historical significances in which many people were attracted to visit the place. In this case scrambling over this place was expected to be of great benefits.

Egypt was so special to Europeans due to its strategic that it had this is because the place is regarded as the ancient places in which different civilizations like Greeks, Romans and many others passed here. Hence taking this area meant that the given powers were expected to learn many things to them.

In addition, Egypt became to be regarded as too strategic during scramble for and partition of Africa due to its technological background it had. This is because different technological discoveries were made in Egypt also various scientists who discovered different discoveries originated from Egypt because of this the area provided a forum through which European regarded it as strategic areas.

Another strategic area was Uganda because it is a source of Nile River in this case to make constant flowing of Nile River European powers became attracted over Uganda.

Mean while Kenya became to be regarded as a strategic area because Uganda that was needed for constant flowing of Nile River was a *land lacked country* (country with not port) thus a need to control Kenya so that it could eventually serve European over controlling Uganda by using Mombasa port to transport different goods/cargoes from Europe going in Uganda. The most outstanding European powers who had much interest in this place were Britain and France.

SAMPLE QUESTIONS
1. Account for the reason behind the scramble for and partition of African continent. *2. Why the scramble for and partition of African continent took place during the last quarter of the 19th C and not before or After?* *3. What were the main factors for the European Scramble for and Partition of Africa?* *4. Why African continent was scrambled during the 19th century?* Why some areas in Africa were highly scrambled by European imperialist power during the 19th C. 2. Why the position of Egypt became of more special during the Scramble for and subsequently the partition of African continent?

THE BERLIN CONFERENCE OF 1884 TO 1885.

The Berlin Conference was the imperialistic conference, which was held in Berlin the capital city of Germany and named after the city in which it was held. The conference was firstly proposed by Portugal due to its claims over Congo and West Africa. It was held from Sunday, 15 November of the year 1884 up to Thursday, 26th of February of the year 1885. Under the leadership of the Germany's Chancellor by then who was a lawyer by profession **Edward Leopold Otto Von Bismarck. (1st April 1815- 30th July 1898).** The main agenda of the conference was to divide Africa peacefully for the interests of the capitalist nations. Africa was not represented in the Conference, nevertheless, **Denmark** and **the United States of America** attended the conference as **observers** only.

This conference is also called the Congo conference or West Africa conference. The countries, which

participated in the conference, were Austria- Hungary, Belgium, Denmark, France, Germany, Italy, Netherlands, Ottoman Empire, Russian Empire, Spain, Sweden–Norway, The United Kingdom and the USA.

EVENTS LEADING TO BERLIN CONFERENCE

Berlin conference came into being due to the following events;

a) Due to the information spread by missionaries, explorers and indeed traders about African in Europe. This is because these agents of colonialism fade substantial information on richness of Africa like presence of rivers, minerals, as well as its fertility. It was through these information European powers became motivated over the continent.
b) Due to the pressure caused by the rise of industrialization in many European powers particularly during the period of monopoly capitalism in which it created economic demand in terms of raw materials, markets as well as areas where they would invest their investment.
c) Due the result of the Scramble for Africa in order to acquire areas where they would meet their desire, indeed prompted the need to have the Berlin conference because European power were almost to fight in many parts of African continents such areas included Congo basin, Niger delta and south Africa. The way forward to get out of this was to have the Berlin conference that would eventually divide to each power peacefully.
d) Due to the role played by a Germany chancellor Otto Von Bismarck in which after discovering the possibility of the eruption of war he decided to call the Berlin Conference to avoid war among the scrambling nations.

WHY WAS THE BERLIN CONFERENCE HELD IN GERMANY?

1. Germany unification made Germany the most powerful and influential nation not only in Europe but also in the world by 1870.
2. Germany's industrialization which made Germany to be in need of colonies for raw-materials and areas for investment that is why Germany responded to the request of Portugal as quickly as possible.
3. The role and personality of Chancellor Edward Otto Von Bismarck he was very ambitious leader who wanted recognition by other European leaders that is why he called (summoned) the Berlin conference.
4. The hostility between France against Germany the conflict is rooted from the Franco-Prussian war of 1870-1871. Germany summoned the conference in order to check the French expansionism in Africa.

THE OBJECTIVES OF THE BERLIN CONFERENCE OF 1884 TO 1885.

1. The first and the foremost objective of the Berlin Conference of 1884 to 1885 was to divide Africa amongst the imperialist powers as peacefully as possible because of the process of the scramble and partition of Africa which had generated hatred/hostility amongst the imperialist powers.
2. Portugal's request for the conference in order to check for its claims in the Congo Basin and West Africa, thus the request by Portugal was one of the agenda which necessitated the summon of the conference in 1884.
3. To abolish slave trade and slavery in Africa and establish the so-called legitimate trade.
4. It was called in order to discuss the European balance of power amongst the European nations.
5. Bismarck aimed at taming (to control easily) the French hostilities, after its defeat during the Franco-Prussian war of 1870.
6. To deal with matters related to European trade and territorial claims in Africa.
7. To discuss and settle the existing territorial disputes over the Congo and Niger basin as well as other parts of African continent.
8. To avoid military confrontation among the imperialist powers that was eminent among the imperialist powers especially after the joining of Germany as a late comer in the process after taking over colonies in Togo, Cameroon, South west Africa (Namibia) and what came to be known as Germany East Africa

the present Tanzania, Burundi and Rwanda.

THE TERMS / AGREEMENT/ PRINCIPALS/ RESOLUTIONS REACHED DURING THE BERLIN CONFERENCE 1884 – 1885.

The Berlin Conference passed different resolutions, which later caused the process of colonization of Africa; these resolutions are as explained here below:

i) The Congo basin was declared a free state under king Leopard of Belgium and the Niger River was free for navigation to all imperialist nations. It recognized Leopard's so- called international association as the legitimate authority in Congo basin. In return, the Belgium king to allow European traders and missionaries free access to the area.

ii) They agreed that strong and sophisticated military weapons were prohibited to be brought in Africa. They allowed light weapons to be used in Africa. This aimed to maintain security in the colonies and to avoid the accessibility of such strong weapons to the colonized subjects (Africa).

iii) They agreed that effective occupation should be implemented by the imperialist nations this was through setting Administrators in the colonies who were to supervise tasks

iv) They agreed that in case of the resistance by Africans to the colonial occupation, no any European country should give help to the Africans to fight fellow European.

v) They agreed that all colonial powers should take initiative measure to abolish slave trade and slavery in their colonies and to allow free access to the colonial agents in the interior as to campaign against slave trade and spread civilization in the interior.

vi) They agreed that in case of any disputes among the imperialist powers they should solve it peacefully without the use of force.

vii) They agreed that if a nation occupies a coastal area it had to extend it legally, to the interior and to colony of another colonial master.

viii) Principle of notification, it was agreed that any power requiring any part of Africa was supposed to inform another power in order to escape misunderstanding among the powers.

ix) The conference also agreed that areas in Africa already proclaimed protectorate by European nations before conference should remain in their hands, such areas included the Congo and those territories which Germany had annexed like Togo, South West Africa (Namibia)

THE EFFECTS OF THE BERLIN CONFERENCE ON AFRICA.

The Berlin conference had the following impacts or effects on Africa as follow.

1. It partitioned or sliced Africa amongst the European nations into the colonial possessions and fixed boundaries in their interests. For instance, Britain got 27 colonies, France got 12 colonies, Germany got 9 colonies and Belgium got 2 colonies.
2. It led to the loss of Africa's independence and sovereignty to the European nations, which established colonial rule.
3. It led to the abolition of slave trade and the introduction of legitimate trade, which was of course beneficial to the imperialist powers.
4. It led to much suffering amongst African people under the colonial administration especially when they (Africans) resisted against colonialism.
5. It divided the ethnic groups in Africa into separate boundaries something, which implanted the spirit of disunity amongst them. For example, the Makonde in Mozambique and Tanganyika, the Luo in Kenya. Sudan and Uganda and the Maasai in Kenya and Tanzania by then Tanganyika.
6. It planted the seed which led to the outbreak of the First World War (1914 - 1918) and the Second World War (1939 - 1945) because the conference did not satisfy the ambitions and interests of some nations

i.e. dissatisfaction in territorial arrangements in Africa. For example, Germany was not satisfied by the conference for other powers like Britain got the Lion's share.

7. European nations introduced new systems of administration in Africa. The German and British employed direct rule and indirect rule respectively in their colonies, while the French and the Portuguese used the assimilation and later on association policy to administer their colonies in Africa.
8. The Berlin conference marked the beginning of colonialism in Africa. Many European powers took control of various parts of Africa, forcing African to work for them.
9. It led to the introduction of foreign European languages in Africa to ease colonial administration in the colonies. For example, Francophone the French-speaking countries such as Senegal, Mali, Ivory Coast and Benin. Anglophone (English-speaking) countries such as Kenya, Zimbabwe, Zambia, Ghana, and Nigeria. Lusophone (Portuguese-speaking countries such as Angola. Guinea Bissau and Mozambique.

THE PARTITION PROCESS.

a) Introduction.

The partition process of East Africa between Germany and Britain took place between1884 to 1890. It was completed into two (2) agreements between them.

i) THE ANGLO-GERMAN AGREEMENT OF 1886.

This was the agreement between (Britain) and Germany. The reason for this agreement was Germany's recognition of Karl Peters' treaties. On arriving back in Berlin from East Africa in February 5th, 1885, Karl Peters presented his treaties to Bismarck and Kaizer William. Kaizer granted him the imperial charter. The area was by then to come under the society for the German colonization when it became chartered, the society came to be known as German East African Company. The Germany recognition of Karl Peters' treaties threatened Britain's interests and provoked the Sultan who protested and appealed to Britain for intervention another reason is that the British and German companies interfered with each other thus causing rivalry.

THE TERMS OF THE TREATY

In the Anglo – German treaty of 1886 between Germany, Britain and the Sultan, the following agreements were reached.

a) The Sultan's spheres would be Zanzibar, Pemba, Lamu, Kismayo, Bravo, Merka, Mogadishu and the 10 miles' coastal strip on the mainland.
b) The German spheres of influence would be; the present day Tanganyika and Dar – es-Salaam.
c) Britain part would be roughly the today's Kenya.

THE ANGLO-GERMAN AGREEMENT OF 1890 (HELGOLAND TREATY).

The reasons for this agreement were first the Agreement of 1886 had fixed no boundaries in the West of Tanganyika and Kenya. Second, the question of Uganda, Karl Peters was already in Uganda to make treaties for German colonization. However, by then Britain had already colonized Egypt and that had to guard the Suez Canal. Third, the religious conflicts amongst religious groups in Uganda. The Christians who were led by the Christian missionaries (White fathers) against the Anglicans, the Muslims and the traditionalists under Kabaka. The conflicts led to the killings of missionaries and Christians as a whole. Therefore, the missionaries seriously called upon the colonization of Uganda. The Anglican missionaries called upon the British government while the white fathers called upon German government.

TERMS.

In the Anglo – German Agreement of 1890, there were only two parties, the German and the British. The Sultan did not matter by then. The following are the terms of the agreement.

a) Britain spheres would be **Zanzibar, Pemba, Kenya and Uganda.**
b) German sphere would be Tanganyika and an island in the North Sea called **HELGOLAND.** That is why this agreement is sometimes referred to as the **HELGOLAND TREATY OF 1890** in which Germany gave up the claims to Witu.

ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL RULE IN AFRICA.

Immediately after the Berlin Conference on 26th February 1885, the European powers managed to establish their rule and control over Africans. The establishment of control was made effective between 1885 and 1912 when African countries became under the colonial rulers.

As introduced earlier, the situation whereby one powerful nation dominates and controls the other weaker nation politically, socially and economically and establishes exploitative structures is known as **COLONIALISM.** The country, which dominates the other, is known as a **COLONIZER** whilst those, which are colonized, are known as **COLONIES.**

Colonialism is a situation where by a powerfully/ strong nation invade and dominate the weaker nation by establishing exploitative nature. OR,

Colonialism refers to the political, social and economic system through which one strong and powerful country/ Nation dominates the weaker one in all aspects of their life such as economically socially and politically. It can also refer to the direct subordination of one country by another country, politically, socially and economically with the aim of exploiting her resources.

By and large, colonialism was not accepted in Africa with open arms, thus, it was not easy to establish colonial rule in Africa, hence various techniques/tactics were used to establish colonial rule in Africa as follow.

1. **DIPLOMACY.** This was one of the tactics, which were used by the imperialist powers to establish their colonial rule in Africa. This was practically done through agreements of treaties, which were signed between African chiefs and the agents of colonialism. The treaties signed were bogus; hence, many African chiefs lost power and independence. Example Carl Peter signed a treaty with Chief Mangungo of Msovero in Morogoro in 1884; Johnson hurry signed a treaty in 1900 with Daud Chwa of Buganda such treaties made Africans to be encroached (under) colonial rule.

2. **GUNBOAT DIPLOMACY.** This is the way of making another nation accepts your demands through intimidation (force). This technique was mostly used in the areas where their chiefs seemed to be reluctant to offer their areas to the colonialists. E.g., Sultan of Zanzibar surrendered a treaty to Carl Peter of German because he used this technique; captain Lugard in Nigeria used the same approach.
3. **MILITARY CONQUEST.** The colonial powers used military conquest in areas where diplomacy failed and when and where Africans resisted against the colonial rule; such tactics were used to suppress Chief Mkwavinyika Munyigumba Mwamvuyinga of the Hehe (1891-1898), Mkwawa died in June 1898 when he was only left with his two servants. Sergeant Merkel cut off Mkwawa's head and dispatched it to Germany for Governor Von Liebert, offered 5,000 rupees to the person who would bring him Mkwawa's head. The skull was finally retured to Tanganyika on 9th July 1954. Isike (Nyamwezi), Kabalenga (Bunyoro), Kaitolel Arap Samoei (Nandi).

4. **COLLABORATION.** This was the colonial system of administration that created alliances between groups of Africans with the colonial powers against other African groups. Such a situation occurred when two (2) African groups were in conflicts. Thus, the weaker one cooperated with Europeans in

order to get protection and support against its enemy. Examples of the African rulers who used collaboration method were Mangi Mandara of Moshi who cooperated with Germans against Mangi Sina of Kibosho in 1891, Chief Merere of Sangu who collaborated with the Germans against Mkwawa of the Hehe.

5. **IDEOLOGICAL METHOD.** In this tactic, the colonialists introduced western ideologies to soften the hearts and minds of Africans to accept colonialism. For example, the Christian missionaries introduced Christianity, which went hand in hand with the provision of colonial education, which was of course offered, to the sons and daughters of African chiefs only. As a result, those who were converted to Christians became loyal to the colonialists, hence colonialism. That's why some historians argue that **"colonialism came armed with two weapons one in each hand, the bible in the left was presented first and the gun later"**

6. **APPLICATION OF RACISM.** This was the ideology, which internalized the belief that a certain race was superior to other races. The African black color was insulted to be the color of the devil, which was always painted in black color, and angels in white color as Europeans are, this brought inferiority complex amongst African.

7. **ADMINISTRATIVE TECHNIQUES**. For example, Britain used indirect rule tactic of administering its colonies in order to do away with African's resistances and France used assimilation and later on association Policies to administer its colonies.

8. **Through deportation of some of the tribal leaders who were exiled away to stop resistance.** Good example, Jaja of Opobo was deported to West Indies in 1891. Mwanga of Buganda and Kabarega of Bunyoro were exiled in Seychele Island as they resisted colonial rule.

9. **Through divide and rule approach.** Here colonizers on tribal lines, economic lines, divided the Africans and religious e.g.in the Ganda tribe was given education and white caller jobs while the northerners were to provide cheap labor. The Catholics were segregated in the British colonies and all leadership posts were given to the protestants such acts kept African disunited and easy to be ruled.

ESTABLISHMENT OF THE CHARTERED COMPANIES IN AFRICA.

During the early phase of the establishment of colonial rule in Africa, the colonial governments used charted companies to administer the colonies on their behalf.

N: B A charter is a written statement describing the right that a particular group of people should have.
OR
A written statement of the principle and aims of an organization, therefore, chartered companies are organization qualified according to the principles and aims for which they were/are established. Basically, the chartered companies were trading companies; the European colonial powers opted to use the chartered companies in order to reduce the administrative costs.

Some of the chartered companies, which operated in Africa by then were; The Imperial British East African Company (I.B.E.A. Co 18th April 1888 under Sir William Mackinnon). The German East African Company (G.E.A. Co 28th March 1884 under Karl Peters), the British South Africa Company (B.S. A 1889), The Royal Niger Company (RNC 1886 under George Tauban Goldie) The Dutch West India Company (D.W.I. Co 3rd June 1621).

THE ROLES OF THE COMPANY RULE IN AFRICA.

1. They became active in abolishing slave trade especially in the interior of Africa.
2. To administer the colonies on behalf of their home governments.
3. To suppress and stop any African resistance against the imposition of the colonial rule. For example, the I.B.E.A. Co played an important role in suppressing the Nandi resistance in Kenya and so did the G.E.A. Co in Tanganyika against the Hehe under chief Mkwawa.
4. To carry out construction of physical infrastructure in their respective areas of administration so as to ease the exploitation of African's resources. For examples, they constructed roads, railways and harbors to ease the transportation of laborers and raw materials in the colonies.
5. The companies under their leadership entered into bogus treaties with the African local chiefs in order to expand more spheres of influence on behalf of their home government.
6. They opened up plantations in Africa so as to meet the very necessary capitalist demands, raw materials in particular.

FAILURE OF THE COMPANY RULE IN AFRICA.

1. **Remoteness of some areas.** The company traders had difficulties in penetrating the interior of Africa because of thick forests and lack of reliable infrastructure, roads in particular.

2. **The company administration faced widespread resistances and hostility from the people of the interior of Africa**; therefore, instead of concentrating on trading activities, the companies spent much time and money to suppress African resistances from the ethnic groups which were found in the interior of Africa. For example, the British trader Peter West and his thirty workers were attacked by the Nandi in Kenya in 1888, Abushiri bin Salim revolted against the Germans in Tanganyika.

3. **Running of the colonies was expensive due to lack of enough capital.** For instance, staff wages and salaries this made the companies bankrupt hence, they could not get the expected profits something, which led to the failure.

4. **Lack of enough and experienced Personnel to administer the activities of the companies.** The staff employed by the companies was mostly military officers who were not diplomatic and competent enough to fulfill the various duties that they were assigned to them.

5. **Language barrier.** This is rooted from the fact that upon the arrival of the colonialists, Africans had no access to formal education. The traders did not know all the vernaculars that were used by the Africans by then something which led to communication breakdown, as the result some of the roles were not effectively done, hence the failure of the company.

6. **Imperfect competition between and amongst the companies.** For instance, for the case of East Africa the Imperial British East African Company under William Mackinnon had regular clashes over the region against the German East African Company under Karl Peters something, which made the companies fail to execute their functions. The clashes led to the first Anglo – German Agreement of 1886 and the second Anglo – German Agreement of 1890.

7. **The threat of tropical diseases.** Such as malaria. By then malaria was known to have no cure. It thus, claimed the lives of many agents of colonialism such as explorers, missionaries and traders. As a result, some of the traders did not go into the interior to trade as per the charter of their companies, besides they fell short of personnel due to death hence failure.

8. **Mismanagement or maladministration.** Some chartered companies failed to execute their duties as effectively as possible due to mismanagement of funds. In this case, some leaders of the companies misallocated the funds for some objectives, which were not in accordance with the charter for which the companies were established. For example, it is historically recorded that Cecil John Rhodes (5th July 1853 went to South Africa aged 17 he entered the diamond at Kimberly in 1871 when he was 18 years, he died on 22 June 1893) had the vision of constructing a railway line from Cape Town to Cairo – Egypt, the project which had started costing his company (BSC) hence failure.

AFRICAN RESISTANCES AGAINST COLONIAL RULE.

Etymologically, the term resist comes from a Latin word **"RESISTENTIA"** from the verb **resistere** which means **hold back** in Standard English language. By and large, resist means to refuse to accept something and try to stop it from happening or to fight back when attacked. One can define the term resist as dislike or opposition to a plan, idea.

African resistance means negative reaction against colonialism that involved the use of weapons by African societies. It was the phenomenon whereby Africans became hostile to European encroachment. Before and during colonialism Africans started to resist against Europeans. This is due to the naked fact that colonialism was not accepted in Africa by both hands. Several factors like land alienation, forced labor, etcetera led Africans to resist against colonialism.

Resistances of Africans against Europeans were highly involving Africans, who tended to use poor weapons to resist while opposing colonial rule.

TYPES OF AFRICAN RESISTANCES.

There are two (2) types of resistances and these types are categorized while looking at the size or timing as follows:

According to size

There were two (2) categories according to size, **small-scale** and **large-scale** resistances.

1. Small scale resistances

These types of resistances involved one tribe fighting against the colonialists and they basically covered a small area e.g.

- Hehe Vs. Germans
- Jaja of Opobo Vs. British
- Mandinka (under Somare Toure) vs. French.

2. Large scale resistances

They were types of resistances that involved more than one tribe fighting in unity against colonial rulers.

Examples

- Majimaji war (it involved the Yao, Matumbi, Bena, Sangu, Mbungu, Ngoni, Zaramo, Sangu and Bena and other tribes on the southern part of Tanzania by then Tanganyika who resisted against the Germans)

- Ndebele and Shona against the British

According to timing

Primary resistances

Africans against Europeans fought these resistances at the early stages of colonial rule in Africa before (1885).

Secondary resistances
Africans against Europeans fought these resistances during the colonial era (after 1885).
Case studies

E.g. of resistances in Africa involved:

1. Ndebele and Shona resistance vs. British
2. Nama and Herero vs. Germans
3. Somore Toure (Mandinka vs. French)
4. Jaja of Opobo vs. British
5. Majimaji war in Tanganyika vs. Germans
6. Mau Mau Resistances vs. British

Ndebele/Matebele and Shona resistance against the British (in Southern Rhodesia (Zimbabwe)
Introduction: Shona and Ndebele are societies that are found in Southern Rhodesia. The Shona carries its origin in Southern Rhodesia while Ndebele can be traced to further parts of South of Africa.

The origin of Ndebele/Matebele can be deduced to be from South Africa. The Ndebele migrated from South Africa into Southern Rhodesia.

Due to the Mfecane war, Ndebele under Msilikazi started to migrate to north from the southern part of South Africa in 1830s, the war resulted in Shortage of land.

As they reached Southern Rhodesia, they met the Shona. They built relationships with the Shona and in the end; the Ndebele turned Shona into their servants.

The 1880s was a time when Europeans under the B.S.Ec. and several missionaries reached southern Rhodesia. Among the famous missionaries involved was R. Moffat who stayed in southern Rhodesia for not less than 30 years.

Europeans in southern Rhodesia started to collaborate with Shona while being against Ndebele.

During the time of Lobengula, who started to control Southern Rhodesia in 1880s, a position he took over after the death of Msilikazi, he (Lobengula) signed a treaty with B.S.Ec. In this treaty, he was promised to be given:
In the end, Lobengula gained nothing. Hence in 1883-1887 was the time when Ndebele under Lobengula started resisting against the British (up to this time Shona used to collaborate with the British).

NDEBELE/MATEBELE AGAINST BRITISH
The resistance started in 1893, Ndebele against the British while Shona collaborated with the British.

Factors for Ndebele resistance against the British

1. "Mwari and Mlimo" cult. Africans (Ndebele) believed that the Rinderpest disease (was brought by the British). Hence, they started to fight.

2. Cultural interference - the British started to help Shona from being punished by Ndebele leaders, before the British rule, Ndebele chiefs were allowed to punish Shona.

3. Failure of the treaty between Lobengula and the British, the British did not meet the agreement; they did not give Lobengula all that they had promised him.

4. Land alienation the British under B.S.Ec. started to take land from the Africans for opening their economies hence the alienated Africans started to fight to regain their land.

5. Introduction of taxes - Africans were forced to pay cash tax an action that Africans were against as a result they started fighting more.

6. Forced labor with less pay (conscription) - Africans was forced to work on colonial economies, without being paid or with little pay, (hence Africans started to fight).

7. Harsh treatment/maladministration from the colonial government as coercive forces continued to harass Africans hence Africans resisted against this situation.

8. Cattle confiscation - Europeans started to take cattle from Ndebele by force hence resulting into resistance. At the end of this war Ndebele were defeated by the British hence, they obeyed the British rule like Shona.

NDEBELE AND SHONA RESISTANCE AGAINST THE BRITISH (CHIMURENGA WAR)

Chimurenga is a word in the Shona language roughly meaning **"Revolutionary Struggle"** During the resistance between Ndebele and British (1893 – 94) Shona used to collaborate with Europeans.

In 1896, a war erupted that involved Ndebele against the British, during this war, Shona also started to resist against the British, this resistance was called Chimurenga war.
During Chimurenga war, Shona and Ndebele used to fight separately against British that they failed in the resistance:

FACTORS FOR CHIMURENGA WAR

The factors that led to Chimurenga war were the same as those that led to the Ndebele war against the British (in 1893). Some of these factors were:

1. British continued to take land from the Africans to open several economic activities, thus alienating Africans.

2. Africans continued to be forced to work as cheap laborers in colonial projects.

3. Introduction of taxes, Africans were forced to pay tax in cash hence Ndebele and Shona resisted against this.

4. Harsh treatment (Africans were treated badly hence they resisted).

5. Africans decided to resist trying to regain their political power.

6. Local beliefs (Mwari and Mlimo Cult)

Effects of Chimurenga war

In 1887, both Ndebele and Shona were defeated (therefore, they agreed to be under the British Colonial rule). The resistance had several effects to both as follows:

1. It led to the destruction of properties to both.

2. Since Africans' properties were destroyed, Africans decided to destroy infrastructure built by the British colonialists.

3. It led to death of both Africans and Europeans even though the death toll for Africans was much higher.

4. The British colonial masters were forced to change their administration style to reduce resistance from Africans.

5. The resistance cost a lot; large sums of money were spent by the British to buy weapons and other things needed for the war.

6. It led to the eruption of hunger for the Africans.

7. The war ended with the Shona and Ndebele being defeated.

8. It resulted into the decline of economic activities for both sides, for Africans (Ndebele and Shona) and for the British.

9. It led to insecurity and lack of peace and harmony.

Failure of Ndebele and Shona on Chimurenga

Activity

"Failure of Africans on their resistances against colonial imposition was due to technological backwardness." Discuss.

Chimurenga war ended with Africans being defeated. The failure of Ndebele and Shona was due to the following factors:

1. Africans had lower technology levels hence they used poor weapons while Europeans used much better and more powerful weapons.

2. Africans lacked experience in fighting compared to the Europeans.

3. Africans had a weak economic base so they failed to resist for a long time.

4. Disunity among the Africans while at first (1893) Shona collaborated with the British and in 1896 Shona and Ndebele fought separately against British.

NAMA – HERERO RESISTANCE AGAIST GERMANS (1904 – 1907)

ORIGIN OF NAMA AND HERERO

The origin of Nama and Herero can be deduced in South West Africa (Namibia). Nama was under the leadership of Hendrick Witbooi and Herero under Samuel Maherero.

Before the intrusion of Europeans in South West Africa Nama and Herero were in good relations. Starting from 1880s Europeans started to increase in large numbers in South West Africa and they decided to collaborate with Samwel Maherero (leader of the Herero) this action led to the conflict between Nama against Herero societies.

Early 20th Century was a time when conflicts started between Herero against the Germans. Starting from 1904 Nama and Herero started to resist against the German colonial government.

FACTORS FOR NAMA – HERERO RESISTANCE AGAINST GERMANS

Several factors lead to Nama Herero resistance against Germans as follow:

1. Germans started to take land from the Africans id est. land alienation, thus alienating Africans while opening their projects.

2. Africans were forced to work in colonial economic activities while being paid very little. That is forced labor

3. Europeans introduced taxes in form of cash something that Africans rejected. (This form of cash taxes were different from the forms used in pre – colonial times).

4. Harsh treatment from the colonial government: the Germans (due to the nature of German administration) treated Africans badly.

5. Cattle confiscation: German colonial masters started to take cattle from the Africans by force hence it resulted to resistance.

6. Loss of political power, so Nama and Herero fought trying to regain their power from the German Colonial government.

Effects of Nama – Herero resistance against Germans

At end of this war (1907) Nama and Herero were defeated (Africans failed to continue fighting). The end of Nama and Herero war against Germans had the following effects:

1. It led to the destruction of properties for both Europeans and Africans.

2. It resulted to death of both Africans and Europeans.

3. It brought hunger and famine for the Africans.

4. It taught the German colonial masters a lesson, as they changed the way of controlling their colonies (instead of using force they started to use peaceful ways of controlling their colonies).

Failure of Nama and Herero

Nama and Herero were eventually defeated and were under German colonial power. (Nama and Herero were totally defeated). The reasons for this defeat were:

1. Africans (Nama and Herero) had poor weapons compared to Europeans e.g. of weapons used by Africans were Arrows and spears).

2. Due to disunity - Africans fought separately (Nama and Herero used to fight against Germans separately).

3. Africans were less experienced in fighting compared to the Europeans.
4. Africans (Nama and Herero) had poor economic base thus they could not continue fighting for a long time.

MAJIMAJI RESISTANCE (1905-1907). By the 19th century, Germans had defeated many East African Societies such as the coastal states. In 1904, the prophet Kinjeketile Bokero Ngwale aroused at Ngarambe near Rufiji River. Kinjeketile started to mobilize people under the use of local belief; he introduced the use of the magic water in which some traditional medicine powder like had been added, as a weapon in war against the Germans.

By 1905 he mobilized a pilgrimage in Ngarambe he believed that the water could be used to defeat the Germans and turn the German bullets into water. The word **Maji** comes from the Matumbi vernacular "**Mashe"** which means water in English Language.
After the pilgrimage, on Monday, 31st July 1905 the war started, Africans on the Southern part of Tanganyika like Matumbi, Ngindo, Lugulu, Ngoni against the Germans (they started by destroying the colonial masters' cotton plantations).
N: Germans hanged B. Kinjeketile due to treason on 4th August 1905. KINJEKETILE amongst the Matumbi means KIMENIITIKIA in Kiswahili language.

FACTORS FOR MAJIMAJI UPRISING
Majimaji resistance was a result of several factors:
1. Africans were forced to grow cash crops e.g. Cotton in the southern part of Tanganyika.

2. Introduction of hut tax (being in cash it affected many Africans as a result they decided to resist.

3. Harsh treatment from the colonial Government e.g. Africans were highly punished by the German colonial government akaris.

4. Colonial government used coercive forces like police, army, tended to force Africans to work in the colonial plantations (as a result Africans resisted).

5. Africans were against Arabs, Akidas and the Jumbes who were appointed by colonial government to supervise the colonial economic activities.

6. Exploitation from the colonial Government e.g. colonial Government tended to export of a lot of natural resources with high value from Africa while importing less value goods.

7. The hatred of the Jumbes and Akidas who were quite unpopular.

8. The German askaris slept with the Ngido wives something, which embarrassed the Africans.

9. The influence of Kinjeketile Ngwale who was charismatic and religious leader who through his intelligence, he mobilized his fellow Tanganyika has to fight against Germans.

10. Cultural interference by the Germans, the Christian missionaries in particular who set on fire the African's traditional sacred huts

EFFECTS OF MAJIMAJI RESISTANCE.

Majimaji resistance had several effects to both Africans and Europeans. Some of these effects were:

1. It led to the destruction of properties e.g. Cotton plantations, railways and houses.

2. Depopulation occurred due to death of several Africans and a few Europeans.

3. It taught the colonial government a lesson (Germany changed the system of administration (instead of using force, they started to use peaceful ways).
4. At the end, Africans were totally defeated.

Why the failure of Africans on Majimaji resistance?

Africans failed due to:

1. Lack of experience in fighting wars compared to Europeans.
2. Poor weapons compared to the Europeans.

3. Disunity among the Africans.

4. False belief in water (can be used as a weapon)

5. Poor economic base for the Africans meant they could not fight for a long time.

6. Poor organization amongst Africans.

MAU MAU RESISTANCE.

Mau mau was a secret (or underground) movement of Africans in Kenya. The Kikuyu tribe started to fight secretly. At large Maumau movement had three class struggle being Government (colonial Government) settlers (who were Europeans and Asians) and Africans. To the large extent Maumau, war was a result of the first and second world wars, which led to ex-soldiers who started to organize their fellow Africans to resist against European colonial masters.

Factors for the Mau Mau movement (rebellion) in 1952

Mau Mau movement in Kenya started due to several factors:

1. Africans were restricted to grow coffee in Kenya highlands thus, they resisted.

2. Colonial government took land from the Africans giving it to the settlers (this was done through Crown Land Act of 1919). In this Act, land was granted to the Queen of England for 999 years.

3. Introduction of hut tax, matiti tax, head tax etc to the Africans resulted in the negative response from the Africans (Africans were required to pay tax in cash).

4. Introduction of forced labor – the colonial government used force to get Africans to work on the settlers' plantations.
5. The use of laws and ordinance e.g. Colonial Government introduced Identity Cards for Africans "Kipande" system. The identity card was to show one's place of occupation.

Effects of Mau Mau resistance

Mau Mau war had several effects to both Africans and Europeans e.g.:

1. It led to death of many Africans (almost 3,000 people died).

2. The destruction of properties had a great financial impact to the colonial government. It is estimated that it cost almost £50,000 to restore destroyed property.

3. It taught a lesson to both Africans and Europeans e.g. Europeans started to change the system of administration.

4. It led to the destruction of properties to both Africans and Europeans (but Europeans were highly affected).

5. It affected many settlers while they failed to continue with production due to the shortage of labor and the war itself.

6. It led to the declaration of the state of emergence in Kenya.

7. It raised Kenyans' awareness and consciousness about their freedom and at the end of the day Kenya regained its independence in 1963 under Mzee Jomo Kenyatta.

8. It led to imprisonment and assassination of radical political leaders. For example, Dedan kimath was assassinated while several others imprisoned like Jomo Kenyatta.

The Nandi resistance (1890-1906) by Koitalel Arap Samoei who died on 19th October 1905.

THE REASONS AS TO WHY AFRICAN REACTED AGAINSTCOLONIAL RULE IN AFRICA.

African resisted/ reacted against the imposition of colonial rule because of many reasons these were;

a) Because colonial rule was an alien (new) foreign to the Africa in a sense that it was imposed to the Africans by the European imperialists therefore Africans did not recognize and accept it.
b) Colonial rule was undemocratic and illegitimate to the Africans since the Africans did not elect the colonial rulers, Hence Africans decided to react against it so as to get democratic and legitimate government that will fulfill African's interests.
c) Colonial rule were too oppressive, harsh and exploitative to the Africans especially the forcing of Africans to work, pay taxes confiscate all African resources like land made Africans not to tolerate

rather to fight against colonialist.

d) Colonialists interfered with African important interests such as land, trade traditional and customs i.e. women circumcision. Hence, Africans decided to react against. Example Mandinka resistance against France.
e) African did not want to be controlled by the colonialist as a result they wanted to regain their lost sovereignty and their independence where by that time was under the hands of colonialist.

f) African reacted against colonialist because they were against cash crops production, which they saw that was of no benefit to Africans especially during the colonial economy. This was because Africans were forced to produce cotton, sisal and coffee, which were not easily consumed in Africa due to shortage/ absence of industries. Thus, Africans decided to react against e.g. Maji Maji war against cotton cultivation in Tanganyika.
g) African reacted against colonial rule because colonialist introduced Christianity, which killed African local beliefs as a result to maintain their beliefs Africans divided to react over European.

FACTORS, WHICH DETERMINED THE NATURE OF AFRICAN RESISTANCES OR REACTIONS.

As shown in the types of African resistances, it is obvious that the nature and ways of resistances differed in Africa. While some societies had, active resistances other resisted passively or decided to collaborate with the colonial invaders. There are various factors, which explain these differences, such factors include.

1. **The level of development**. People who had achieved great developments such as weapons like guns, strong leaders and high production in agriculture and other sectors of the economy were able to stage up stiff active resistances against the colonialists. For example, chief Marere of the Sangu allied with the Germans to defend himself against the strong army of Mkwawa of the Hehe.
2. **Ignorance of some rulers in several societies.** Some rulers were ignorant of the white men's ambitions because they thought that Europeans would be friends who could provide them with security so they collaborated with them but it was too late when they became aware of imperialistic ambitions in their societies.
3. **Presence of Missionaries in many societies** led to the rise of collaboration. European missionaries urged their converts to refrain (to stop) from resisting because such actions were signs of backwardness and endangered the souls of those who might fight actively, most of the rulers who had allowed the British to extend colonial rule in Eastern and Northern Uganda.
4. **Individual interests among the leaders,** either made them fight actively or conduct collaboration. Those who fought were trying to protect their political positions, because they feared that the white men had planned to overthrow them from leadership posts. Some rulers who were weak could not fight back thus they chose to collaborate with the whites, for example Kahigi of Kihanja of Bukoba in Tanganyika was the weakest leader in Buhaya, so he decided to ally with the Germans.
5. **Outbreak of disease** e.g. Render pest reduced cattle, due to that Lenana leader of the Kaputie and Matapata Maasai and Sendeyo, a leader of the Loita Maasai collaborated with the whites.

WHY COLLABORATION?

African collaborated with Europeans because of the following reaons;

a) **Wrong perception**, many African chiefs had wrong perceptions about the colonialists that were just visitors who would go back soon to their homes. When they realized that they came to stay they changed the resection e.g. Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda
b) **Existence of missionaries**, missionaries' brainwashed the Africans to accept colonialism through Christian indoctrination and mission the education that softened Africans' hearts and minds e.g. "Resistance means backwardness". Hence, such societies collaborated with the whites.
c) **Existence of enmity between two or more local African tribes,** e.g. the Sangu and the Bena collaborated with Germans to fight against the Hehe.
d) **Military motives,** some African societies collaborated with the Europeans with the motives of acquiring weapons to use them in future. E.g., Menelik II in Ethiopia deliberately collaborated with Italy to acquire weapons.
e) **Source of commerce and trade,** some African societies collaborated because they regarded Europeans as the source of commerce and trade by collaborating with them they would become rich e.g. Buganda.
f) **They were weak militarily some of the societies allied with the foreigners because they were** incapable to fight against the invaders and they saw that it was fruitless as they were weak militarily.
g) **Natural calamities,** some African societies also made alliances with the whites because they had suffered greatly from natural calamities e.g. small pox, jiggers, drought, famine and so forth.

ETHIOPIAN'S RESISTANCE 1889 – 1913

Ethiopia under their leadership of Menelic II managed to wage an active resistance over the Italians. This came into being following the death of John IV in 1889 which Menelic signed the Uccil treaty on May 2, 1889 that made him to be an emperor.

Later Italians became confident over attacking Ethiopia so as to compel (defeat) Menelik. It rule on 1895 in which during the 1896 at the battle (war) of Adowa the Italians were greatly defeated something that made Menelick II becomes most popular leader among the Ethiopians.

In October 1896, the Italians signed the treaty of Uccial that recognized Ethiopia as full sovereign state (independent state).

REASONS FOR THEIR RESISTANCE

Ethiopia under Menelik II resisted against Italian rule became of the following:-

Italians expanded their boundaries to the Maghreb as well as the white country of Ethiopia this made the Africans to fight over them. The Italians stopped Menelick II from negotiating the diplomatic exchange of envoys with France and Russia.

This is because the Uccial treaty stipulated that Ethiopia was under the Italian's protectorate and That Menelik II was not allowed to make any alliance and mediation with the British, France and any other European power.

WHY ETHIOPIAS WERE NOT COLONIZED IN THE 19TH CENTUARY?

Ethiopians were not colonized like any other African countries because of the following reasons:

I. Due to religious beliefs in which the Ethiopians shared single religion which united them against their

enemies Christianity.

II. Ethiopian was lack to have leader who was talented on leadership and organization. In this case leader Ethiopian had diplomatic relations with Europe since the 18th C from Italy and Portugal she got weapons powers, in the 18th C Ethiopia captured some Briton.

III. Ethiopia had diplomatic relations with Europe since the 18th C from Italy and Portugal she got weapons with which to resist the Italian invasion victoriously (that helped them to resist the over the Europeans).

IV. Due to under estimation of Ethiopian strength through the treaty of Uccial Ethiopia and Italy agreed that Ethiopia would be under Italian protection and that she treaty, Italy sent troops to punish Ethiopia but it was badly beaten.

V. Geographically Ethiopia was a mountainous country with deep valley and caves, which eclipsed the resistors from being seen by their enemies, and there for, was able to wage guerrilla warfare.

VI. Ethiopia possessed a very stable, efficient, and well-organized army compared to any other African experience and knowledge in wars this mode them able to defeat against enemies.

VII. Ethiopians had established long a high spirit of national feeling and national unity, thus everybody had a role in defending the country against European rule.

VIII. Due to little economic motives and lack of mineral potentials in Ethiopia. This is because Ethiopia had a generally unpleasant climate characterized by long period of drought and most of the soils were rocky or sandy with small fertile ports, again it had no raw – materials like minerals and agricultural products. These made Europeans to remove their interest to colonize the country.

Revision Questions.

1. Account for the Ethiopia's successful resistance against colonialism (Necta 2010 Qn. 9
2. Why Ethiopia was not colonized during the colonial rul

REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF AFRICAN RESISTANCES

Many African societies did not accept European domination and showed the reactions in different forms of resistances. However, their effort was confronted by severe attacks and defeats from colonial powers. These were mainly as the Europeans were using superior weapons such as the maxim guns and cannons, which were sophisticated while Africans used inferior weapons such as spears, clubs, bows and arrows, which did not match with those of the Europeans.

a) **Europeans used modern war techniques that made them easily attack the Africans**. Africans depended on their closed forts, which were the main targets of attacks from the white enemies. For instance, the Germans demolished Mkwawa's fort at Kalenga in 1894.

b) **Europeans had quicker means of mobility that enabled them to penetrate the heart of Africa such as the Congo forests and other areas easily.** For instance, in West Africa colonialists used horses, while along the coast of East Africa Germans used steamboat to attack Abushiri at Pangani.

c) **Europeans had much knowledge of the heart of Africa,** strategic areas and the nature of various people of Africa and their location. White missionaries, explorers, conveyed all such information to them and traders who visited Africa earlier thus it became easy for them to defeat Africans.

d) **The Europeans had strong and stable economies that enabled them to fight for a longer period,** unlike Africans who were still in the subsistence economic that could not sustain them.

e) **The Europeans had common goals of colonizing Africans in their fights unlike African societies who lacked unity and were sometimes fighting each other or one another**. For instance, the Sangu and Bena were attacking the Hehe, while Mangi Rindi attacked Mangi Sina.

f) **Some African societies suffered internal weaknesses on the accounts of slave-raiding activities, disputes**

and expansionism. A typical example was in Jos Plateau in Nigeria and Southern Tanganyika, where some African societies attacked or raided other societies in order to acquire slaves to sell them to the European traders.

g) **Africans had wrong superstitious beliefs.** For example, the people of Southern Tanganyika were made to believe in the idea that water from Ngarambe Pool would change the white man's bullets into water, 'Maji Maji', which was not true. As a result, many people were killed by the German armed forces.
h) **The capture and execution of African leaders demoralized their warriors, thus leading to their defeat.** A good example was the capture and execution of Kinjeketile Ngwale on 4th August 1905 and Mpanda of Southern Tanganyika, during the Maji Maji uprising.

i) **Africans were destabilized by natural calamities because of the war; these included famines and** infectious diseases such as smallpox and others. Good example of Maasai society suffered from cholera in 1879 to the extent that they failed to fight violently.
j) **Africans lacked good leadership and unity.** This occurred, as some of the leaders were reluctant to cooperate with others. Hence, each tribe entered the war on its own. As a result, it was easy for the colonialists to defeat them.
k) **Due to the betrayal from among Africans**. This caused the failure of African resistance against colonialists simply because; some Africans betrayed their fellow Africans by deciding to collaborate with the white men against their neighbors this eventually weakened their unity, Good example is Sangu and Bena allied with the Germans to defeated their neighboring Hehe.

Though Africans were defeated by the Europeans, their reaction against colonial invasion was marked as the early nationalist reaction in Africa and made them gain self-respect and were considered to be heroes of Africa.

TOPIC TWO
THE COLONIAL ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEMS.

MAJOR TYPES OF COLONIAL ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEMS

The creation of colonies by imperial powers in Africa was a crucial thing in the 20th century, after the scramble for and partition of the African continent. The colonial powers that immediately occupied Africa after the Berlin Conference of 1884 to 1885 were Britain, France, Belgium, Spain, Portugal, Germany and Italy.

Although all these European powers had the same economic goals of occupying the African continent, they did not use uniform approaches in establishing their colonial administrations. For instance, the Portuguese, French and Belgians applied assimilation policy in their colonies and later used the association policy. On the other hand, the British employed indirect rule in many of her colonies except Zimbabwe where they applied direct rule. Likewise, the Germans in Tanganyika used direct rule as their system of administration.

The major types of colonial administrative systems were **direct rule, indirect rule, assimilation policy** and **association policy.**

INDIRECT RULE

INTRODUCTION:

This was the colonial system of administration, whereby African traditional rulers were involved in administering their fellow Africans at the local levels on behalf of the colonial governments while the colonial officials and administrators at the higher level. Sir Fredrick John Lugard who was the British High Commissioner to Nigeria in 1900 initiated the indirect rule. The British in their colonies adopted the system especially where she had peasant economy like in Nigeria, Tanganyika, Ghana, Cameroon and Uganda.

Lugard urged the British to use indirect rule in all the colonies. In 1922, Lugard wrote a book titled of the dual Mandate in British Tropical Africa to show the validity of indirect rule. The system was applied in other British West African colonies such as Ghana and Gambia.

THE MOTIVES FOR THE APPLICATION OF INDIRECT RULE.

The major reasons that made Europeans to initiate and apply the indirect rule system of administration in Africa were:

1. The Europeans did not want to interfere with African traditional systems of administration.
2. The European administrators wanted their instructions or orders to appear as if they were emanating or starting directly from the African traditional rulers. This was aimed at reducing African resistances against the European policies.
3. The Europeans wanted the African chiefs to appear as the ones giving orders to their subordinates (fellow Africans).
4. The Europeans introduced the indirect rule system with an assumption of civilizing the Africans.
5. In other areas, indirect rule was used when the system of direct rule had proved failure. For example, the British colonial government decided to use indirect rule in Tanganyika to avoid what happened to the Germans during the Maji Maji rebellion in 1905-1907.

REASONS FOR THE BRITISH TO USE INDIRECT RULE IN THEIR COLONIES

The British colonial government used indirect rule in most of its colonies in Africa because of the following reasons.

1. Britain drew more attention to its colony in India, thus it was difficult for it to introduce direct rule in Africa. One may argue that they employed indirect because Britain had many colonies in different parts of the world and therefore it was quite difficult for it to administer all the colonies it had using direct rule.
2. Britain did not have enough manpower (personnel) to administer its colonies in Africa. For instance, in 1900 it was reported that the British had only 42 British officials in the Nigerian colony. This number was not enough to administer the whole colony. The shortage of personnel was caused by lack of experienced workers. Moreover, British citizens were not willing to work in tropical Africa for fear of

tropical diseases and other physical problems such as transportation.

3. The British government for the maintenance of the colonies set fewer funds. It was convenient for the colonial administrators to use the indirect rule system in the colonies so as to reduce administrative costs.
4. The direct rule proved to be ineffective and inefficient in their Indian colony; therefore, the British government was motivated to apply it in Africa.

5. The British thought of using the indirect rule in order to overcome resistances from Africans. Consequently, African rulers were made to feel that the British honored their status, as this system of administration gave them an opportunity of keeping some of the money collected in form of taxes for their native treasuries. That money was spent for paying messengers and police officers salaries. However, the local African chiefs retained the money for their personal use.

6. Physical barriers such as poor infrastructures, presence of mountains, thick forests and dangerous animals in the colonial Africa forced the British to use indirect rule.

7. A language barrier between the British and the Africans forced the British to use indirect rule. Neither Africans nor Europeans understood the language of the other. Hence, they used interpreters who were basically African local rulers.

WHY INDIRECT RULE WAS INDIRECT.

i. Indirect rule was indirect because the British used local rulers to organize and supervise various colonial economic activities such as cash crop production, tax collection and building colonial infrastructures such as railways and roads on their behalf.
ii. The British colonialists used local African rulers in administering punishment to their fellow Africans on their behalf.
iii. The British colonialists used African local rulers to resolve disputes (conflicts) where the conflicting individuals were African natives on their behalf.
iv. The British government issued orders to the African local rulers who then had to convey to the ruled Africans ready for implementation. Thus African – rulers had no independence in decision-making.
v. The system shifted the blame on African rulers making them be hated by their fellow Africans for their support of colonial rule evils such as exploitation and oppression from these fellow Africans.

STRENGTHS AND WEAKNESSES OF INDIRECT RULE.

The following were some of the strengths of indirect rule:

1. It avoided African resistances by appointing traditional rulers to rule on their behalf. Hence, all complaints (malalamiko) were directed to the traditional African rulers.
2. It was cheap, as local chiefs were used to mobilize their people to pay taxes and work as forced laborers.

THE /FOLLOWING WERE SOME OF THE WEAKNESSES OF INDIRECT RULE:

1. Indirect rule created imbalance in development amongst African states. Areas which had local chiefs assisting the colonial government had development in social services like schools, hospitals and roads while those which had no chiefs in their areas had no or inadequate social services. Such situations had led to many conflicts among Africans after independence. The African local rulers were favored in all aspects of life as opposed to ordinary Africans. For example, the colonial education was given to the sons, daughters of the chiefs only while the sons, and daughters of nobodies had no access to such an important social amenity that is education.

2. It divided Africans along religious and ethnic extractions something which made Africans succumb to colonialism in Africa as easily as possible.

3. It had created social differences amongst Africans. The chiefs' families and royal families got privilege of getting social services such as education, hospitals and many more while the rest of the community were not getting such facilities.

4. Tribalism developed as an impact of indirect rule. African chiefs who were entrusted to rule on behalf of the colonialists considered themselves superior to others in their land. For example, Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda created disunity amongst Ugandans when he declared the Buganda kingdom independent in 1960.

5. African chiefs became puppets of the colonial administrators and did not serve their people. Hence founding the fertile ground for neo-colonialism in Africa, which is still practiced in Africa?

6. The indirect rule cemented centralized bureaucracy with the district commissioners.

THE EFFECTS OF INDIRECT RULE IN AFRICA

Some of the effects of indirect rule in Africa were:

1. The white settlers confiscated large portions of land from the Africans. This situation made many Africans to be alienated from their ancestral land.
2. African traditional political system and leadership were maintained.
3. Africans were economically exploited through forced labor, land alienation and tax payment.
4. The white settlers were favored much in land distribution, employment, representation in legislative council and areas for settlements. They were also given loans for developing or opening settler farms.

DIRECT RULE

This was the colonial system of administration whereby European officials at the top position, Arab Akidas, governed the colonies and Liwalis were at the bottom. The Germans preferred this system of administration in their metropolitan country to other methods of administrations.

THE STRENGTHS AND WEAKNESSES OF DIRECT RULE.

The following were some of the strengths of direct rule:

The system solved the shortage of employment amongst the European population. For example, Germany offered employment to its people in the colonies it occupied. Hence, it managed to reduce the rate of unemployment of its people.

The system managed to suppress African resistances, since it ensured that the colonies had enough white military officials to safeguard their interests. For instance, the Abushiri war of resistance of 1888 was suppressed by the German colonial administration.

SOME OF THE WEAKNESSES OF DIRECT RULE WERE:

1. The use of harsh and brutal means to make Africans meet colonial demands such as production of raw materials and paying taxes. Their approach led to many sufferings of the Africans that included death or imprisonment.

2. It undermined the pre-existing African traditional rulers. For instance, the German administration in Tanganyika removed the African traditional rulers, replacing them with Arab Akidas, and Liwalis from the coastal areas.

BRITISH DIRECT RULE IN ZIMBABWE

There were various reasons that made the British colonial rule in Zimbabwe to opt for the direct rule administrative system. Some of those reasons were:

1. The British aimed at having full control of Zimbabwe's economy in order to have access to the natural resources such as the fertile land and minerals.
2. Many settlers were stationed in Zimbabwe. Settlers were assured of employment to serve the administrative purposes of the colony.
3. The Europeans lost trust in African traditional leadership after the Chimurenga uprisings of 1896 – 1897.
4. Through using white mercenaries, armed white police officers and the native affairs department, the British managed to overcome resistances from the African communities that they controlled.

SIMILARITIES BETWEEN DIRECT RULE AND INDIRECT RULE SYSTEM OF ADMINISTRATIONS.

Direct rule and indirect rule had profound similarities (Comparison) as explained here below:

- Both were administrative system, which aimed at exploiting African, and providing benefits to the colonialists.
- Both systems utilized coercive apparatus like police, army, the prisons and the judicial to suppress the Africans who would resist against the system.
- Both had racial discrimination because whites were favored and considered superior race than African thus encouraged racial segregation over the Africans. All high-ranking jobs in the government were reserved for Europeans while Africans held the lower positions of jobs in their local areas.
- Both were racist in nature, because, German administration employed the use of harsh ness in their ruling the same to Britain in the whole process of the collection of taxes forces became to be common to intimidate Africans pay such Tax.
- Both were imperialist instruments of administration that aimed at exploiting the colonies to the maximum so as to meet the demand of capitalist. This is because in all levels land, labor and raw materials were taken from African.
- Both made use of African assistance in the process of promoting colonial exploitation e.g. the British indirect rule used local African chiefs. German direct rule made use of Akidas and Jumbes.
- Both encouraged conflict to Africans.
- Both systems of colonial administration used African traditional chiefs to supervise colonial works in their areas. However, African rulers who supported the colonial administration did not get full support from their people; they were regarded as puppets or traitors.

THE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN DIRECT AND INDIRECT RULE

- The direct rule did not use traditional African chiefs as their intermediaries while the indirect rule used African chiefs. For instance, in Kenya the British used some Kikuyu chiefs as paramount chiefs, like Chief Koinange wa Mbiyu and many others. Germans used direct rule in her colonies in Africa including Tanganyika.
- The indirect rule practiced by the British did not experience great enmity from the Africans because African traditional chiefs were involved in the colonial administration and their subjects were loyal to

them. This was not the case with direct rule employed by the Germans, since they experienced frequent resistances due to their harsh and brutal treatment of Africans.

- ❖ It was easy for the indirect rule administration to convince African traditional chiefs to mobilize their subjects to participate in various colonial tasks while the direct rule administration encountered difficulties in mobilizing Africans to perform their colonial duties and as a result opted to use force to make Africans participate in their various colonial duties. For example, the Germans in Tanganyika force southern people to work in their cotton plantations.
- ❖ The indirect rule system of administration had less costs of administration unlike the direct rule that required many Europeans to perform all tasks of administration hence high costs of administration.
- ❖ Direct rule was characterized by the use of force and racial superiority. For instance, the Germans considered themselves superior to other races. Brutality was also another characteristic of direct rule, whereby colonial administrators handled Africans brutally. On the other hand, the indirect rule system of administration used African local chiefs in handling their people and at the same time performing colonial duties.

ASSIMILATION POLICY. The term assimilation means 'similar to.' The French used this term to refer to a system of administration that aimed at creating French Black Africans amongst the West Africans who would be French citizens. The French wanted the French Black Africans to enjoy the same status and privileges or suffer penalties like any French citizen in France.

The assimilation policy was first used in Indo-China and Algeria and later introduced in the four communes of Senegal-St. Louis, Rufisque and Dakar-in 1854 and spread to other French colonies in Africa. The assimilation policy proved to be successful when it was applied in Morocco. In Senegal, Lewis, a French governor, between 1854 and 1865, introduced the assimilation policy.

THE REASONS OR MOTIVES FOR THE APPLICATION OF ASSIMILATION POLICY.

1. The assimilation policy made European countries that employed the policy in their colonies to consider their culture and civilization as superior to those of the colonized people (Africans). The French believed that their culture was the best in the world, and that they had enlightened their colonies with their rich heritage of civilization.
2. The French considered their colonies as overseas provinces, on this ground they aimed at transforming black men into French men.
3. The French revolution of 1789, which gave the French the thought that their culture was the best and it was supposed to be applied in different parts of the world.
4. The French wanted identical administrative policies to be implemented in all of its colonies in the world.
5. The French aimed at making a class of Africans that would help them in international conflicts. This was so especially after the Franco-Prussian war of 1870-1871 in which the French colonies Alsace and Lorraine were annexed by Germany. So the French wanted to create its allies in African colonies for their future interests, thus, they applied the assimilation policy in all its colonies.
6. The French intended to create or establish a group of African French men who would assist France to facilitate colonial progress in the colonies economically, socially and politically.

CHARACTERISTICS OF ASSIMILATION POLICY

The system of assimilation that was used by the French in administering the colonies had various features:

1. The French regarded their colonies as their overseas provinces, thus the colonies were closely attached to France.
2. African citizens within the French colonies enjoyed the privileges and rights that were given to any French citizen in the metropolis.
3. The African colonies under the French rule were represented in the French Lower House of Parliament. This showed that there was political integration of the Africans with France.
4. There was a close economic relationship between France and her colonies in Africa. The French currency was used in the colonies, an indication that the colonies were integrated to the metropolis country.
5. They intended to make the Africans in the colonies to be good French citizens through dictatorship that forced Africans to learn French language, follow the French laws, apply French civil and political systems, be Christians and adopt French manners.
6. They encountered many difficulties in West Africa, since their attitude towards African culture and the African chiefs was negative.

THE QUALIFICATION FOR THE AFRICAN TO BE ASSIMILATED OR TO BE ASSIMILES CITIZENS.

For the African to be regarded as fully assimilated the French colonial masters set a certain condition in which whoever who could qualify has to be given full French citizenship, such conditions are as explained here below:

Must be an adult person over 18 years and a Christian in faith.

Must practice monogamous (marry one wife).

Must have passed and qualified military services

Must abandon their culture and adopt the French culture

Must be fluent in French language both written and spoken.

NOTE: An African who complied with all above condition he / she was given French citizen ship.

THE MAIN DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE ASSIMILATION POLICY.

(a) It argued that any African who wanted to become black French or Portuguese to abandon their African culture. The assimilated Africans were required to have looked and speak like the France / Portuguese.
(b) The African assimilees or assimilador were subjected to harsh colonial laws like others non-assimilated African e.g. forced labor.
(c) The assimilated African was considered civilized and hence allowed to hold high post in the colonial government.
(d) The assimilated African could be given scholarship to study in France. However, the French and not Portuguese only practiced this.
(e) Some of the assimilated African could be allowed to go and settle in France. This was not so in the Portuguese colonies.

`However, from 1920 to 1940 the French started to abandon the policy of assimilation while the Portuguese started to abandon it from early 1960, with the abandonment of this policy, they decided to introduced new policy called Association / mature assistance by incorporating the Africans in running the colonies in collaboration.

THE FRENCH POLICY OF ASSOCIATION: This was the system of administration applied by France after having seen that assimilation policy had proved failure in 20th C. the policy of association aimed to put the colonial subjects to be involved in the administration especially at the lower levels.

It was also a French colonial policy in which French had to respect the cultures of her colonial peoples and by allowing them to develop independently rather than adopting French civilization and culture. The policy came into practical in 1945 following the abandonment of French assimilation policy.

Generally, Association policy aimed at making participatory administration where by Africans associated (co – operated) with the French in the colonial administration and consolidation. E.g., Africans were supposed to supply military services, labor, pay taxes, while the French had to provide technical knowledge. Again, under association policy Africans were involved in the colonial administrative functions in the following dimensions.

Politically. The French respected political institutions of Africans and African rulers were involved in the lower level of administration Africans were also supposed to be recruited in the colonial army and defend the colonial interest.

Economically: Africans were supposed to pay taxes for development like, construction of schools, hospitals etc. they were also supposed to supply labor, which was essentially voluntary labor to the manual works such as construction of roads, railways and ports.

Socially: Africans were allowed to practice their culture freely, Europeans were supposed to respect Africans culture.

THE MAIN FACTORS / REASONS FOR THE CHANGING THE NATURE OF ASSIMILATION INTO ASSOCIATED POLICY.

The reasons for the failure of the French assimilation policy

It is historically recorded that the French assimilation policy came to fail due to several reasons like;

(a) The policy was resisted at its grass root in France. The French scholars and politicians expressed their views that it was unwise and unrealistic for Africans to be transformed into Frenchmen.

b) The policy was expensive and difficult to implement because the colonial government had to use many funds to finance the project for instance building schools, buying textbooks written in French and so forth.
c) The policy-encountered opposition from the West African people especially the Muslims such as the Mandinka people under Toure.This is because their religion allows marrying more than one wife

d) The French legal system was based on French civil law whereas the Africans had diverse customary laws and traditions things, which made the policy implementable.

e) The spread of Islamic religion in West African communes became an obstacle to the spread of the assimilation policy since the system encouraged people to be converted to Christianity.

f) The African traditional chiefs discredited the assimilation policy because it threatened their authority over the assimiladors. The assimiladoes did not want accept being under the African chiefs, as they regarded themselves to be superior to them.

g) Due to strong resistance from France who opposed a policy of assimilation, since many assimilated Africans were allowed to get all rights like other French citizens such rights would not enable the colonizers to exploit the colonial subjects to the maximum. Thus, they had to abandon it to preserve their interests.
h) It was very expensive to assimilate the Africans, as many French elites/philosophers they criticized this system as they said that the system brought a burden to French tax payers, who paid taxes and benefited others so a need to incorporate Africans in administration.

i) Due to cultural barriers among the Senegalese who were practicing Islam, which allowed polygamy thus, they failed to adopt western culture of marrying only one husband.

j) Due to the need to reduce/avoid African resistance against colonialism, as the French spent a lot of their effort suppressing the resistance e.g. Samour Toure of the Mandika empire. Therefore, a need to co-operate with their local institution by becoming friends to Africans to easy exploitation.

k) Due to hard conditional ties to quality. Many African could not comply with the conditions given for the one to be regarded as real assimilated in relation to African culture like polygamy and any other conditions accompanied. (Traditions) thus the system of assimilation proved failure.

l) Due to inadequate resources to implement the policy. The policy needed many teachers to work in various primary and secondary schools in order to teach the French language and provide the colonial subjects with the basic education. The colonial masters failed to implement this, thus decided to adopt new policy. Inadequate
m) Due to poor infrastructures in the colonies. This made poor effective implementation of the policy since it was difficult to penetrate in the interior to reach the targeted colonial subjects because of thick forester valleys, and mountains, which made communication more than impossible in the interior.

n) Due to Language barrier. Many Africans got difficulties in learning the French language at the sometimes; many French administrators could not speak African local language, this created gap between colonizers and the colonized subject. Grasp.

o) The assimilation policy was rejected by Africans for their expectations were not met. This is to say Africans had no promotion to the key departments in administration, as all governors' general was whites. Equally important there were few Africans membership which eventually forced Africans to be unwillingly to attend the French parliament by 1905.

p) The French people feared that African representatives in the National assembly were likely to highly influence the whites in policy and decision-making.

COLONIALISM NEVER INTENDED TO DEVELOP AFRICA

There is no doubt even among the bourgeoisie writers, that colonialism was a system that functioned well in the interest of the colonialist who was the European powers. But unfortunately some ill-fated historian do argue and say that colonialism had a lot of good that it brought in Africa for the benefit of Africans, that is completely false and misleading, colonialism had only one hand – it was a one – armed bandit. It had no any intention to develop African whatever was done in Africa were done to serve their interests, African just picked the remains that would not have been avoided.

Since its inception, colonialism had never intended to bring any development in Africa. In fact, even the capitalism, as mode of production that was introduced was not like that existed in Europe. In the list place,

they feared to create capitalism that would be rivals. From the very beginning the tendencies of European nations was one of competition elimination and create monopoly.

For the first three decades of colonialism hardly anything was done that could remotely be termed as services to Africans. It was after 1945 that some social amenities were built as a matter of policy. The so-called developments of social services were distributed in a manner that reflected the pattern of domination and exploitation. The scanty social services were meant only to facilitate European exploitation to the African. They were not given to Africans whose labor was not directly producing surplus for export to the metro pole.

There for ironically speaking there some social services that were established by the colonialists that are termed as 'development' brought by the colonialists, which included introduction of western education and construction of school, hospitals, residential houses rail net works, roads, harbors ports, electricity and water services recreation centers processing industries, financial institutions, trade and money economy etc. this is not true all those social infrastructures that were introduced aimed at bringing development to the African But rather they were for specific purpose that served the interest of the colonialists. if in any case African benefited from such services, it was just coincidental. As we can expound below;

1) Some social amenities like residential houses, recreation grounds, water and electricity were established for the white settlers and expatriates who wanted to maintain the standard of living like that of the bourgeoisie or professionals in the metro pole, they were more determined to have luxurious life in Africa because so many of them were surplus population that had been created by the industrial revolution, come from poverty in Europe and could not expect good services in their own land. Thus, facilities like residential houses, recreation centers, water and electricity were put in place as to keep them in the colony, but not to develop Africa.

2) **In colonial plantations and companies** facilities like hospitals, schools staff quarters, running water and electricity were established because they viewed it as an economic investment, because some minimum maintenance of the workers healthy was necessary for their exploitation. Usually such facilities were inclusively for the workers of that particular capitalist concern, and the African who lived outside money economy were simply ignored and not allowed to use the services.

3) **Means of communication** like roads railway, ports and harbors were not constructed in the colonial period so that African could visit their relatives and friends, or they were laid down to facilitate internal trade within African commodities. They were constructed to make business possible for the colonial companies and agriculture concession firms and for white settlers to transport their exploits from Africa to the coast and eventually to the metro pole, any catering for the African activities was purely coincidental.

4) **Financial institutions like** banks and insurance companies were put in place, but the fact is that these institutions were more scandalously and neglectful to the indigenous people the banks like Barclays in case of East Africa did little to lend the local people. In British East Africa, an ordinance was passed in 1931 restricting financial institution from lending the native people only lending white settlers and colonial companies.

5) **Schools hospitals and hospitals** were use as tools to exploit African labor to divide and to spread their culture, on top of that even the money used came from the Africans themselves not from Britain or France or Belgium tax payers but from African workers and peasants produced for European capitalism

goods and services of a certain values a small proportion of their effort were retained by them in the forms wage, cash payment and extremely limited social services such as were essential for their maintenance of colonialism the rest went to the various beneficiaries of the colonial system.

6) **Further still the high proportion** of the so-called development in the colonies went in form of roads or ports electricity railway roads etc were just necessary for maintaining efficient colonial exploitation of the African in the long run. In the short run, such construction provided out let for European steels, concrete electrical machinery and railroad rolling stock. Bu not to bring development as they do assert.

SAMPLE QUESTIONS

1. Colonialism and imperialism never intended to develop Africa but practically there some development on the ground how would you reconcile such conflicting statement.
2. Explain why colonialism in Africa did not transform Africa economies into capitalism like that of Europe.

THE COLONIAL STATE AND STATE APPARATUS.

Background.

Colonial state refers to the colonial extension of the metropolitan state; the colonial state was the first to be established after the scramble and partition before the establishment of colonial economy. The colonial state was to protect the bourgeoisie interests in the colonies. Thus, the colonial state was an instrument responsible for exploitation and oppression of the colonies. The colonial state was imposed from outside not from internal class struggle. Thus, it was the most violent.

The primary objective of the colonial state was to create colonial economy that would respond to the demands of the metropolitan economies. It applied all the means to ensure the establish of
Colonial economy is realized, through suffocating the self-sufficient African economy and establishes the money economy. Having no roots in Africa the colonial state used extreme violence to create such --- economy. Methods like conquest and suppression of African up rising were adopted, scorched - earth policy of warfare were applied in the areas of stiff resistance, which however were violently suppressed.

HOW THE COLONIAL STATE WAS VIOLENT?

1. **Colonial conquest,** the violence of the colonial state was initially demonstrated in the process of colonial conquest itself. Most African societies put up stiff resistance against the colonial establishment, however they were violently suppressed. The colonialist used all kinds of violent means that may bring success to them, many African dies, not only those who were in the battle fields, but also hunger, famine and diseases claimed a number of lives.

2. **Destruction of African handcraft.** Another violence of the colonial state in her bid to establish the money economy was manifested when it embarked on destruction of Africa's handcraft. Throughout the colonial state the tradition crafts of Africans were declare illegal. In the Belgian colony of Congo, artisans had their limbs cut off when caught engaging in hand crafts.

3. **Collection of taxation,** Violence of colonial state can also be traced at establishment of taxations to all adult African men. So as to force the African who operated self-sufficient economy to integrate into the money economy. Violence and force was very rampant during the collection and the enforcing of the

taxation. The defaulters were tied up their hands together humiliated in the in the face of the public those who failed to pay totally were jailed to provide hard labor.

4. **The liquidation of African trading interest** was another violent method applied by the colonial state to break the backbone of African self sufficient and sustaining economy. Africans violently were denied to participant in trade for example Jaja of Opobo and Nana Olum of Itsekir were crushed ruthlessly and deported to West Indies as to stop them from engaging into trade. It was only the European monopoly companies that were allowed to engage in trade.

5. **Land alienation and cattle confiscation** as method to establish the money economy also show how colonial state was violent in her struggle to realize her objectives. African arable land was simply grabbed by the colonists, as to reduce African as mere suppliers of cheap labor to the colonial plantations and white settler's farms to earn the meager wage that were given to them.
6. **In searching and mobilizing for cheap labor** to work in the colonial productions, the colonial state demonstrated maximum violence; Africans were forced to work in mines plantations and on colonial infrastructures corporal punishment were applied as to ensure maximum exploitation of African labor force.

   COLONIAL STATE APPARATUS: These were major instruments in establishment and consolidating colonial rule and colonial economy. These were the super structure of colonialism you may call them the arms of colonial state, they applied all mechanism to ensure the continuality of colonialism in the colony including coercion violence intimidation deportation, corporal punishment, legislations, and jailing, as to establish and achieve the colonial objectives and goals. Colonial state apparatus comprised three organs;
   i) **Military organ**
   ii) **Judicially/Prison**
   iii) **Police**

COLONIAL MILITARY. This was the backbone of colonial rule in spreading colonialism; the colonial army was to serve colonial interests, not to serve the majority indigenous people. It applied brutality and cruelty of the highest order ever seen in the world, it tortured the people and it happened that it created a big gap between them with the civilians.

Both the colonial army and the police were of mercenary character, trained only to use muscles as opposed to the brain. Education for soldiers was discouraged so much that a myth was created that the less educated a soldiers was the better he would be. They could not be recruited from cash crop regions because these people had property to protect, and if armed they would want to over through the system that prevent them from advancement.

CHARACTERISTICS OF COLONIAL MILITARY FORCE

1. **Most of the recruits were illiterates,** it was believed that the more illiterate a soldier was the better he was thus basing on that notion many colonial military men were completely illiterate so as they can be able to serve the interest of their masters without questioning.

2. **They depended on orders and commands** from the top colonial military without questioning anything thus they lacked professionalism

3. **They always lived in foreign land,** i.e. they were not supposed to work on their home land so as to be

coercive and merciless while executing their orders from colonial top officers since most of their operations were dominated by violence e.g. the Sudanese soldiers were brought in East Africa

4. **They were selected from unproductive** regions where cash crops/mining did not exist especially in labor reserves like in northern Uganda so as they devote all their energies in serving colonial army and should not affect colonial production

5. They survived on meager/low wages and sometimes without salaries so as they become more royal and obedient to the colonial bosses

6. They were separated from the public, they lived in barracks and military quarters as to keep them away from civilian problems so that they can create a gap between the civilians and the military force

7. The applied force and coercive means to the population like land alienation collection of taxes mobilization of labor and suppression of resistance.

ROLE OF MILITARY FORCE IN CONSOLIDATING COLONIALISM

i. **To defend the colonial state from foreign threats**/ enemies like uprising of African against the colonialists from internal and external threats that would have threatened colonial interests
ii. **To punish the African leaders** who would appear to be stubborn and non cooperative to the colonial state by deportation, jailing, killing etc

iii. **To alienate land from the indigenous** people Africans, for the colonial plantations and white settlers.
iv. **To provide protection to the colonialist against** the Africans who would have harmed the settlers and colonial missionaries.
v. **To provide security and** protection to the colonial agents like missionaries' traders and explorers
vi. To suppress African uprising against colonial domination and to ensure the spread of colonial domination in region

THE POLICE. The military organ the police also aimed to serve colonial interests of maintaining peace and – in the colonial state;

i. To maintain law and order in the colonial state by ensuring that laws are not broken
ii. To collect taxes on behalf of the colonial government and arrest the defaulters on the behalf of the colonialists
iii. To ensure mobilization and constant supply of cheap labor to the colonial economy
iv. They were the watch dogs of colonial administration i.e. they were supposed to report and to take orders from the colonial administration
v. To provide security for colonial agents like escorting traders and missionaries in areas of insecurity.

THE PRISON/JUDICIARY

i. The colonial judicially system its major objective was to justify colonial acts by using the judicial system, it was dominated by the white magistrates and judges.
ii. To punish law breakers by jailing people who were against colonialism though the judicial system
iii. To make laws and interpret them that under judicial supervision that helped colonialism in her objectives.
iv. It was the source of cheap labor; prisoners were taken to supply cheap labor in various colonial economic activities.

COLONIAL STATE ADMINISTRATION (BUREAUCRACY.)

Colonial state administration refers to the administrative machinery established by the colonialists in the colonial state or it is the hierarchy of colonial ranks in the colonial states, i.e. commanding orders and regulations from the top to the bottom, e.g. territorial level district level and grassroots level.

The structure of colonial bureaucracy reflected the general division of labor within the world capitalist system. Thus the top position, in both administration and military, were reserved for Europeans. The middle cadres were reserved for the Asians and Arabs in eastern Africa and Lebanese and Syrian in western Africa. The African occupied the lowest position. The use of Arabs and other Asian facilitated the colonialism because these people had no political base internally, they could only struggle to accumulate wealthy but not to throughout the colonizers. This is why they occupied the commercial sector.

CHARACTERISTIC OF COLONIAL STATE ADMINISTRATION

1. **It based on segregation and racism.** The Europeans occupied to responsibilities with high ranks, followed by Asians, Africans were in the last class in administration, e.g. a governor was a European, clerks were Asians and Africans were at the lower level ranks doing odd jobs like cleaners and gate jeepers. A similar reflection appeared in the social services and residential areas occupied by each category. Thus, the best social serves such as schools and hospitals were for the Europeans.

2. **It was oppressive in nature**, i.e. it was dominated by strict orders and commands especially from the top officers of the Europeans e.g. all able men have to pay taxes to give community labor

3. **It was dominated by regional imbalance.** This is to say that ruling class came from productive areas and dominant society some societies were made to act as labor reserves hardly penetrated into the ruling class, e.g. in Tanganyika the Haya and the Chagga were in the bureaucracy/administration system of the colonialists while the Waha were labor suppliers. The labor reserves were under developed in absolute terms. Denied of cash crop production a sound communication system and schools, the only through which they would earn money was to sell their labor – power. While cash crop producing areas were provided with better communication so that both manufactured and raw materials can easily transport system.

4. **In addition, it was characterized in the manner that within a given** colony there were areas reserved for supplying military personnel. Both in the army and the police were of mercenary character, trained to use only muscles as opposed to the brain for example in Uganda the northern part of Uganda was preserved for army and police.

5. **Another feature of colonial state was sycophancy.** Towns did not develop as productive centers, as has been the case of Europe but as administrative centers. The African bureaucracy that merged reflected this One's position did not depend on One's wealthy but on one's administrative post. Thus, a petty bourgeoisie's class was created with no economic base.

6. **Sex biased.** Women were segregated from the administration and were not allowed to participate in the colonial bureaucracy, their work was to supply family labor and support food production

7. **Routenisation,** the colonial bureaucracy operated along daily routine and strict regulations so as to

maintain quality and impartiality.

8. **It was too hierarchical** with the long chain of command from the top to the bottom whereby any issue to be implemented at all levels were supposed to sign on it.

9. **It was subordinate in nature** discipline oriented i.e. Africans were supposed to obey the Asians and Asian obey the whites.

PHASES OF COLONIAL STATE ADMINISTRATION

The colonial state administration had three major phases characterized with different approach. Reflecting the demands of capitalist at any given time

THE FIRST PHASE 1820 – 1920

- This first phase covers the period from the scramble and partition to the 1920s i.e. 1820 – 1920 this period was characterized with search for colonies in the continent and attempt to impose effective occupation.
- It was also characterized by the colonialists trying to consolidate their rule after the end of the period of scramble and partition and acquiring areas of influence.
- It was during this period that rise and fall of company rule like IBEACO in British East Africa GEACO for Germany East Africa. That resulted into direct colonialism where by the colonial government sent their own governors to take over their areas of influence colonies
- It was characterized with militarism; coercion and suppression of anti-colonial elements.
- It was this period that African begun resisting the imposition of colonial domination.
- It was characterized with the creation of mercenary army as the principle arm of the colonial bureaucracy to defend the interest of the colonial state.

THE SECOND PHASE 1920 – 1945

- It was characterized by establishment of colonial economy after the establishment of colonial state and all the effort of colonial bureaucracy targeted colonial production
- This is when the colonialist had to establish their culture, to the Africans about their religion, dressing, eating manners, the way of dancing etc.

THE THIRD PHASE 1945 – 1960s.

- This phase was characterized by intensive exploitation of African resources as European nations were trying to revamp their economies from the capitalist crisis of World War two. The peasants were forced to increase production of cash crops on one hand and the penetration of Multinational corporations on the other hand.
- It was characterized with the establishment of import substation industries especially in the settlers' colonies
- African became much involved in the colonial administration as they were being prepared for self-determination. Class of petty bourgeois was created, after many colonial powers intended to give independence to many Africa colonies.
- During this phase, Africans were promoted to high ranks and it witnessed the rise of vibrant elite class of the Africans who were in the colonial bureaucracy that intensified struggle for independence.

COLONIAL STATE AND CLASS FORMATION

The term class refers to large group of people distinguished by the position they occupy in the system of social production by their relation to the means of production, by the role in the organization of labor and by the share of the social wealth, which they dispose of, and mode of acquiring it.

In the colonial bureaucracy created various classes in the colonial state as one of the best way of maximizing exploitation in the colony the classes that were created by the colonial state which included

- **Wage earners** these comprised unskilled labor force that worked on colonial plantations, mines and infrastructures were paid low wages and worked in poor working conditions.
- **Peasant class** these were the backbone of colonial agriculture most of the based in rural areas and engaged in agriculture as the major economic activity, they live in vicious poverty since most of their output were bought on low prices.

- **Salaried workers/petty bourgeoisie** these were colonial civil servants that included administrators' doctors, teachers most of the were professional European Asians and few Africans.

HOW CLASSES WERE FORMED BY THE COLONIAL BUREAUCRACY

1. **introduction of cash crop** production in the colonial state in these areas where cash crop was grown stratification within the cash crop growers were formed, with those areas were cash crops were not cultivated were by such people became labor reserves for productive areas.

2. **Through colonial subsides** to some peasants while abandoning others, the colonial government gave material support to the peasants who were able to cultivate more than 20 acres of land and those who would cultivate more than 10 acres of land by doing so it created stratifications among the peasant Rich peasant middle class peasants and poor peasants.

3. **Trough land alienation** African fertile soils were taken away by the colonialist and distributed to the white settlers making African to become in the class of cheap laborer who would supply their labor force to colonial plantations and to settlers' farms.

4. **The government and financial institution selective way of giving loans,** loans and credit were given only to the Asians and Europeans which led to create stratification to specific people especially African to remain cheap laborer provide or wage earners.

5. **Colonial education, this was instrumental** in breeding social and economic classes in the colonial state the colonial education was only provided to few African while leaving the majority with totally no education to make them chief suppliers of labor in the colonial state.

6. **Racist policy,** this was a deliberate colonial state policy to segregate the African basing on the color of their skins it was the Europeans that were given top priority in economic political and social aspect during colonial period followed by the Asians and making African the third class.

GENERAL ASSESSMENT OF COLONIAL STATE

1. It was not organized to meet the interest of Africans but to meet the colonial interests'. It affected Africans in the following ways;
2. It instilled inferiority complex among the Africans

3. It led the subordination of Africans to the foreigners
4. It led to the intensive exploitation of human resources since many Africans were paid law wages.
5. It integrated Africans in capitalist economy under colonial bureaucracy
6. It promoted racism among the Africans where by only the European and Asians were considered more than the Africans were.
7. It created stratification among the Africans alienating some Africans from their societies

SAMPLE QUESTION

1. *Discuss the role of colonial state apparatus in establishing and consolidating colonialism*
2. *The colonial state was the most violent Discuss.*
3. *How did the colonial police and army maintain law and order during colonialism?*

TOPIC THREE

COLONIAL ECONOMY

INTRODUCTION. The colonial economy simply refers to the extension of metropolitan economy that was established in Africa (in the colonies) by the colonial masters with the aim of serving for the colonial interests by gaining super profit through exploiting African labor raw – materials, market and other related.

Colonial economy that was established in Africa during colonial period involved various sectors such as ***Agriculture, colonial labor, colonial industries as well as mining sectors.***

OBJECTIVES / AIMS OF COLONIAL ECONOMY.

So long, Colonial interest was to minimize super profit in Africa, they therefore introduced colonial economy in order to meet the following objectives;

It aimed at ensuring constant supply of raw materials from Africa to the European industries.
It aimed at exploiting cheap African labor through forcing them to work long hours but receive low (meager) wages.
It aimed to get areas for the investment and settlement of European surplus population.
It further aimed to ensure that there is surplus production of European goods.

From the above few objectives / aims of colonial economy we come to note / judge that, colonial economy as it was established in Africa never aimed to benefit Africans rather Europeans this can be evidenced by looking into its features / characteristics which in a sense typically relied on Europeans.

THE CHARACTERISTICS / FEATURES OF COLONIAL ECONOMY.

The following explained below were main characteristics of colonial economy in Africa.

a. It was characterized by coercive apparatus in a sense that instruments like colonial army, police, prison as well as courts were accompanied with colonial economy to ensure that colonial production run smoothly, as well as maintaining discipline and obedient to African.(to stop African resistance).
b. It was characterized by instructional construction of infrastructures such as railways, roads and ports so as to facilitate production as well as exportation of products (goods) from the interior of the coast ready to be shipped to the European countries.
c. It was characterized by land alienation more especially in those areas where plantations and settlers

economies were dominant. In this case, many Africans were forced to be out of their fertile land and taken to the marginalized (unfertile) land.

d. It was characterized by labor-intensive economy as it depended heavily on both migrant labor as well as cheap paid labor whose duty was only to provide their labor power in plantations and mines.
e. It was characterized / based on money-oriented economy. This was simply because, money was introduced to be used only as a medium of exchange in the colonies, and also the use of money facilitated capitalist exchange and colonial exploitations due to the fact that, for the one to make any transaction he / she was forced to have cash mean while it was difficult to get cash unless you are being provided a very heavy and tiresome job by colonialists.
f. It was characterized by limited / few numbers of industries in Africa, this was because during colonial economy to make Africans keep on being dependant to Europeans manufactured goods, as well as to reduce competition over European goods (produce) they killed African industries and technology by introducing subsistence industries that involved oil refineries, and cotton gunneries aiming to increase the quality and quantity of raw – materials which had to be exported in Europe.

g. It was export-oriented economy in a sense that whatever was produced in Africa in a form of cash crops like agricultural crops (cotton, coffee and sisal) and mineral raw – materials were to be transported to Europe in order to feed European hungry industries.
h. It was characterized on Monoculture. As single crop was specialized in one region in order to increase productivity. *Sisal in Tanganyika, Coffee in Kenya, Cocoa in Ivory Coast, Palm oil in Nigeria.*
i. It was characterized by taxation where Africans were forced to pay taxes in terms of poll, hut and cattle taxes which serves/ aimed to benefit them (Africans) in turn Africans became in secured in the whole process of tax collection because, European powers used force to collect taxes from Africans.

Sample questions:

1. *Explain the objectives of establishing colonial economies in Africa.*
2. *"Colonial Economy in Africa had both positive and negative outlook in Africa" How far is the above statements true?*
3. *What were the characteristics features of colonial economy in Africa?*
4. *What were the tectonic/tactics employed by colonialists to establish colonial economies in Africa*
5. *Why colonial economy was introduced in Africa?*

METHODS AND TACTICS USED TO INTRODUCE AND ESTABLISH COLONIAL ECONOMY IN AFRICA

The Africans themselves did not accept introduction and establishment of colonial economy in Africa; this forced the colonialists to use some methods and tactics to make their economies to be accepted.

1. **DESTRUCTION:** The colonialists destructed all former means of Africans indigenous economy which did not gave the chance to the growth and development of colonial economy in Africa among those which were destructed include:

i. **African Local trades:** The colonialists made sure that all Africans local trade such as Trans Saharan Trade and other are completely destructed so as to make Africans not to accumulate wealth so that they could concentrate in colonial economy.
ii. **African Local Industries:** The colonialists aimed to make African continent backward technologically so that it could be easy to exploit Africa's natural resources. Under this those handcraft men were prohibited to make anything and if they did so they were chopped off their hands. But also, the competition of European industrial manufactured goods made the collapse of African local industries.
iii. **Destruction of African Culture:** This was another element, which could not give space for the introduction and establishment of colonial economy. The colonial government made sure that the

African culture is totally and completely destructed since it could stand as one of biggest obstacles towards the growth of colonial economy.

2. **CREATION:** The colonial government also created some of the things, which were more important for the introduction and establishment of colonial economy. Among the things which were created include: -

i. **Introduction of money economy:** The imperialists introduced money economy in Africa so as to facilitate the exploitation of Africa and Africans. Under money economy taxes were introduced e.g. hut tax, head tax, matiti tax etc. all those taxes were introduced to keep them providing their labour power in the colonial plantations.

ii. **Colonial infrastructure:** The colonialists also introduced infrastructure so as to intensify exploitation e.g., Roads, railways, harbors, etc all these were built to facilitate exploitation.

iii. **Colonial education:** Colonial education was introduced to few Africans so as to get few of them who could assist in administration. It also aimed at creating puppets.

iv. **Introduction of cash crops.** This was the main aim of colonial economy whereby crops like coffee, tea, cotton etc. were introduced in Africa so as to solve the problem of raw materials.

v. **Land alienation.** People were alienated from their fertile land to less fertile land so as to provide the chance to open up plantations etc.

3. **PRESERVATION:** The colonialists also preserved all things that could support their economies among the things which were preserved include: -

i. **Family:** Family remained as the basic unit of production especially where peasantry economy was practiced.

ii. **Productive Forces:** The means of production like hand hoes, axes, and pangas were left to be used since the colonialists aimed at making Africans backward technologically.

iii. **Production relations like Feudal** system were also preserved since they could offer a great support in colonial production e.g. In Uganda.

Qn Why and how did the colonialists make Africans backward technologically?

Reasons

- They needed Africans to remain as the source of raw materials
- They needed Africa to remain as the main source of market for the European manufactured goods.
- They needed to create dependent economy amongst the African countries
- They needed Africans to import technology from outside.
- They needed Africans to depend on experts from their colonial master
- They needed to avoid stiff/heavy competition in development between Africa and Europe.

How?

- Destruction of local industries
- Introduction of notorious slave trade
- Preservation of productive forces
- Introduction of colonial education
- Introduction of small industries in the colonies for processing and manufacturing industry.
- Introduction of migrant labor.

TYPES OF COLONIAL ECONOMY

There are five types of colonial economy, which were introduced in Africa, and these include -

i. Agriculture
ii. Trade and commerce
iii. Mining
iv. Infrastructure and
v. Industries

i. AGRICULTURE.

Since the colonies were meant to produce raw materials the main sector emphasized were mining and agriculture. The colonial agriculture was designed to save the colonial objectives of colonial needs to the imperialist countries. The production was largely for raw materials in form of cash crops e.g. cotton, coffee, cocoa, rubber, palm oil, etc

Colonial agriculture was one amongst the types of colonial economy, which were introduced so as to solve the problem of raw material for European industries abroad.

The colonial agriculture was in three main branches and those include -

a) Settlers' agriculture
b) Plantation agriculture
c) Peasantry agriculture

FORMS OF COLONIAL AGRICULTURAL SYSTEMS

Colonial economies refer to as the extension of the metropolitan economies activities in Africa. The colonial economies were initiated by the colonial state in Africa in order to meet the demands of raw materials for their industries in Europe. Since the colonies were meant to produce raw materials, the main sectors, which were highly emphasized, were agriculture and mining. The colonial agriculture was designed to serve the colonial objectives of colonial needs to the imperialist countries. The production was largely for raw materials in form of cash crops such as cotton, sisal, pyrethrum, cocoa, coffee, tea, rubber and palm oil.

Thus, colonial agriculture involved cultivation of cash crops and livestock keeping (animal husbandry) during the colonial era (period). However, livestock production was not that much emphasized.

The colonial agriculture was categorically categorized in three (3) main forms or systems namely settlers' agriculture, peasantry agriculture and plantation agriculture. These included,

SETTLERS' AGRICULTURE: This was large-scale form of colonial agriculture whereby the European farmers (settlers) settled in different colonies in Africa and established, managed different agricultural undertakings.

The settlers' farms were owned by individual whites and this form of agriculture was very dominant in the colonies of Kenya, Southern Rhodesia (Zimbabwe), Namibia and Mozambique as well as Angola.

It was featured by individual ownership of large-scale farms, monoculture (production of one cash crop), mechanization and the use of both migrant and forced labor systems.

CHARACTERISTICS OF SETTLERS' AGRICULTURE

1. **The production was for export;** whatever they produced was exported as raw material to metro pole. What eve was produced by the settlers was to be exported to the metro pole, the African economies did not benefit from these large scale plantations

2. **Establishment of large-scale farming** with the plantation occupying more than 100 acres' o land. E.g. in Zimbabwe the European settlers owned 44,952,000 acres of the best land out of the total 4,900,000 land the 230,000 settlers were able to establish large plantations.
3. **Growth of single crop/monoculture,** intercropping was discouraging thus, there was high specialization. Usually each company specialized in the production of a specific commodity e.g. in Liberia rubber plantations were established, in Kenya huge coffee, and tea plantations were established.
4. **Huge capital input was injected in agriculture** to develop infrastructure, to pay laborers, to construct squatters. The settlers go their capital through government assistance and bank loans at a very low interest rate. As for acquisition of land the state carried out the extensive land expropriation, this land was given to settlers and plantation owners at take away price. (Almost free price)
5. **The settlers had strong links with the metro pole** and always exerted critical influence on the colonial state. Any policy taken with respect to colonial production had to take into account the interest of the settlers.
6. **Use of massive unskilled labor in the production** through the provision of African cheap labor. The colonial stat ensure supply of massive unskilled African labor through passing laws that requires the African to provide labor to the settlers like introduction of adult tax to every man or provision of labor in the white farm that is equivalent to the tax

7. **Private ownership of plantation** by the European who came as settlers, and legitimizing African land through alienations, in Kenya, for example, the crown land Ordinance of 1915 gave the settlers 99 years lease for rural or agricultural land; the lease was later extended to 999 years, that the settlers would claim the land in perpetuity.

8. **Practice of racism,** where by the European settlers made Africans inferior, their work was to supply cheap labor on the plantations i.e. Africans was not allowed to establish commercial agriculture.

9. **It was characterized with establishment** of transport and communication network in the areas where settlers dominated e.g. roads, rail, banking sectors etc.
10. **Settlers were allowed to form political organization**, which they would use to defend their interest in colonial states.

11. **It was characterized by the organization of labor** on contract and dominance of migrate laborers who worked on the plantations seasonally.

<u>HOW DID THE COLONIAL STATE FAVOUR SETTLER AGRICULTURE?</u>

1. **The colonial state appropriated land ordinances, which ensured the availability of enough fertile land for the settlers**. These land Acts of land ordinances legalized land alienation for example the colonial state in Kenya passed land Acts in Kenya which strictly prohibited Kenyans from procuring land, which was potentially, preserved for the white settlers i.e. the crown land Act.

2. **They were ensured of constant supply of cheap labor from Africans.** This was made by passing legislation laws for example the master and servant's native Act of 1906 in Kenya which made Kenyans to provide their labor power in the colonial settler farms, the crown land Act of 1915 in Kenya and the Kipande system which increased the number of days from 90 to 180 days for Kenyans to work in settler farms per annum.

3. **The colonial state offered loans with dear interests to the settlers,** furthermore they were given subsides as a means of encouraging them to expand their agricultural activities in large scale.

4. **The colonial state ensured security to the settlers against African resistances.**

5. **The colonial state allowed the settlers to form political organizations and trade unions**, which defended and protected their interests.

6. **They were provided with compensation (remedies) in case of loss or poor agricultural** production due to either poor climatic conditions or inflation something, which encouraged them to keep on expanding and exploiting Africans resources.

7. **The settlers were given the monopoly power of growing certain types of cash crops that Africans were not allowed to grow;** this was meant to avoid competition between Africans against the Europeans in terms of production.

8. **The colonial state left the settlers to determine the prices of their crops.** At times when the colonial state set prices, they set high prices for their crops than those given to the ordinary African peasants.

9. The colonial state extended **reliable physical infrastructures to the settlers' farms,** for example the Mombasa-Kisumu railway was constructed in 1895, the Nairobi – Thika line in 1918.

10. The white settlers were also **encouraged through better social amenities and extension services such as water and electricity supply.** The settlers were given their best social services such as transport, hotels, health care, recreational centers, clubs etc. while Africans were deprived of such services.

11. **The colonial state exempted the settlers from paying taxes** as a result, the burden fell on Africans who were heavily taxed, and for example, Africans were obliged to pay some notorious tax structures such as matiti tax in Kenya.

12. They were also allowed to defend their rights in a sense that, they had separate courts prisons and law governing them. They could also conduct their cases through experts such as advocates.

    To conclude the above discussion we can generalize that the flourishing of settler farms and economy in general especially in Kenya was basically attributed with the help of the colonial masters themselves because Africans right were denied while those of settlers were positively responded (maintained).

THE FACTORS, WHICH FAVOURED SETTLERS' AGRICULTURE IN KENYA

BACKGROUND

In Kenya, the establishment of colonial economy started outright after the construction and completion of the Kenya-Uganda railway in 1902. Before that time, Kenya was regarded as a stopping place where British had to pass to the rich and strategic areas of Uganda from where they got tea, cotton and minerals.
During the construction of the railway line, they discovered the potential richness of the Kenyan highlands and the rift valley.

Therefore, the imperialists started to argue that in order to pay back the expenses incurred in building the railway line and for the line to be self-supporting, the Kenya's interior should be opened for settler agriculture.

From the early period the British viewed their east African protectorate which was re named Kenya later alone in 1920 as potential colony for white settlers, the high lands of east of Lake Victoria offered favorable climate. From the mid of 1900 white settlers were brought from Britain and South Africa with determined effort of turn the high lands into a white man's home. The administrative capital was shifted inland to

Nairobi to serve the European settlers. Some of the factors that favored Kenya to become the hub of white settlers included. Thus, the factors were as follows;

1. **Conducive climatic condition of Kenya** especially in the central high lands which had cool humidity climate which favored the European to settle in Kenya without any problem
2. **Fertility of the soils in Kenyan high lands** which favored large commercial agriculture whereby Europeans settlers were able to maximize the production of raw materials due to such factors the influx of settlers in Kenya was high
3. **The traditional political system of Kenya** also favored the establishment of settlers' agriculture. Kenya did not have strong political system that would resist land alienation from the Europeans unlike other parts of east Africa like Buganda which had dense population with highly centralized leadership of Kabaka
4. Availability of labor force i.e. cheap labor to work in the plantations. In Kenya, labor reserves were created that produced migrant labor, also through legislations like ***the master and servant act of 1906***, which asked African to sell their labor force for 90 days per year for 3 rupees as a wage per month.
5. **Kenya had less tropical diseases** like malaria due o the cool climate in the high lands of Kenya as compared to other areas like southern Tanganyika, Uganda and Burundi; this was a pushing factor for the settlers to come to Kenya for settlement.
6. **The political set up of Kenya during** colonialism. Kenya was a crown colony and not a protectorate like in Uganda and Tanganyika so the white settlers were ensured permanent stay in Kenya.
7. **Availability of enough land** to establish large plantation of the settlers. This was because some areas in Kenya were sparsely populated that enabled the colonialist to acquire big chunk of land for large plantation un like in Uganda and some parts of Tanganyika.
8. **Absent of active resistance** during the establishment of colonial rule, this ensured absence of violence and riots, which could destroy the plantations and tools.
9. **Topography of Kenya favored** the establishment of infrastructure to transportation of bulk raw materials e.g. the Mombasa to Kisumu railway, which had just completed in 1895.

Generally, the White settlers in Kenya earned much wealth through their economic sectors (farms) they established due to the fact that they had access of utilizing African labor, land and other raw – materials that they could later precipitated to the rise and establishment of class consciousness to the Kenyan in what we call Mau Mau war.

THE IMPACTS /EFFECTS OF SETTLER ECONOMY IN KENYA:

(f) It led to severe land alienation simply because; Africans were forced out of their fertile land so as to give room for the settler economy to be developed (established).

(g) It caused to exploitations of African labor in a sense that Africans were forced to work under settler farms for long hours but received very low pay that could not match with the task (work) they performed.

(h) It led to the establishment of different laws in Kenya; good example is that of 1915, which forced Africans to surrender (leave) their fertile land to settlers, other law was that of 1906 and 1921, which forced Africans to work to settler farms for about of and 180 days respectively.

(i) It stimulated African strong resistance which aimed at regaining other lost freedom Good example is Mau Mau war that erupted in 1950's in Kenya, shona and Ndebele in Zimbabwe from 1896 – 1897.

(j) It encouraged un-even development in the colonies in a sense that, areas that were occupied by white settlers were more favored by the colonial. State in terms of provision of social services compared to those area s where settlers were not do ruin ant.

(k) It resulted to the loss of Africans freedom as they came to be under the control of the white settlers in which they had no freedom at all in social political as well as economic as all matters (affairs) had to be decided by the whites.

REVISION QUESTIONS

1. *Why the British white settlers preferred to use settler agriculture in Kenya?*
2. *Explain how the British colonial state up hold the interest of white settlers in Kenya.*
3. *Make a clear comparison between peasant and settler agriculture (economic) as applied in East Africa.*

PEASANTRY AGRICULTURE

This was the small scale farming practice under the control of African families whereby the Africans were allowed to grow both cash and food crops in their own plots of land basically small farms. This agricultural practice was very dominant in the colonies of Uganda, Nigeria, Algeria and Senegal.

It was characterized by small-scale farming, production of both cash and food crops, local farming tools were used. Family labor was used and it was basically dominant in areas with high population and where the indigenous people had the culture of providing cash crops even before the colonial rule. Under this type, the colonial state instructed only what and how to grow cash crops. It was the cheapest way of getting raw materials and labor because it did not require any form of investment. Under this system of agriculture, social services were not essential because peasants had to live and perform their duties on their own plots of land.

In East Africa, peasantry form of agriculture was dominant in Uganda and the crops, which were grown, were coffee and cotton.

CHARACTERISTICS OR FEATURES OF PEASANTRY AGRICULTURE

1. It was small scale form of agriculture
2. It was cheaper than other forms of agriculture because no much investment was incurred.
3. It was based on the production of both cash and food crops.
4. Peasants themselves unlike the plantation and settler farms, which were owned by the white farmers, owned this type of agricultural practice.
5. A family was regarded as the main source of labor that is the basic unit of production
6. No land alienation was practiced.
7. The social amenities (services) around the areas where peasantry agriculture was practiced were

very few and poor ones since the whites did not settle there.

8. Simple tools such as hand hoes were used in the production process.

9. Low quality production due to lack of good facilities and farm implements to engage in production as effectively as possible.

REASONS FOR PEASANTRY AGRICULTURAL SYSTEM IN UGANDA

NECTA 2015

Why British colonialists preferred peasant to other systems of agriculture in Nigeria? (Give six reasons)

Uganda was a British colony which peasant type of agriculture as a method for intensive exploitation; to a big extent, the British were successful in establishing this type of Agriculture in Uganda. The reasons were as follows;

1. **Geographically, Uganda is a landlocked country** i.e., it has no easy access to seaways something which discouraged the whites from settling in Uganda.

2. **Hostile/harsh climate in Uganda**, which discouraged the whites from settling in Uganda. For instance, by that time Uganda had been hit by malaria, which was a threat to the white's settlement in Uganda as the result, the task of production was left to the Ugandans.

3. **The presence of strong centralized feudal states like Buganda** and **Bunyoro** acted as threats to the colonialists thus in order for the whites to do away with resistances that could be raised by such states they decided to opt for peasantry.

4. **Dense population.** Uganda had many people at the time when the colonial economies were being established. This is due to the fact that Uganda is geographically small (area 241038$km^{2)}$ compared to Kenya and Tanganyika. Therefore, it could be difficult to practice land alienation in Uganda and establish large agricultural settler farms or plantations in Uganda as the result they opted for peasantry.

5. **Readiness and willingness of the Ugandans** in Uganda; many Ugandan peasants were willing to accept colonial economy as opposed to Kenya and Tanganyika.

6. **The topography of Uganda** especially the Western and Northern Uganda did not favor the settler's settlement for the areas were/are very mountainous.

7. The division of land into Milo land which belong to the king and crown land which comprised rivers, swamps forest belongs to the colonial government such division of land could not allowed any other type of Agriculture apart from peasant.
8. The Buganda agreement of 1900. This granted land to the Kabaka and his local chiefs who distributed it to the loyal subjects as tenants. In this agreement, they agreed not to take any land for white settlement and introduced a system of private land tenure. This meant that much of the agricultural land of Buganda became the privately-owned estate of the Buganda chiefs and peasantry as their tenants

9. Fear for active resistance because of the existence of powerful centralized kingdom under the leadership of Kabaka Mutesa and his local chiefs.

10. The traditional political structure of Buganda before colonialism. Ugandans people were very royal

and subordinate to Kabaka who was their king they were not ready to accept any foreigner to rule beyond their king.

11. Existence of infertile soils especially in northern Uganda discouraged the establishment of plantation or settlers because of low productively

12. It was easy for administration and monitoring since supervision was done by peasant and local chiefs
13. Profitability, it maximized exploitation since the price of raw materials were fixed by the colonialists and were very low they did not pay wages since there was the application of workers but based on family labor

14. The relief of the land. Some areas especially in western Uganda it was mountainous and having swamps, it was very difficult and expensive to establish infrastructure in case of other type of Agriculture.
15. The cost factor. It was very cheap to use peasant agriculture, peasant provided their own packing, transport, and tools, labor and colonial government did pricing. The only cost incurred by the colonial government was to provide seeds and market.

16. The nature of the colony. Uganda was just a protectorate of Britain as per the 1894 agreement the British government and the Buganda representatives unlike Kenya which was a crown colony
17. Crops that were established in Uganda required intense care and cannot easily be mixed with other type of crops like cotton, coffee, needed family care thus the establishment of peasant agriculture
18. Another condition that favored many natives had some experience and knowledge on relating to the cultivation of the new cash crops e.g. in Tanganyika the native of Kagera had the knowledge of growing coffee even before.

THE ROLE OF COLONIAL STATE IN MAINTAINING PEASANT AGRICULTURE

1. **Avoidance of land alienation** as to enable Africans to possess land and practice agriculture
2. **Introduction of taxation,** various types of taxation were introduced to force the Africans in produce cash crops to pay taxes
3. **The colonial government provide seeds** and seedlings of cash crops like cotton coffee cocoa etc to the peasant to grow them
4. **It used force to the peasant** to grow cash crops e.g. destruction of food crops for any peasant who did not grow cash crops alongside his subsistence
5. **Importation of European industrial** goods as a motivation and a force to make peasants grow more cash crops, e.g. footwear clothes, bicycles etc.
6. **Through crating marketing boards** and peasant cooperative union so as to market and advice the peasant concerning the production of crops

7. **Through indirect rule** whereby the Europeans used local chiefs to instruct the Africans to produce cash crops
8. **Through creation of social infrastructure** in the areas where the peasants were located e.g. schools roads rail etc
9. **Through providing technical skills,** especially to the progressive peasant who established large plantations.

IMPACTS OF PEASANT AGRICULTURE

1. **Regular occurrence of famine,** because of over concentration on cash crops and ignoring food production the colonial government carried out forceful campaign to ensure that every peasant grows some cash crops on his small plot anybody who violated the campaign was punished by destroying his substance food.
2. **Accessibility of colonial education** especially the peasant who were progressive sent their children to colonial schools as a motivation factor to continue production
3. It led to the development of nationalistic ideas i.e. struggle for independence through peasant cooperative union which discovered the exploitation of Europeans

4. **It led to classification among the peasants** according to the capacity of their production i.e. progressive peasant these one produced more than 10 acres followed by middle class peasants and then poor peasants.

5. **It improved the workers' welfare,** after the establishment of some social infrastructures like medical care, schools, roads etc some peasant were able to send their sons and daughters to school which led to the rise of elites that led to the rise of African nationalism

6. **It led to the intensive exploitation** of African resources through provision of low prices for their production that led to general underdevelopment. The small number of large European companies did marketing at the coast. They ensure that prices given to the African peasant are kept at the lowest level as possible.

7. **Importation of finished European** industrial goods like cloth and metal goods were undermining Africa self-sustaining industries, thus promoting de-industrialization

8. **Because of intensive exploitation** of agriculture, land became exhausted and at times drought famine struck because of poor environment and soils, which claimed a lot of death of Africans.

9. **It led to regional imbalance** where by some regions which were producing cash crops god development like roads schools medical centre while in regions were cash crop production did not take place such development did not take place.

SAMPLE QUESTION

1. *Discuss the factors that favored Britain to established peasant agriculture in Uganda and Nigeria*

Discuss how the colonial agriculture in colonies contributed to the rise of African nationalism taking either Uganda or Nigeria as a case study

2. *Compare and contrast between peasant colonial agriculture with settlers' agriculture in the British colonies*
3. *Why Britain was very reluctant to establish settlers' agriculture in her West African colonies*

THE PLANTATION AGRICULTURE

The colonial plantations were the largest agricultural farms with a single production unit i.e. monoculture which was either owned by the colonial governments or states or by the capitalists abroad who sent representatives or hired/employed management to manage the production unlike settler's agriculture, the

colonialists did not establish their settlement where the agricultural production was undertaken.

This form of the colonial agriculture had been practiced in the colonies of Zaire, the Central African Republic, Tanganyika, Ivory Coast etc.

FEATURES/CHARACTERISTICS OF PLANTATIONS AGRICULTURE

1. It was **based on large-scale plantation**, which covered large areas for instance 100 acres, and beyond.
2. **In the plantation agricultural system, the management and owners were two (2) separate entities** i.e. the sole owners were in Europe who only facilitated by providing capital while the managers who were vested with the power supervising the plantations were in the respective colonies, for example Germany used the Jumbes and Akidas to supervise the production process in the sisal plantations in Tanga and Morogoro regions in Tanganyika.
3. **There was the employment of unskilled laborers** who were recruited from different areas to work and supervise the production process and they were poorly paid (low wages)
4. **The plantation agricultural practice was monoculture in nature** the specialized single crops e.g. Cotton and sisal were grown in the given plantations.
5. **Investment of huge capital** in the establishment of the colonial plantations was incurred for example the strong physical infrastructures were put in place in order to facilitate the transportation of the crops from the interior where they were shipped after being produced to the coast, for example in Tanganyika, the railways lines ran from the interior to the coast.
6. **The European capitalists who did not come to stay in the colonies owned the plantations**.
7. **This system of practice went in hand coercive (brutal and forceful means)** especially **when it came on searching for labor, forced was applied and migrate labor were humiliated with poor payment and long working hours,** taxation etc for instance the Germans employed the Jumbes and Akidas and German askaris to supervise the corporal punishment, furthermore, the labor recruiting agency was established e.g. SILABU (the Sisal Labor Bureau)
8. Plantations were scientifically managed and involved the application of heavy machines as to produce high production
9. Plantations highly linked with the establishment of infrastructure especially roads to ensure smooth transportation of produce to the required places especially to the coast were they were to be exported in Europe, that's why in the colonial Tanganyika all roads and tracks were running down to the coast.
10. Migrant labor and conscript laborers that included forced labor and indentured laborers attended most of the plantations.

FACTORS, WHICH FAVORED PLANTATION AGRICULTURE DURING THE COLONIAL ECONOMY IN AFRICA

1. **Harsh climatic conditions, which were not favoring the settler's settlement in the colonies something, which made them to,** practice the plantations without settling in the colonies.
2. **The availability and vastness of the land.** This is due to the fact that plantations required large areas for instance plantation agricultural system was highly preferred IN Tanganyika to other East African colonies because of the vastness of its area, for example; Tanganyika covers the area of **945,090km^2** while the other East African countries cover **580,36km^2 (Kenya) 241,038 km^2 (Uganda)**

3. **Plantation agriculture was established in Africa to act as the main source of market for the European manufactured goods** especially in the plantations whereby the migrant laborers bought such goods for example clothes, radios, alcohol, chocolate cigars etc.

4. **The threat for the tropical diseases such as malaria, small pox, jiggers** which was not favoring the settlement for Europeans discouraged the settlers' and thus they opted for plantation agriculture.

5. **The presence of scattered fertile land in the colonies** whereby some other forms of agricultural practices such as settlers' agricultural practice could not be practiced, for example in some parts of Tanganyika some areas had fertile soils while others did not have.

6. Presence of scattered fertile land in the colonies whereby settler's agriculture could not be effective e.g. in parts of Tanganyika some areas possessed good soils while others not

7. The existence of labor reserves which provided manual laborers especially the migrant labor, which was highly preferred to work on the plantations because it was economically cheap and easily exploited because it was unskilled.

8. The desire of colonial government to collect taxes from the laborers. The migrate laborers also served as source of revenues for the colonial government, they would easily collect or deduct taxes from their meager wages, thus establishment of plantation to attract the migrate laborers

9. It was very profitable and served the interest of the colonial government of maximizing profit and minimizing the coast by providing low wages to the laborers and the taxing them

10. The existence of strong political organization that would adopt active reaction to the establishment of colonialism in case of European settlers, then they encouraged plantation agriculture whereby there was no need of European to come and stay
11. The colonial policy of divide and rule supported plantation agriculture whereby some Africans who were made inferior to provide cheap labor while others were administrators for plantation.

12. Plantation agriculture was also established to act as a source of market for European goods especially in plantation trading centers where European finished goods were brought to be bought by laborers, e.g. bicycles blanket chocolate textile and alcohol

13. Also it depended on colonial master's policy e.g. Britain preferred settlers and peasant agriculture while Portugal and France preferred plantations and settler's agriculture

SAMPLE QUESTIONS

1. *Why the colonial government established plantation agriculture in some areas and settlers in the areas*
2. *How the colonial apparatus did maintain and consolidate colonial plantation agriculture?*
3. *Discuss the motives and impacts that surrounded the establishment of colonial agriculture in the colonies*

IMPACTS OF PLANTATION AGRICULTURE

1. Africans were exploited intensively through the provision cheap labor and paid low wages and on top of that, they worked for long working hours, this brought vicious poverty in Africa.
2. It led to the development of trading centers, which were located near the plantations that acted as source of European finished goods.
3. It led to unbalanced development in Africa whereby all social infrastructure concentrated where production took place leaving other places with nothing e.g. in colonial Tanganyika all rail line road run perpendicular to the coast
4. It led to the occurrence of frequent famine in Africa because the African agriculture were abandoned which led to shortage in the supply of food.
5. It led the introduction of colonial cash crops in Africa in capitalist economy e.g. coffee, sisal, cotton, etc.
6. It promoted divide and rule in the colonial economy where by some tribes were preserved to supply cheap labor in the plantation while others were left for administration.
7. It led to land alienation was conducted as to acquire the land for establishing plantations this made many African to become landless and settle on squatters.
8. It created market for Europeans finished goods where by plantation laborers became source of market for manufactured goods in Europe thus introduction on money economy.

COLONIAL LABOUR

The colonial labor simply means the group of Africans who were recruited through various methods to provide their labor in the colonial economy sectors e.g. in Mines etc.

TYPES OF COLONIAL LABOUR

i. **Obligatory forced labor:** The colonial government passed different laws and regulations in the colonies to force Africans to provide their labor power in the colonies. Obligatory forced labor was so common in settlers' economy in other areas the natives were needed to provide their labor power for the maximum number of time e.g. 3 months. This was used in Kenya.
ii. **Migratory Labor:** These laborers were taken from their original places to colonial production centers to work. Migrant labor was taken from reserve areas e.g. Kigoma, Rukwa and Tabora.
iii. **Peasant labor:** This was another type of colonial labor that provided their labor power in the colonial economy. Peasants produced for themselves and sold their crops to the colonial government at lower prices
iv. **Civil Servants:** The group included clerks, messengers, teachers, etc. this group of labor was because of the colonial education. The group facilitated the motives and goals of imperialism in Africa.

FEATURES OF COLONIAL LABOUR

i. It was subjected to low wages and salaries which were not proportional to what they produced
ii. Poor working and living conditions. They lived in overcrowded camps with no important services e.g. water, electricity, telephone and so on
iii. Colonial harbors remained technologically unskilled so as to avoid competition with the whites.
iv. Worse enough this group of labor had no insurance, the colonial government considered the laborers as fools of producing profit for them. Low wages were given to them so that they could survive.
v. They worked for long hours and they were not paid overtime or any relief.
vi. They were also oppressed; exploited, humiliated and discriminated in their own motherland this made them to remain poor.

METHODS AND TACTICS, WHICH WERE USED TO OBTAIN LABOURERS

1. **They introduced land alienation;** the colonial government alienated the Africans from their fertile land purposely so as to force them to provide their labor power in the colonial plantations since they had no any means of surviving.
2. **They introduced/ established different taxes** the colonial governments in different parts of Africa introduced taxes so as to force the Africans to provide their labor in colonial economy's sectors. Examples of such taxes included, hut tax, head tax, and matiti tax etc.
3. **They Introduced Foreign Goods** This is because Africans was made a Market of Manufacturing or manufactured goods from Europe these goods had to be obtained for cash and cash could be obtained only by selling their labor power.
4. **They created their labor reserves centers (regionalism).** This was because some area were made to act as a source of their labor for instance Kigoma, Ruvuma, Rukwa and Dodoma were made to produce labor were as Morogoro, Tanga and parts of Kilimanjaro were for plantations these case in Uganda especially northern region was made to provide their labor.
5. **Introduction of colonial education:** The colonial education was provided purposely so as to get few Africans who could help in colonial administration in facilitating exploitation.
6. **Formation of labor recruitment organizations:** The colonial governments formed some special organizations for recruitment of labor from different parts of plantations for example the SILABU (Sisal Labor Bureau) was a typical example of such organizations, which dealt with recruitment of sisal laborers in Tanganyika.
7. Paying low wages and salaries: The colonial government gave the Africans low wages and salaries so as they could not accumulate wealth and leave the job.
8. **Introduction of Kipande system:** This was used in Kenya where Africans were forced to directly provide their labor in settlers' plantations
9. **Introduction of reserves areas:** The colonialists set regions like Kigoma, Tabora and Rukwa as labor reserve areas. These regions were unproductive.
10. **They destroyed the Africans Economies** .This was because colonialists destroyed African such as industries and replaced European imported goods. Because at this self-sufficient economy was destroyed and introduced system of buying goods in cash.

MIGRANT LABOUR: This was a form of African Labor Employed by the colonialist in their production; they were from distant places especially those with maws men, the colonialist employed this system through transporting them in order to provide their labor in plantation and mines.

To accomplish this colonialist deliberately cart labor measures in the unproductive places in which these migrant laborers were drown

WHY COLONIALIST PREFERED THE USE OF MIGRANT LABOUR

The following were the main reason that made the European colonialist to prefer the use of migrant labor in their production.

(a) Migrant Laborers were very cheap_this was because they were paid very low wages as they left their families and concentrated on production eventually it helped the colonialists to make super profit.

(b) Migrant Labor Encouraged dis-unity among the Laborers this was because laborers come from different places with different geographical background and ways of life therefore it was not easy for them to unite and wage (start different strikes against the colonialist).

(c) Migrant laborers acted as a source of Market for European manufactured goods. In this case they were to work in the colonial plantations and mines for money so as to get money which they expected to spent it in buying needs like shoes, Blankets, and clothes which were made from Europe.

(d) Most or Migrant laborers were UN skilled; therefore they were given temporality nature of work because of not having access to education. It was easy for the colonialist to exploit them heavily.

(e) Migrant laborers had no insurance as well as a compassassions as a result the plantation owners, exploited them, without considering their physical being and humanity.

(f) Migrant Laborers had high productivity to the colonialist. This was because their time table was fixed by the colonialists were they had to work from morning up to evening, additionally, they did not come with their families therefore most of their time was engaging in agriculture thus contributing to much productivity.

(g) Migrant Laborers were Easily un skilled with inferiority complex as well raised segregation in which the colonialist did this to make them believe that they are inferior to the whites and that their job is to supply their labor power to them.

(h) Migrant laborers ensured colonial government for the payment of taxes, rent for the House and water bills thus a source of government revenue to the colonial government could be possible.

(i) It was difficult for the Migrant laborers to escape because they were as strangers form very far away to the area hence colonialists were ensured with constant of their laborers.

(j) Migrant laborers were easy to be controlled because they lived in the camps furthermore the laborers were lodged according to Ethnic groupings, each under tribal over seers.

COLONIAL INFRASTRUCTURES

Colonial infrastructures simply mean colonial transport and communication network systems and these included roads, railways harbors etc. which were introduced and established by the colonialists in Africa during the second half of 19^{th}c; the colonial infrastructures aimed at facilitating the exploitation of Africa's natural resources. They also aimed at fulfilling the policy of effective occupation as agreed during the Berlin conference of 1884 to 1885.

AIMS OF COLONIAL INFRASTRUCTURES

1. The setting up of railways and road networks started from the coast to the interior, mainly to transport raw materials from production areas to the hour.
2. Transportation of laborers from labor reserve areas to different productive areas for example migrant labor.
3. To transport colonial administrators from Europe to different areas of administration.
4. Transportation of European manufactured goods from the hour to the interior for marketing.
5. It aimed at transporting troops to different areas so as to suppress African resistances.
6. It helped to transport missionaries who were going for evangelical and Christianization to the interior of Africa.
7. The colonial infrastructures aimed at facilitating the exploitation of Africa's resources and fulfilling the policy of effective occupation

IMPACTS OF COLONIAL INFRASTRUCTURES

1. It facilitated maximum exploitation of Africa's wealth e.g. Minerals and so forth.

2. It led to the effective occupation of the colonies hence total colonialism.
3. Colonial infrastructures created uneven development, which can be seen up to this moment since it concentrated on productive regions than in unproductive areas.
4. Colonial infrastructures motivated or attracted more settlers in the colonies due to the fact it ensured them with easy transport and communication network systems.
5. It helped those landlocked countries. For example, Uganda, Malawi, Zambia etc. for easy transportation and communication with the outside world.
6. Colonial infrastructures established colonial administration network systems hence more impacts on Africans.

COLONIAL INDUSTRIES IN AFRICA

Beside agriculture and mines, colonialists established Industries in Africa because the colonies were meant to be the producers of raw materials for European Industries industrialization process in African was very little. For-instance the colonialist Established industries like.

(i) Processing industries purposely to reduce the bulkiness for Export reasons.

(ii) They established few import substation industries, which aimed to produce consumer goods like, soap cigarette and canned beef.

(iii) They established Luxuries goods manufacturing industries mainly in settler based areas.

(iv) The industries established in African during the colonial period had the following features characteristics.

(v) They were light industries and substitution industries purposely to purposely to produce raw materials that were needed to feed various industries in Europe.

(vi) They had weak labor force who had little education and who were paid low wages as well as who worked under poor working. Condition

(vii) There industries concentrated mainly on settler where as in areas dominated by peasant there were only processing industries.

METHOD USED BY THE COLONIALISTTO DE- INDUSTRIALIZES AFRICAN INDUSTRIES.

Because the European powers aimed at making African become a source of Raw materials for their Industries, these colonialists decided to initiate a special policy, which aimed to de – industrialized African industries by destroying African Industries purposely to avoid competition.

The method used to kill African industries was as listed here below.

(a) The colonialist applied direct brutal destruction of Local industries money especially in non- shelter colonies like Uganda and Nigeria.
(b) The colonialist also prohibitive the African form engaging in various industries activities. This was more especially in Zaire, and Senegal where as anyone who went contrary heavy punishment was given to him. E.g. cutting their hands.
(c) The colonialist Imported Europe manufactured goad in order to discourage African goods produced from African (Local African Industries).
(d) The colonialist imposed the policy of making migrant labor and forced labor this policy had negative effects to Africans simply because local African industries lacked labor as most of the laborers were. Concentrated on colonial production.
(e) The colonialist established the colonial education, which was provided to very few Africans who were

not linked to develop Africans local industries as they were prepared to serve to the colonial production as clerk and messengers.

THE EFFECTS OF DE- INDUSTRIALIZATION PROCESS IN AFRICAN

The Policy of de – industrialization brought many effects to the Africans among them were.

(i) Local Africans economy declined.

(ii) African technology and skilled were underside.

(iii) African labor force were heavily explained through how wages with long Working hours.

iv) It prepared for the under development of African continent where as African still depend on foreign import.

v) They caused to destroy the mind of Africans through brain washing process in which African still undermine any goods produced in African and praise those produced in Europe.

Sample question.

- ***Explain why industrial sector was not improved in African during colonial period 2010 moc***

END OF COLONIAL ECONOMY

WELCOME COLONIAL SOCIAL SERVICES



TOPIC FOUR

COLONIAL SOCIAL SERVICES

Colonial social services refer to the services that were provided in Africa by colonialists purposely to accelerate colonial exploitation and improve the welfare of colonial civil servants during colonial period. Such services include public health, education, transport and communication, water and housing and many others. For the purpose of this course our major concern will be on the following outlined aspects

These were the services e.g. Health services, education, water supply etc. which were introduced and provided by the colonial governments in Africa so as to facilitate the ambition and motives of imperialism in Africa.

AIMS OF COLONIAL SOCIAL SERVICES

1. The major aim of colonial social services was to facilitate the ambitions and motives of the imperialists in Africa.
2. To enable extensive exploitation of Africa's wealth.
3. It also aimed at supporting those few Europeans who happened to be in Africa.
4. It also aimed at preparing few Africans to assist colonial administration.

FACTORS THAT DETERMINED THE DISTRIBUTION/ PATTERN OF COLONIAL SOCIAL SERVICES.

i) Establishment of settlers in the colony led to the establishment of some social services so as to meet for the white settler's interest. Example, school and medical facilities were introduced in such area.

ii) Due to the existence of production. This means that some developments of social services were established near, plantations, so as to attract the laborer and facilitate the production. For instance, workers quarters for accommodation and transport net – work like roads and railways were established.

iii) Areas with raw – materials encouraged the establishment of transport network such as railways roads, in order to facilitate the transportation of raw – materials to the coast. Example in colonial Tanganyika all railways roads were running down to the coast.

iv) Areas where missionaries had dominated things like schools, medical centers were established to help them 9missionaries) and to convert the indigenous people having been attracted them.

v) Due to the status of the colony itself. This mean that, the colony that was under trust ship of UN like Tanganyika, they were given few social services this was a case due to the fact that the colonialists never see a need to develop such colonies but in those mandatory colonies they were given many social services.

vi) Areas with migrant laborers, which preserved as labor zone, in these areas, infrastructures like railways, were established in order to transport laborers to the areas of plantations example rail line from Kigoma to Tanga was built so as to carry workers in sisal plantations.

vii) Existence of peasant agriculture like in Buganda and Kagera, This made possibility of establishing social services like schools so as to encourage the peasants to carry out with agricultural activities because with agricultural sectors they were able to get money that would be used to pay school fees for their children.

COLONIAL EDUCATION

Education refers to as an endless civilization whereby knowledge, values, skills, experiences of the society are transmitted from one person to another or from one generation to another either formally or informally. On the other end of spectrum culture can be defined as the totality of people's ways of living as they struggle

to live, continue living and develop as nation. It is the total ways of living of a particular group of people in a given environment and time. It generally includes items like language, traditions, customs, arts and crafts, social institutions e.tc. In other words, culture refers to as all that has been created by man except those created by God.

Education is of paramount importance in any society since it ensures the preservation of the lives of its members and the maintenance of its social structure. So far, there are two main types/forms of education, namely **formal education** and **informal education**.

i) **FORMAL EDUCATION:** Is the type of education, which follows specific programs and maintains a clear division between professional teachers and the students. It is offered in special designated institutions like schools, colleges and Universities. It follows specific programs, syllabus and curriculum. It is further guided by the rules and regulations of the state/government.

ii) **INFORMAL EDUCATION:** An Informal education can be defined as a set of values that youths as members of the society acquire (get) from the elders through direct observations. It is mostly based on one's observation. Informal education does not follow specific programs; it has no syllabus, curriculum as opposed to the formal education. Informal education was predominantly practiced by every society in pre-colonial African societies. This was the most predominant type of education that existed almost in every society, it greatly based on the nature of the environment and the needs of the society.

AIMS/OBJECTIVES OF COLONIAL EDUCATION

The following are/were the aims of colonial education

1. Colonial education aimed at paving the way for the colonization of Africa.
2. It also aimed at destructing African culture and introducing the western culture.
3. It further aimed at preparing few Africans for white-collar jobs.
4. It also aimed at preparing puppet leaders who could be used in neo-colonialism.
5. Colonial education aimed at creating classes amongst Africans so as to bring about disunity this delayed Africa's independence.
6. It aimed at fulfilling the aims and ambitions of the imperialistic nations.

FEATURES OF COLONIAL EDUCATION

1. It was pyramidal in structure. There were many students at the lower levels but the number diminished as they went to higher classes.
2. It was more theoretical than practical this contributed to the decline of African technology.
3. It was taught in foreign languages and not in African vernaculars. (Local language).
4. **It was discriminative in sex**. In this way, girls and children of the lower class were denied to acquire education it was only boys and children of the chiefs that were given education this was because girls were regarded as less productive other than working in kitchen.

5. **It was discipline oriented.** Because it aimed at producing royal and obedient students to the colonial government. Those who received the education were supposed to obey without questioning, this aimed at avoiding many questions to the existing colonialism.

6. **The syllabus was foreign oriented and examination based.** This is because whatever was taught was

based in Europe, nothing much concerned about Africa, students were taught mountains in Europe without ever studying about the Africa ones. These were also a series of examinations set in Abroad; nobody could go to another stage without passing the examination.

7. **It was too theoretical with little science practice.** This was because; it aimed to produce job seekers instead of job makers. Minimum skills were provided, as the colonizers did not mean to develop technologically but to produce raw – materials for export and a market for European manufactured goods.

8. **It was racial oriented. i.e. based on color.** This was because, Europeans got higher level, followed by Asians who got middle level, and Africans were the last who were in poor schools. There were separate school for each race and the syllabus differed accordingly, Europeans received better education where as African got poor education.

9. **It was religions biased**. This was because, in the missionary schools non – Christians could not attend the missionary school, for instance Muslims and those who had not been converted to Christianity missed education.

10. **It only favored the sons and few daughters of chiefs** for future administration in this way many of the people from ordinary families had no chances to secure education.

11. **It was un-even distributed** This mean that, areas where production was high education was improved, where as in labor receives these were no schools, thus regions that produced cash crops for instance in Tanganyika regions like, Tanga, Moshi got many schools.

12. **It was taught in foreign language and prohibited.** The African pupils from not using local languages, for instance English, French and German became dominant, in the colonial schools. This in turn brought inferiority complex in African pupils and brainwash.

13. It had specific syllabus unlike the informal education in Africa,
14. Exams were set so as to reduce the number of students.
15. It was provided to few Africans especially the sons and daughters of the African chiefs only.
16. It involved professional teachers.

THE STRUCTURE OF COLONIAL EDUCATION.

The structure of the colonial education consisted of levels, which were in form of a pyramid. Its structure on the pyramid as follows.

i) **Primary education** acted as elementary education, which mainly prepared children to remain peasant cash crops producers or farm laborers. It started from standard 1 to 4 in Tanganyika.

ii) **In secondary or middle level (school)** this was a post primary education; it had only few children who could offer services in colonial offices and industries a low wages. In Tanganyika they built,

Tanga School, Tabora boy's school, secondary schools started at standard 5 up to 8, in Uganda, Mengo day school and Kings College, Bodo and Kisubi area etc.

iii) **Colleges like teachers and technical colleges** n East Africa, makerere technical college in 1921, which offered vocational training in medicine, agriculture, mechanics, carpentry and teaching professionals, others were, Ukiruguru in Morogoro in 1939, Achimota in Ghana in 1924, Yaba higher college in Lagos in 1934.

iv) **Higher education (University level)** this was provided by universities, in this way few people who managed to get university education had to be taken abroad.

THE CONTENT AND METHODOLOGY OF COLONIAL EDUCATION.

i) The syllabus based largely on Europe and nothing about Africa.

ii) It promoted inferiority complex among the Africans that even Africans were punished when spoken their local language and everything evil has a black face and white is an angel.

iii) It produced job seekers and not job creators.

iv) On primary level, concentration was put on agricultural education and school gardens so as to teach Africans how to cultivate cash crops.

v) It was not free; school fees were to be paid that is why very few acquired education white the majority did not.

vi) Learning was too bookish emphasizing on cram work, which was impossible for application in African situation.

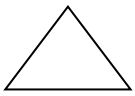
Question

1. Compare and contrast between pre-colonial African education and colonial education

HINTS: ON QUESTION 1 ABOVE

DIFFERENCES

Pre-colonial African education	Colonial education
A. Existed in Africa before the intrusion of colonialism	A. Brought in Africa during colonialism 19th C
B. Offered to all members of the society	B. It was offered to the sons of chiefs only, i.e. it was discriminatory on one's status
C. African oriented	C. Western oriented
D. It was more practical as it emphasized "learning by doing"	D. It was more theoretical it emphasized on three R's i.e. 3R's only (Reading, Writing and Arithmetic)
E. It prepared youths to be productive members of the society	E. It emphasized on brain-washing and prepared a few class of Africans who could become loyal to the colonial governments officials
F. It was relevant to African culture since it emphasized on development and promotion of African cultural aspects	F. It was irrelevant to African culture since it was western oriented.

G. Offered in African vernaculars	G. Offered in Western languages like English, French, etc.
H. It had no specific programs, syllabus, curriculum	H. It had specific programs, structure, syllabus and curriculum
I. It wasn't	I. It was pyramidal in shape-many Africans were at the lowest level while Asians at the middle and only a few Europeans who ascended to the apex of the pyramid. 
J. No exams	J. Examinations were used the means of reducing the number of students who would ascend to the top of the pyramid
K. It was based on the society's culture	K. It was based on religious (Lutheran, Catholic and Muslim schools. E.g. Pugu sec. school – R.C Tabora boys – R.C Kigurunyembe – R.C Seminary schools etc
L. Produced Africans to be able to undertake all forms of tasks especially physical and practical tasks	L. It produced people for white collar jobs or office clerkships
M. It aimed at utilizing African resources for community development	M. Aimed at exploiting African resources both natural and human resources
N. It did not	N. Aimed at creating puppet leaders and elites who were to be loyal to the imperialists

SIMILARITIES:

A. Both aimed at imparting skills, knowledge and valves to the members of the society
B. Both were practice in Africa.
C. Both forms of education were accompanied by ceremonies upon completion of the specified programs/teachings/level. In Africa-Traditional ceremonies /Graduation.

IMPACTS OF THE COLONIAL EDUCATION

i) It divided people into groups of educated (elites) and un – educated. This resulted to disunity among Africans because educated Africans had a tendency of despising non – educated Africans.

ii) It transmitted European, values rather than African values from one generation to the next. For instance in French colonial Africa like Senegal and morocco, the educated African became like the French except their color.

iii) It trained very few Africans in which after independence African lacked enough labor to run the government office.

iv) It contributed to the development of African nationalism in a sense that, colonial education produced African elites who became political aware and started to challenge colonialism example,

J.K. Nyerere, Kwame Nkrumah and many other.

v) It promoted Africans under development. This was because colonial education abandoned (killed denied) African education that was practical and based on African environment as a result Africans were given education which no application in their life, thus economic well being in Africa declined.

vi) The colonial education introduced foreign culture like education and religion, which began to distort the African values, and traditions and African local beliefs were despised, Africans were seen as pagans and un civilized people.

vii) The colonial education trained colonial collaborators who later helped the colonialist to consolidate exploitation, as many educated Africans worked as clerks, office attendants, messengers, as well as primary teachers, also little emphasis on technology and creativity was accompanied with this.

viii) It segregated Muslims from political and economic activities as Muslims regarded missionary education as Christianity and feared their pupils to be converted into Christianity and hence they decided to take their sons to madras and ignored the education, this made the Muslims to be segregated in political activities.

ix) It also prepared the fertile grounds for neo-colonialism in Africa since the whole system of this education discouraged the development of science and technology in Africa.

WEAKNESSES OF COLONIAL EDUCATION

1. The education, which was given to Africans, was too inferior from that which was given to the whites.
2. Few Africans received this kind of education especially the sons of chiefs while majority remained illiterate.
3. It was based on race and religion. This was because there were schools for the Africans and other races. Muslims could not join the missionary schools.
4. There was regional imbalance in the provision of this education.
5. Boys were much preferred to girls this led/contributed to poor development/ gender imbalanced kind of education.
6. Education always aimed towards serving the colonial state rather than indigenous people their environment and development.
7. The curriculum was on European countries, therefore the learners were taught geography of Britain instead of geography of Tanzania, Kenya, Ghana or Senegal.

COLONIAL INFRASTRUCTURE. The colonial infrastructures were also important social services established in colonial Africa. These colonial infrastructures were roads, railways, ports, harbors and airports. Examples are central railway line from Dar es Salaam to Kigoma via Tabora to Mpanda and Dar es Salaam to Tanga.

The Germans firstly built Tanga line in 1893, and reached Mombo in 1905, it was later extended to Moshi in 1912, where it served the settlers in Usambara and plantations owners and African peasants in Kilimanjaro. They also constructed the central line from Dar es Salaam to Morogoro in 1907, and reached Tabora in 1912 and Kigoma in 1914. It was 1928 after WWI when it was extended from Tabora to Mwanza. Other railways was in Kenya – Uganda made by British, it started at Mombasa in 1896 and reached Nairobi in 1898. It was in 1928 when it was extended to Jinja and Kampala.

FEATURES / CHARACTERISTICS OF COLONIAL INFRASTRUCTURE.

a) They ran perpendicular to the coast. This was done so as to ease importation of manufactured goods from Europe and exportation of raw – materials from the interior to Africa.

b) Roads and railways were very few only covered short distance concentrated in the areas of production and not much developed

c) Construction of these roads/ railways was done through forced labor but under the supervision of white man.

d) There was no international linkage in transport. Colonial infrastructure did not run from one territory to another except where only the colonies belonged to the same colonial master e.g. Uganda and Kenya shared railway because they were under British.

e) They were seasonal. This means that, most of the roads were mostly used during production and harvest season only hence in effectiveness roads and railway.

f) They experienced frequent reconstruction. This was because, in some areas Africans used to destroy them more especially during night e.g. Nandi and Masai, thus frequent repair became very important to make it function able.

REASONS FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF TRASPORTATION SYSTEM OR INFRASTRUCTURE.

a) To facilitate transport of raw materials from the interior to the coast for easy shipment to Europe. E.g. cotton, minerals and coffee.

b) To facilitate the transportation and distributed imported European manufactured goods from the coastal areas to the interior.
c) To easy the transportation of African laborers from one colonial economic sector to another.
d) To interlink various important colonial centers or zones such as colonial districts, provinces, projects, e.g. plantation and mines.

e) To easy transportation of colonial officials and solders from one place to another in running and administering the colonies.

f) To easy the colonial states to collect revenue from communication system in form of taxes from goods and raw – materials.

g) To open up the interior of Africa for exploitation of cheap labor, markets and raw – materials.

KENYA – UGANDA RAILWAY LINE. This was the railway, which was constructed by the British colonial government. It ran from Mombasa in Kenya to Kampala in Uganda in 1896 to 1907.

AIMS OF ITS CONSTRUCTION.

i) **In order to transport raw materials.** Especially copper from Kilembe, cotton from Uganda. In addition, it transported coffee and tea both from Kenya highland through Mombasa.

ii) **To transport manufactured goods.** The manufactured goods from Europe were to be transported from Mombasa harbor to the interior of Kenya and Uganda.

iii) **To travel military troops.** This was the case because these troops needed to supervise African resistance. For example, British travelled military troops for suppressing Nandi resistance in Kenya.

iv) **Transportation of laborers.** The African laborers especially migrant labors were taken from their home in various parts in Kenya and Uganda to the producing centers like in mining and agricultural centers.

v) **To transport administrators**. The colonial administrators or official were transported in various areas so as to supervise colonial economic projects.

WHY MOST OF THE COLONIAL ROADS AND RAILWAYS RAN PERPENDICULAR TO THE COAST.

Most of the roads and Railways in colonial Africa were directed towards the coast. This was due to the following reasons.

i) Roads and railways were directed to the coast so as to transport various raw – materials such as cotton, sisal, tobacco from the interior to the coast for easy shipment to Europe.

ii) They were constructed perpendicular to the coast so as to take manufactured goods from Europe like, clothes and distributed them in the interior of Africa.

iii) They were directed the coast so as to transport African migrant laborers to the various economic projects which were established along the coast e.g. Sisal in Tanga

iv) They were constructed towards the coast so to transport colonial officials who could supervise colonial economic projects, which were established along the coast.

v) They were constructed towards the coast so as to facilitate transportation of European soldiers to the economic projects, which were constructed along the coast. These soldiers were sent mainly to ensure that all economic activities went on smoothly.

DISTRIBUTION PATTERN OF WATER AND HOUSING SERVICES

Political administrative and economic functions determined the nature of housing and water service provided to the residents. Many Africans were attracted to move to urban centers after the World War.

In Bulawayo, Southern Rhodesia, some 4000 African male workers and unknown number of women and children were reported to have been housed in squatter settlement by late 1930. Africans lived in slums and were scattered in different parts of the capital city. Such slums were made using cheap materials poles, grass and tins. Dar-es Salaam encountered unemployment problem. The population increased but the number of houses did not increase. Many slums emerged at the begging of colonialism. Example in Nairobi Kenya slums were scattered while the Europeans settled in better- drained neighborhoods.

Conditions of living in the rural areas were becoming difficult especially in the white settler colonies. Where a lot of African land was alienated. There also was great pressure for Africans to pay taxes. Africans who lived in urban centers were overcrowded, the wages paid were much better than in the rural areas.

Improvement in transportation also encouraged mobility to the urban centers. The introduction of passenger buses and train coaches facilitated the movement towards the urban centers especially in colonial Tanganyika.

Impact of the provision of colonial water and housing services.

(i) Africans viewed urban centers as a place for temporary settlement after which one would go back to the rural areas as most of the service was provided for the Europeans.

(ii) Due to fewer houses in urban centers, Enterprising Africans construct logging houses.

(iii) Slums emerged due to lack of adequate shelter. In these houses, illicit activities such as the sale of illegal liquor, theft and drug trafficking take place All these contributed to the emergence of nationalism against colonial injustice. Example, Mau mau liberation war.

(iv) African civil servants in the colonies got better housing and water services after the Second World War

(v) Racial discrimination in the provision of water and housing services contributed to the emergence of African Welfare Associations in Urban centres like Dar- es -Salaam.

(vi) Diseases such as pneumonia, diarrhea and malaria affected Africans due to poor water services and housing available for African communities. Many Africans died because of poor condition of living in colonial urban centers. In addition, prostitution became widespread in colonial urban centers result to move social problems such as spread of sexually transmitted diseases.

COLONIAL HEALTH SERVICE

This involved the provision of medical needs to the white men and colonial subjects it was affected by the construction of government and missionary hospitals, dispensaries in the colonies mostly were found in key forces stations like; armed forces stations, in production areas and Urban centers.

Objectives of the colonial health services

1. Health services aimed at giving medicine to Africa peasants and labors in order to maintain the labor power.

2. Were designed in order to improve the living standards of the whites since they received the best services than the other races.

3. Aimed at destroying the African medication services.

4. Aimed at preventing and cure the white imposed diseases such as tuberculosis, sexually transmitted diseases etc.

5. Aimed at maximizing the interests of capitalism in Africa.

Features of colonial health services

Many hospitals or dispensaries were built in urban areas, plantations areas and in areas, which had settler's farms i.e. Tanga, Kilimanjaro, Arusha and Bukoba

Had racial discrimination i.e. the whites received the best health services followed by Asians and Africans.

The hospitals/ dispensaries only provided western medication.

Highly medical personnel were the whites e.g. the British, French, Portuguese, Belgians etc Africans

served as dressing sweepers and other lower rank jobs.

They were religious biased i.e. there were catholic hospitals, Lutheran hospitals etc.

The impact of colonial health services.

Expanded the market of the western capitalism industry in Africans consumed various medicine from Europe.

They maintained the labor power for peasantry settler and mining sector of colonial economy.

Provided employment to their people in Africa.

African herbs were almost replaced by the consumption of western medications.

Strengthened classes during the colonial period i.e. the white civil servants, settlers and managers got high quality health services while the African received poor health services.

Other social services were such as; *electricity, water, infrastructure, housing.*

THE ROLE OF HEALTH SERVICES, HOUSING, ELECRICITY AND WATER SUPPLY IN THE PROMOTION AND CONSOLIDATION OF COLONIALISM IN AFRICA.

i) The colonial health services such as hospitals and dispensaries ensured good health condition to the African laborers who were working in various colonial economic sectors such as Agriculture, mining etc hence consolidated and promoted for colonialism.

ii) The health services ensured good health condition to the colonial administrators who effectively supervised various economic sectors thus promoted and consolidated colonialism.

iii) The colonial housing services helped the African laborers to attend the work at right time hence promotion and consolidated in Africa.

vi) The colonial housing helped to reduce resistance from African since the laborers stayed in the camp under close supervision of the European soldiers' police etc. thus promoted colonialism.

vii) The colonial housing also to some extent reduced expenses to the colonialists who regularly recruited the laborers from the distant areas which is very expensive, thus under this situation the colonialists minimized expenses and maximize colonial production.

iii) The colonial electrical services provided in Africa facilitated exploitation in the colonies since some of the colonial works were due up to right time.

iv) The water supply attracted the European to feel comfortable to live in Africa and they supervised

QN.1. **The factors that determined the distribution of social services during colonial period were:**

- The status of the colony, this is to say, Trust ship or Mandatory colony. In this case, it was seen that those colonies that were under ship were given very low priority in the provision of social services. Subsequently, those colonies that were under Mandatory were much favored.
- Existence of Migrant laborers, this is to say those areas that were regarded as a source of labor like Kigoma European powers did not see any important of constructing other means of transport beyond rail way line this was because it could enable them to transport laborers to plantations.
- Areas where peasant type of agriculture dominated such as Uganda much emphases was put on the improvement of services like, schools as to encourage peasants to carry out with agriculture.

- Whether whites like Missionaries services like schools, hospitals, dominated a certain area were improved as it would enable them to convert the indigenous people.
- Presence of white settlers encouraged the colonialists to improve social services like schools, health centers and better infrastructures as to meet their interests.

QN.2. **The role of colonial social services in the consolidation of colonialism in Africa is as follows:**

1. Education trained few Africans especially sons of chiefs who eventually could serve in the colonial state especially in administrative matters like tax collection, clerks, police or messengers.
2. Education introduced western values and civilizations to the Africans as opposed to the African ways of Africa in this case it later created a sense of individualism to Africans, royalty, and obedient to the colonial masters.
3. Colonial health services were essential in treating migrant laborers who worked in different plantations and mines peasants who involved in cash crop plantations thus more production.

   In rural areas, missionary medical services and education were used in this case they acted as corner stone in consolidation of colonialism.

4. Education taught different agricultural production techniques to Africans. For example in Buganda Sir Apollo Kagira who was a British collaborator helped the British to introduce a new agricultural techniques especially in cotton production for Buganda.
5. Religious services were used as a tool to purify people by making them become obedient and royal to the colonial government, hence no much resistance would be waged by Africans against the colonialists.
6. Housing and water supply were provided to highly class people whose duty was to supervise production as well as to camp the laborers (the lowest ones) to facilitate efficiency in production
7. Where the colonial transport systems were treated as a social services they facilitated the transportation of raw materials from the interior to the ports and import goods from Europe to the interior parts, they also transported migrant laborers to plantations and mines, troops, and administrators also were transported to their respective areas.

Conclusively: It can be concluded that the despite the fact that the colonialists established different social services such as roads, rail ways as well as education, still these did not aim to benefit their subordinates (Africans) rather they were regarded as the catalyst to implement their goal of gaining super profit. This is because all these social amenities were put in place only in those areas where colonialists discovered that it was rich in accumulating of raw materials in terms of mineral and agriculture

WELCOME IN FORM FOUR TOPICS



TOPIC ONE

CRISES IN THE CAPITALIST SYSTEM

CRISIS: These are the conflicts and problems, which upset the capitalist production mainly in Europe and in the colonies especially in Africa and Asia.
Term crisis refers to a time of great danger, difficulty or confusion when problems must be solved or important decisions must be made or a time when a problem, a bad situation is at its worst point.
These capitalist crises were
1. The First World War or the Great War (WW I)
2. The Great Economic Depression
3. The Second World War (WW II)

1. THE FIRST WORLD WAR

This was the imperialistic war, which was fought between the two complex military camps namely triple entente, which consisted of France, Britain and Russia (FBR) on one hand against triple alliance, which consisted of Germany, Italy and Austria-Hungary (GIA) on the other hand from Tuesday 28 July 1914 to Monday 11th November in 1918.

The German philosopher Ernst Haeckel first used the term First World War in September 1914. It was generally a global war mostly centered in Europe that began as dated above. It was one of the deadliest conflicts in history paving the way to major political changes including revolutions in many nations involved. The trigger for the war was the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand the heir to the throne of Austria-Hungary and his lovely wife Sophie at Sarajevo, the capital city of Bosnia on Sunday 28th June 1914 by a Serbian member of the terrorist group called the Black Hand Gavrilo Princip

THE TREND OF THE WAR

The assassination of Ferdinand setoff diplomatic crisis between Austria-Hungary and Serbia because few days later Austria-Hungary government gave Ultimatum to Serbia to submit the assassin but Serbia refused.
It is historically recorded that on Sunday 28th June 1914 the Austrian Archduke Franz Ferdinand visited the

Bosnian Capital City-Sarajevo, a group of six assassins from the nationalist group supplied by the black hand, had gathered on the street where the Archduke's motorcade would pass. One of the assassins called Cabrinovic threw a grenade at the car but missed. Some nearby were badly injured by the blast, but Franz Ferdinand's convoy carried on. About an hour later to be exact, when Franz Ferdinand was returning from a visit at the Sarajevo hospital with those wounded in the assassination attempt, the convoy took a wrong turn into the street whereby coincidently Princip stood with a pistol, he shot and killed Franz Ferdinand and his lovely wife Sophie. Following the assassination, the Austria-Hungary suspected the Kingdom of Serbia to have been fully engaged in the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his wife. As the result, the Austria-Hungary sent three main ultimatums to Serbia on 23rd July 1914 and the Serbian Government was required to respond to the ultimatum within 48 hours. Serbia was required to

1. Offer apologies to Austria-Hungary for the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his wife
2. Provide detailed information on the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his wife to the Austrian authorities
3. Allow Austrian officials and judicial institutions to be involved in the investigation of the assassination in Serbia
4. Discourage and dismantle all the organizations and publications that were against Austria-Hungary
5. Discharge all Serbian officials who committed the assassination

   All the conditions were accepted by Serbia, except the demand of allowing Austria-Hungary officials to enter into Serbia's territory to investigate the crime stating that this would be a violation of the Constitution and of the law of criminal procedure. Three days later, on July 28, 1914, Austria-Hungary declared war on Serbia, beginning the First World War. On 28th July 1914, Austria-Hungary invaded Bosnia.

On 2nd August Germany invaded Belgium and Luxemburg and on 3rd August 1914 Germany declared war against France in the fear that France would help Russia.

On 4th August Britain declared war against Germany.

The USA joined the war on 6th April 1917 to assist the members of the Triple Entente

The war ended on 11th November 1918 in which Germany was defeated by victorious powers.

THE CAUSES OF THE WW1

The causes of the WW I can be categorized into two groups, namely short term and long term causes.

THE LONG TERM CAUSES

These were the causes, which prepared the grounds for the outbreak of the war. They are in other words called the underlying causes. These factors are as follow.

1. **The development of capitalism into the highest stage in 1860's:** This created a stiff competition amongst capitalist powers such as Germany, France, Britain, Italy and Austria Hungary. For example, Germany fought a war with France over the issue of Alsace and Loraine rich region in coal in Franco-Prussian war of 1870-1871. This contributed to the formation of Alliances hence the war.
2. **Dissatisfaction in territorial division:** The partition of colonies in the Berlin conference of 1884 to1885 was not fair because some European countries such as Italy was given few colonies compared to other European countries. This created hatred amongst the super powers thus creating grounds for the war.
3. **The rise of military alliances:** Germany sought alliance with Austria and signed the Dual Alliance in 1879 with the condition that they have to help each other during the war. Italy joined in 1882 to form Triple Alliance. On the other hand, France-Russia treaty was signed 1890 to form Entente Cordially and Britain joined later to form Triple Entente (agreement). The rival alliances created weapons such as bombs, guns, tanks, and created armies, which were ready for the war at any time. Furthermore, the alliances created the fertile ground for the outbreak of the First World War in 1914
4. **The France desire to regain Alsace and Loraine (the French Revenge movement):** Germany annexed the two provinces of Alsace and Lorraine during the Franco-Prussian war of 1870-1871. This created grounds for

the revenge amongst the French men hence preparing the ground for WW I

5. **The Balkan crisis (Balkan nationalism):** The Balkan nationalism created conflicts between Austria-Hungary against Serbia and between Austria-Hungary against Russia. The competition amongst the three powers led to the assassination of Franz Ferdinand hence the WW1.
6. **Moroccan Crisis 1905 and 1911:** The conflict was between France against Germany in which Germany declared independence to Morocco, which was the French colony. This created the hostility between France against Germany something, which prepared the ground for the outbreak of the WWI.
7. **Arms race and militarism** contributed greatly to the outbreak of the First World War simply because, European powers especially Great Britain and Germany competed in the production of arms and enlargement of soldiers. Good example is Germany who increased her armies from 400,000 to 800,000 the same Britain increased it drastically, such competition made other powers to increase their military budget for defense, also it caused to the antagonistic relations among European powers.

THE SHORT TERM CAUSE (THE IMMEDIATE CAUSE)

The immediate cause for the outbreak of the WW I was the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his wife Sophie on 28th June 1914 in Sarajevo the capital city of Bosnia. Archduke was the Austrian Prince and the heir to throne. As he pay a visit in Serbia with his wife, they were shoot dead by a Serbia young boy called Gavillo Princip, this made Austria Hungary government to give ultimatum (a statement of terms that must be accepted) the ultimatum had three conditions, these were: -

Serbian to explain for the assassination and bring / surrender the assassins, second Serbia to dismiss all officials suspected and lastly Serbia to allow Austria – Hungary's soldiers to make investigation. As Serbia responded negative, this caused for the outbreak of the war. (For more information please read this article).

Generally the outbreak of the First World War was the contributing factors to the underdevelopment of African continent in a sense that European powers being economically affected they embarked on massive exploitation by increasing more taxes, alienating African fertile land and many other related chaos.

THE IMPACTS OF THE FIRST WORLD WAR ON AFRICA

1. All German colonies such as Tanganyika, Burundi, Rwanda, Namibia, Togo and Cameroon were put under League of Nations as mandatory territories. This led to the changing of colonial administrative systems, which affected Africans. This was done following the Versailles Peace Treaty in Paris France in 1919
2. Deaths amongst Africans especially in Germany colonies such as Tanganyika and Togo because Germany recruited African soldiers to fight on its side.
3. The spread of disease such as flu, which hit the lives of thousands of Africans for Example in Tanganyika it is approximated about 7000 people, died because of flue.
4. Destruction of properties such as farms, mines and physical infrastructures like railways were badly destroyed in German colonies.
5. The fall of the external trade between Europe and Tanganyika due to the destruction of European economies such as banks and industries.
6. There was increasing exploitation in the colonies such as land alienation, low wages and introduction of agricultural schemes in order to compensate the losses, which had occurred following the war
7. Fall in the prices of raw materials from African colonies because of the severe financial crisis that had hit the countries, which participated in the First World War
8. It led to the introduction and development of forced colonial agricultural schemes in order to generate big qualities and quantities of raw materials geared towards restructuring the economies of the western capitalist countries, which took part in the war
9. The First World War led to the reduction in the colonial expenditures in the African colonies due to the effects of the war

THE GREAT ECONOMIC DEPRESSION 1929- 1933

The Great Depression was the deepest and longest-lasting economic downturn (slump) in the history of the Western industrialized world. In the United States, the Great Depression began soon after the stock market crash on **Tuesday 29th October in 1929**, the day came to be known as the **Black Tuesday**, which sent **Wall Street** into a panic and wiped out millions of investors. Over the next several years, consumer spending and investment dropped, causing steep declines in industrial output and rising levels of unemployment as failing companies laid off workers. By 1933, when the Great Depression reached its nadir (the worst moment of a particular situation), some 13 to 15 million Americans were unemployed and nearly half of the country's banks had failed.

It is historically recorded that the depression started in the US and spread to other parts of the world. Before the depression, the US economy was very stable and it was the leading manufacturing country in the world. For instance, when the US manufactured 4.5 million cars, Germany, Britain and France together produced a total of 500,000 cars. This is because while other powers were fighting in the WWI, the US was improving its technology, which had great impact on its industrial economy.

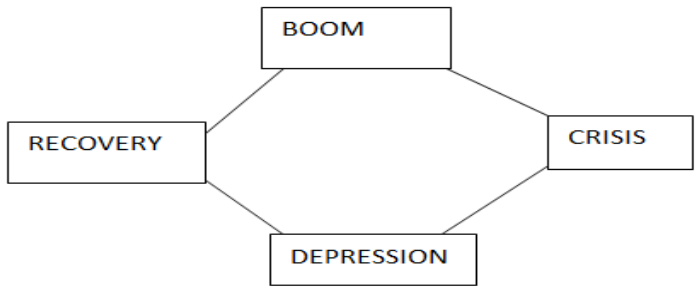
However, in the same year, the stock exchange market of the US collapsed because all its shares (stock) lost value and people who tried to sell their shares suffered losses as the price of shares went down due to the depression of the economy. This situation marked the beginning of the world economic crisis and it was termed **THE GREAT ECONOMIC DEPRESSION.**

CHARACTERISTICS OF GREAT ECONOMIC DEPRESSION

1. Fall in agricultural and industrial production.
2. Low prices of crops and goods such as in the US the price of wheat declined.
3. Closure of banks in capitalist world for example in the US 5,000 banks were closed by 1932.
4. Unemployment in the world for example over 30 million people had no jobs in US by 1932.
5. Collapse (decrease in) the national income.
6. Low wages and salaries, food shortage and poor social services.
7. Starvation and loss of many lives

CAPITALIST PRODUCTION CYCLE

The capitalist production has four major stages.



BOOM STAGE (PEAK)

This is the period when the economy is at the highest level. During this period, the economy has the following characteristics/features:

1. High level of investment
2. Lowest level of unemployment
3. High standard of living
4. Social and political stability
5. Expansion of trade.

CRISIS

This is the temporary decline in the economic activities and it has the following challenges

1. Decrease in investment
2. Decrease in employment
3. Decrease in income
4. Decrease in trade
5. Decrease in commodity price

DEPRESSION STAGE

This is the period of total decline in the economy or stagnation of the economy. It has the following characteristics;

1. Lowest level of investment.
2. Highest level of unemployment.
3. Lowest standards of living
4. Total closure of enterprises and investment
5. Lowest level of income.

RECOVERY STAGE

This is the period when the economy starts to improve and expand, it follows after a depression or a recession; it has the following characteristics;

1. Income starts increasing
2. Prices start to rise.
3. Standard of living starts to rise.
4. Opening of Banks.
5. Investments start to expand.

THE CAUSES OF THE GREAT ECONOMIC DEPRESSION

1. **The effects of the WW1:** The war ruined the economies of almost all European countries. Due to the collapse of economies, efforts were made to recover economies by producing as much as possible. This created **over production** of merchandise (goods) against **under consumption** hence, Great Economic Depression. Furthermore, the WW I destroyed the important economic infrastructures such as roads, railways and so on
2. **High Protective tariffs by the US on the imported goods from Europe.** This appealed European country to put tariffs on the US goods as a result market was narrowed to both continents hence over-production and great economic depression.
3. **Un-equal distribution of income:** The difference in incomes between capitalist and workers in which workers were paid inversely proportional to what they produced created a gap between production and consumption hence depression.
4. **The collapse of the US stock exchange market:** This was the immediate cause of the Great Economic Depression, the New York Stock collapsed on 29th October in 1929, the stock was located along the WALL STREET, due to the public rumors that the boom was about the late and many people were rushing to withdraw their money from banks and sell their shares at lower prices than before. The values of the shares fell drastically between September and December in 1929. The collapse of the New York Stock exchange market led to the collapse of business and agriculture due to lack of capital
5. **The failure of speculators to pay back loans borrowed from banks:** Speculators are people who trade commodities, bonds, equities and currencies, the failure to repay the loan affected economy hence great

depression.

6. **Nature of the capitalist economy:** Economists believe that depression was inevitable because any capitalist economy has to pass four phases, which are cyclic. Boom, Crisis, Depression and Recovery. Therefore, its nature is what driven it to depression.

Failure of the banking system and bad debts especially the housing banks

EFFECTS OF THE GREAT ECONOMIC DEPRESSION AFRICA

1. **Drastic fall of the prices of raw materials in the African countries;** for example, the price of sisal exported to Europe dropped from 32 pounds per ton to 12 pounds per ton between 1931 to 1932.
2. **Fall in worker's wages;** Colonial government reduced the salaries and wages of workers for example in Kenya the worker's wages fell from 36/=Kshs to 10/= Kshs in 1930.
3. **Unemployment;** the depression caused unemployment in many African countries because the colonial government retrenched (reduced) some workers and reduced the size of army.
4. **The introduction of agricultural schemes;** such as groundnuts schemes in Gambia and Tanganyika.
5. **Intensification of exploitation;** post-depression period witnessed the increase of tax, reduction of worker's wages, forced labor, low price of cash crops and long working hours which were introduced by the colonialists so as to compensate their economies.
6. *Intensive exploitation.* Colonial governments in Africa increased exploitation of African resources. Example land alienation was doubled, new taxes were introduced, forced labor and low wages, and this aimed at compensating the financial crisis that had affected their economy.
7. **Africans were discouraged by the colonial government to grow their subsistence crops** such as millet, sorghum, cassava, yams and maize, instead; they were forced to grow cash crops on their farms so as to increase the production of raw materials, which were highly demanded in Europe at that time.
8. *Decline in provision of social services*. Great depression led to the decline of provision of social services in Africa whereby the colonial government was no longer interested in the investment of social services because of severe financial crisis in Europe.
9. *Establishment of processing industries*. The establishment of processing industries likes cotton ginneries, oil refinery as to increase the qualitative and quantitative output in the metropolitan countries.
10. *Regional imbalance.* Great depression contributed to the regional imbalance of transport network whereby railway lines and roads were constructed in areas where production was high and in places that there was no transport network.

MEASURES TAKEN BY THE COLONIAL POWERS TO ALLEVIATE THE IMPACT OF THE GREAT DEPRESSION IN THE COLONIES

Several measures were taken by the colonial powers to revamp the impact of the great depression on the metropolitan economies. This includes the following;

a) Introduction and expansion in consolidating the peasant cooperative societies e.g. in 1932 the KNCU was formed, the Kagera coffee growers and many others with the aim to improve the production of cash crops.

b) They initiated more campaign in most African colonies by establishing more plantations and forced cropping e.g. in Tanganyika all able bodied men were supposed to work on plantations for 12 hours a day and all shops of wine (pombe) were supposed to be closed during the day and open in the evening. Some of these development schemes introduced were like Ulugulu land usage scheme Mialo rehabilitation

scheme Usukuma and Mbulu destocking.

c) They allowing peasants in settlers economy like Kenya and Zimbabwe to cultivate the prohibited cash crops that had been preserved for the settlers like tea, coffee, cotton, etc this was aimed at increasing the quantity of cash crop production as to fill the gap in the metro pole economies.

d) They changed African education syllabus and curriculum as to respond with the need of the metropolitan, emphasis was put on handcraft agriculture, and vocational schools as to increase production and exploit African cheap labor as a solution to solve the great slump

e) The colonial government begun to intervene in agriculture sector by providing subsidies, the settlers classify peasant, farmers, and provide them farming implements like hybrid seeds, fertilizers and packaging, to increase the quality and the quantity of the production.

f) The colonial government also begun to develop transport network like railway, harbors ,ports, so as to ease the transportation of the highly needed raw materials in the metro pole.

g) In addition, the colonial government increased the activities in mining of gold diamond, copper, and exploitation of African cheap labor e.g. in Kenya the Kipande system was increased from 80 days to 160 per person annually.
h) They intensified labor recruiting bureaus was set to encourage and recruit migrate labor for stance SILABU in Tanganyika, railways were asset to transport labor force from labor reserves to plantations.
i) New taxation were introduced in the colonial state to increase colonial revenues as well as to encourage cheap labor of the Africans new taxes introduced included Hut tax poll tax, livestock tax among others.

THE SECOND WORLD WAR

The Second World War was nothing but the continuation of the First World War. It is considered to be the deadliest war that the world had never experienced because sophiscated and deadly weapons such as nuclear weapons, airplanes, tanks and so forth were used. It is historically recorded that the war began on Friday **1st of September in 1939** and ended in 1945. It was fought between the Axis powers, which consisted of Germany, Italy and Japan against the Allied powers or the democratic powers namely Britain, the USSR, the USA and France.

The war in Europe ended with an invasion of Germany by the Western Allies and the Soviet Union culminating in the capture of Berlin by Soviet and Polish troops and the subsequent Germany unconditionally surrendered on 8th May 1945. Following the Potsdam Declaration by the Allies on 26 July 1945 and the refusal of Japan to surrender under its terms, the United States dropped atomic bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki on 6 August and 9 August respectively. With an invasion of the Japanese archipelago imminent, the possibility of additional atomic bombings, and the Soviet Union's declaration of war on Japan and invasion of Manchuria, Japan surrendered on 15 August 1945. Thus ended the war in Asia, cementing the total victory of the Allies

1. **Failure of the League of Nations to keep the world peace.** Primarily, the League of Nations was established to assess the impact of the First World War in 1919. Its Main function was to keep the world peace and security. Yet it failed to prevent armament and militarism of the aggressive powers such as Germany and Italy. Some of the reasons, which made it failed in the maintenance of the world peace, are summarized as follows.

i) It had no army of its own, which could interfere aggressive powers such as Germany and Italy.

ii) It had no clear charter towards maintenance of the world peace.

iii) It did not exercise or implement the terms or resolutions which were reached at the Versailles peace Treaty Summit which was held in February in Paris France.

iv) Many scholars argue that the League of Nations had no teeth (power) to intervene any aggressive power.

v) Many Nations withdrew from the League and started forming their own Military wings such as Axis powers as a result; these nations violated the terms and instructions from the League. Ultimately, the failure of the League of Nations to disarm and maintain the world peace led to the outbreak of the Second World War

2. **The rise of dictatorship governments in Europe.** Fascism in Italy under Dictator Benito Mussolini in 1922 and Nazism in Germany Under dictator Adolf Von Hitler in 1933. These dictatorial regimes went in hand with production of massive and destructive weapons which created aggression, tension and hatred amongst the world powers for instance after the rise of Nazism in Germany, Adolf Hitter started the Anti -Jews campaigns which aimed at Killing of all Jews who were living in Germany. This move was historically referred to as **HOLOCAUST**

NB: Fascism originates from an Italian word "Fasces" Which means bundles of rods and forces symbolizing unity and force Nazism implied extreme totalitarianism policy, which was based on expansionism, militarism dictatorial, and nationalism policy by Adolf Hitler.

3. **Italo-Ethiopian war of 1935 (Abyssinia Crisis of 1935)** This crisis came following the Italians' attack against Ethiopian in Africa. The war is referred to as Italo-Ethiopian crisis whereby Italo means Italy in other words; it is referred to as Abyssinia crisis for by then, Ethiopia was known as Abyssinia. Italy under Benito Mussolini had expansionism policy of acquiring areas of influence that is why she attacked Abyssinia. The Conflict raised much attention in the world as a result; the Allied powers such as Britain, USSR and US developed hostility condemning Benito's decision of attacking Ethiopia. This move prepared the ground for the outbreak of the Second World War (WWII) in 1939.

4. **The effects of the Great economic depression of 1929 – 1933 contributed to the outbreak of the Second World War.** This is due to the fact that, during that period, many European civilians had experienced much sufferings coupled with unemployment, low investment, poor living standards (poverty in general) Thus some leaders like Adolf Hitler and Benito Mussolini took the advantage of the situation to get into power during their campaigns, they promised their citizens bread and honey but once they won the elections they did not fulfill the promises rather they embarked on militarism and armament which led to the rise of dictatorship regimes hence the outbreak of the war. Thus, they took the advantage of the crisis as the stepping-stone into power.

5. **Spanish civil war in 1936 – 1939** it was the war, which was sparked of by rebels against the democratic

government. During this, Adolf Hitler tried out his new weapons on the side of the right wing military rebels in the war. He joined Benito Mussolini who was also supporting the revolts something, which brought the two. Hitler and Benito together this move Created hostility against Allied (B.U.U F) powers, something, which prepared the ground for the outbreak of the Second World War.

6. **Attack of Poland by Germany (Invasion of Poland).** This was the immediate cause for the outbreak of the Second World War. On1st September in 1939, 11:00am. Germany troops entered Poland. Following this aggressive action by Germany, Britain and France asked Adolf Hitler to withdraw his troops from Poland immediately but Adolf Hitler gave them a deaf ear that is he did not respond to, following Germany's refusal, Britain declared war against Germany on the very same day France declared war against Germany something which led to the outbreak of the Second World War.

7. **Failure of the appeasement policy** this was the policy which was firstly introduced by the British Prime Minister Chamberlain, in order to avoid the outbreak of the second world war. Chamberlain initiated this policy on Adolf Hitler as one of the ways of keeping him happy by giving him loans, pardoning Germany debts. At the end of the day, the policy did not materialize simply because Germany under Adolf Hitler went on with militarism and/ or armament, which prepared the fertile grounds for the outbreak of the Second World War.

8. **Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor,** while Germany invaded the Soviet Union, Japan made a surprise attack on 7th December 1941 on the US navy base at Pearl Harbor. This forced the US to support Britain and the USSR in fighting against the Germans with their leader Hitler and his allies namely Italy and Japan.

EFFECTS OF THE SECOND WORLD WAR
GENERAL EFFECTS

1. **Depopulation** was one of the effects of the Second World War in Europe and elsewhere. This was due to the deaths amongst soldiers and civilians following the use of the most deadly weapons such as atomic bombs, for example on Monday 6thAugust in 1945 the city of Hiroshima and atomic bomb was dropped by the allied powers. Also on Thursday 9th August 1945 in the city of Nagasaki another atomic bomb was dropped which was basically more destructive than that of Hiroshima. The bombings claimed lives of many civilians.

2. **It led to the establishment of the United Nations Organization on 24th October in 1945**, which marked the end of the League of Nations of 1919. This Organization was established in order to keep the world peace so much that the third world war does not occur.

3. **WW II led to the beginning of the cold war** following the emergence of the two super power nations in the world namely the USA (United States of America) and the USSR (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) in 1945

In this, the USA became the leading capitalist super power nation in the world whereas the USSR became the leading socialistic power in the world something, which led to the emergence of the cold war between the two, blocks.

NB: Cold war refers to as the ideological war, which emerged between the USSR against the USA soon after WW II in 1945. In cold war, the parties do not enter into active warfare but they do not cooperate, there exists mistrust between them.

4. **WW II led to the rise of massive nationalism in the world especially in Africa.** Following the roles played by ex-soldiers who fought during the war and Pan- Africanism movement in the world, African, Asian and Latin America countries started fighting for their independence, the ex-soldiers or returned soldiers formed different political parties and associations, which aimed at liberating their countries.
5. **The Second World War led to division of Germany into two antagonistic parties namely Eastern Germany, which was following the socialistic, ideology,** and Western Germany, which was following the capitalist ideology. This situation led to the construction of the Berlin wall, which separated the two parties.
6. **The war led to fall of production activities** for countries were not settled to engage in production activities. Additionally, some key economic sectors such industrial sectors were badly destructed by the war.
7. **The war led to lack of peace and security in the world in general**
8. **It led to social sufferings and outbreak of communicable diseases** such as cholera due to lack of sanitary condition. Other social miseries included famine among people, which coupled with lack of food security.

EFFECTS OF THE SECOND WORLD WAR (WW II) ON AFRICA

Despite the fact that the Second World War was not fought in Africa. Africa was both negatively and positively either directly or indirectly affected by the Second World War (WW II)

1. **Depopulation in Africa.** This is because many soldiers who fought in the Second World War on the side of Britain and allied powers in general were recruited from African colonies; strong energetic men are taken away. Besides a good number of them died during the war something which led to depopulation in Africa.
2. **The Second World War led to the rise of mass nationalism in Africa**, following the role played by the ex-soldiers or returned soldiers who survived the war. They had fought for their colonial masters and that when they returned back home (Africa) they formed different nationalistic political parties which raised people's awareness about the evils of colonialism, for example Dedan Kimath and General China were ex

-soldiers from the WW II who led the struggle for independence in Kenya.

3. **The second world war led to intensive colonial exploitation in Africa**, which went along with forced labor, land alienation, low wages and heavy taxation on Africans. The exploitation meant to generate raw - materials so much that they could restructure their economies which were badly destroyed during the second world war.

4. **It led to lack of peace and security in Africa:** for Africans could no longer settle and indulge (engage) in production activities due to fear and unrest in the continent.

5. **The war led to separation of families, which** was coupled with extreme social sufferings amongst Africans. Separation of families occurred following recruitment of soldiers from Africa who were taken to fight in the war leaving their families behind.

6. **The Second World War led to establishment of import substitution industries (ISI) in Africa** in order to reduce cost of importing goods from their mother countries, which could easily be manufactured in Africa. Consumables such as cigarettes, beverages, butter, chocolate, meat and so forth were by then produced in Africa; the aim behind was to reduce expenditure on importation of goods from abroad.

7. The formation of the United Nations Organization (UNO) on 24th October 1945 two months after the second world war was a blessing to African states because UNO supported many African states to fight for their freedom that is why many independent African states joined the UNO.

8. **Socialism Ideology started to spread in African states following the USSR influence on Africa** for example the United Republic of Tanzania adopted socialism and self-reliance ideology in 1967.

9. **The Second World War led to grow more cash crops campaigns in African colonies** for example the colonialists introduced different agricultural schemes such as Sukuma cotton agricultural scheme, Nachingwea groundnuts scheme and so on. These campaigns went hand in hand with the establishment of master farms in rural areas. The schemes meant to get money from the colonies in order to restructure their economies which were badly destroyed by the second world war (1939-1945).

TOPIC TWO

NATIONALISM AND DECOLONIZATION PROCESS IN AFRICA

A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE TOPIC

The period 1945 to 1970 witnessed the rise of nationalism in Africa in general and East Africa in particular. In 1957, Ghana led the way by becoming the first African country to regain her independence. In East Africa, Uganda and Kenya were colonized by Britain while Tanganyika was colonized by Germany after the First

World War (WW I), Tanganyika became a Mandate territory under the trust of Britain in 1919. Exposed to colonial evils like taxation, forced labor, low wages, land alienation, with increased western education, urbanization and experience of the World war two, African national consciousness was aroused. This was the spirit of the nationalism that finally led the three (3) states of East Africa to independence Tanganyika (1961), Uganda (1962) and Kenya (1963) under Nye ere, Milton Obote and Jomo Kenyatta respectively.

WHAT IS NATIONALISM?

Definitions of Nationalism: Nationalism is the feeling of national consciousness or awareness by the people that they are members of a nation and desire freedom from colonial rule. It is the feeling of national hood to belong to a certain country.

AFRICAN NATIONALISM. African nationalism is the desire of African people to terminate or end all forms of foreign rule. It is/was the political will of Africans in opposition to foreign domination, it entails African struggle against western colonialism and imperialism.
Generally, African nationalism was or is the desire of the sons and daughters of Africa to end/eliminate/terminate all forms of colonial exploitation, oppression, subjugation and discrimination so much that they could be free economically, politically and socially. It simply means/meant the struggle for freedom for self-governing. ALTERNATIVELY, African nationalism was/is the patriotic movement amongst Africans who were subject to colonial rule to liberate themselves for self-governance.

THE PROCESS OF DECOLONISATION

The process of decolonization or liberation was paramount (fundamental) in Africa because it allowed African states to regain their independence, which they had lost for many years. The rise of African nationalism goes as far back as the period of colonial conquest and the imposition of colonial rule, but later from 1945, the colonial exploitation stimulated the rise of the nationalistic struggles, which were patriotic in nature.

The factors for the rise of mass African nationalism are categorized into two (2) main categories namely, INTERNAL OR DOMESTIC AND EXTERNAL OR INTERNATIONAL FACTORS.

INTERNAL FACTORS are those reasons, which emanated within Africa and raised Africans' awareness of the evils of colonialism. These factors made them wage the struggle for freedom; such factors included colonial exploitation through land alienation, low wages, and forced labor, heavy taxation, as a result they formed different associations and independent churches movements within Africa, which catalyzed the spirit of nationalism within Africa.

EXTERNAL FACTORS are in other words referred to as **INTERNATIONAL FACTORS**, which emanated outside Africa and led to the rise of African nationalism.

The rise of African nationalism in Africa had two (2) main phases namely (Early African Nationalism) or Proto nationalism and mass nationalism or (Proper African nationalism)

A: EXTERNAL FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF AFRICAN NATIONALISM

1. The Impact Of The Second World War (WW II) Of 1939-1945

The war weakened the economic and military strengths of the capitalist powers such as Germany; Britain, France in general, thus they found that it was not worth benefiting to keep on colonizing African countries thus some of them decided to prepare their colonies in Africa for self-governance for example Britain, moreover; they depended on US loans.

2. The Role Played By Ex-Soldiers Or Returned Soldiers From The Second World War (WW II) In 1945

The war widened the political understanding of African soldiers who fought on the side of their colonial masters. The soldiers came to realize the true meaning of freedom and self-governance, self-determination and democracy. Besides, they had new fighting techniques and how to organize themselves. Thus when they returned to Africa, they opposed colonial exploitation. Some of them became active and front liners in forming nationalistic and patriotic political parties to fight for independence for example Dedans Kimath in Kenya who was the outspoken and outstanding leader of **MAUMAU** uprising in Kenya in the early 1950's. Jonathan Okwiriri who became the President of the Young Kavirondo Association other returned soldiers were General China, Joseph Kagethe just to mention a few.

3. The role played by Pan-Africanism movement.

Pan – Africanism was a massive (large) movement of all black people in the world of African origin to come together as one people against all forms of colonial **exploitation.**

NB: Pan means "ALL" thus PAN-AFRICANISM – ALL AFRICANS MOVEMENTS

Pan-Africanism implanted the spirit **oneness, unity, solidarity, dignity** and **fraternity** amongst Africans towards independence. It encouraged and created consciousness and awareness amongst Africans about the evils of colonialism. Pan –Africanists such as William Du Bois and Marcus Garvey as well as Kwame Nkrumah held different Pan-African congresses. The most successful congress was the fifth (5^{th}) conference, which took place on 15^{th} October 1945 in Manchester famously known as the Manchester Pan-African Congress. The congress was attended by young African students who were pursuing their studies abroad, for example Dr. Nandi Azikiwe (Nigeria), Kwame Nkrumah (Ghana), Jomo Kenyatta (Kenya), Peter Abrahams (South Africa), Kamuzu Banda (Malawi) attended the congress; the main agenda of the conference was decolonization of Africa, they initiated various political movements while others formed political parties which led their countries to independence for example Dr. Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana formed CPP (Convection Peoples' Party) which led Ghana to independence on Sunday 6^{th} March in 1957, Jomo Kenyatta joined KAU later KANU which led Kenya to independence in 1963.

4. **The role played By the Former USSR (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.** This goes as far as soon after the Russian Revolution, which took place in 1917. It was a socialist nation and that it opposed all forms of colonialism and exploitation. Thus it declared that it would practically support both morally and practically all that nationalistic movements in Africa and the world at large. Furthermore, soon after the end of the Second World War (WW II) in 1945 the USSR as the leading socialist nation in the world by then, supported African liberation movements. It is historically believed that the war of liberation in Angola and Mozambique were fundamentally supported by the former USSR

5. The Role Played By the United States (Us)

The US emerged as the leading capitalist nation in the world. It became both politically and economically strong. It applied/used its "open door policy" to support decolonization, thus it championed the decolonization process in Africa in order to spread capitalist ideology in Africa, after the war the US emerged

as the strongest power economically. It used that opportunity through the Marshall Plan of 1947 to extend loans to all European nations whose economies had been badly destroyed by the WW II. One of the conditions for such countries to acquire (get) the loans was that they should grant their colonies independence first.

6. The Role Played By the British Labor Party.

This took over power in 1945. Its socialist policies were against colonialism; its activities, opinions, campaigns and anti-colonial attitudes greatly encouraged nationalism in Africa for example the labor party favored Ugandan struggle in Uganda.

7. **The contribution from the Non-Aligned Movement (Nam) and the Bandung Conference of 1955.** The Bandung conference was attended by Egypt, Libya and Ethiopia from Africa. The conference emphasized on solidarity and black consciousness amongst the colonized countries.

NB: NAM was/is the organization, which was formed in the early 1961whose members were under colonialism mostly from Asia, Latin America and Africa. It is known as non-aligned movement since it did not align to either socialist block, which was led by USSR, or the capitalist block, which was led by the US. NAM championed decolonization in all countries from Asia, Africa and Latin America in the struggle for independence.

8. The role played by the United Nations by then UNO.

The UNO was established on 24th October in 1945 with its headquarters in New York. It replaced the League of Nations. The charter of the UNO was against colonialism and all forms of colonial exploitation thus the UNO through its charter, condemned colonialism. To effect this, the UNO through its trusteeship council was established which acted as the guardian vested with power to coordinate the decolonization of African, Asia and Latin American countries.

9. The Contribution of the independence of India and Pakistan.

The independence of the two Asian countries in the late 1940 has awakened African nations towards the spirit of nationalism and the struggle for independence. The independence of these countries further raised African consciousness, awareness and patriotism towards struggle for independence under the argument that “if it was possible in Indian and Pakistan why it shouldn’t be impossible in Africa?”

INTERNAL FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF MASS NATIONALISM

1. **Intensive colonial exploitation in Africa**

Was the first and foremost factor for the rise of African nationalism. After establishing colonial economies in Africa, the colonialists introduced different mechanisms of exploitation in Africa; for example, they used the hated colonial institutions or apparatus such as the colonial police, SILABU and the court to force African laborers to work in the colonial mines and plantations i.e. forced labor.

Furthermore, the colonial states introduced **forced land alienation**, **corporal punishment, heavy taxation** and **low wages** amongst Africans something which created grievances amongst the majority marginalized Africans against the colonialists, hence the African waged the struggle against the evils of colonialism.

2. **The role played by the African elites.**

The role of the educated Africans who firstly received colonial education was of paramount importance. The colonial education that they received during colonialism became the tool and a good 7weapon to end colonialism such elites include (d) the first President of Kenya (Jomo Kenyatta), President of Tanganyika (Mwalimu Julius K. Nyerere), the first President of Ghana (Dr. Kwame Nkrumah), the first President of Zimbabwe (Robert Gabriel Mugabe), the first President of South Africa under majority rule (Nelson Mandela) and many others just to mention a few. These educated elites played a fundamental role of educating Africans of the evils of colonialism and that they mobilized their fellows towards forming political parties which at the end of the day led their respective countries to independence.

3. **The role played by social welfare associations.**

Africans established these associations in order to end poor working conditions, discrimination and colonial exploitation general. These welfare and social associations mobilized colonial workers in industries, mines and plantations to go on strikes/boycotts against the colonial exploitation, thus these social and welfare associations created awareness and consciousness amongst colonial workers, examples of these included.

- In East Africa, there was the **Kikuyu Central Association in Kenya**, **the Young Kavirondo in Kenya under Harry Thuku, the Railway African Association in Tanganyika, the Tanganyika Territory Civil Service Association (TTCSA) under Martin Kayamba** as its founder.
- In Central Africa, there were the **Mombera Native Association in Nyasa Land,** industrial and commerce union in Southern Rhodesia.
- In West Africa there were, the **People's Union** which was formed in 1908 in Lagos Nigeria, the Anti-Slavery and Aborigines Protection Society with its main branches in Nigeria and Ghana (Gold coast)

4. **The role played by the independent church movements in Africa.**

These were the autonomous free and independent churches formed by Africans to challenge the European church leadership and their teachings. However, the independent churches did not only preach religious issues but also they addressed social, political and economic exploitation by the colonialists to Africans. These churches were also against the European missionaries, white masters and colonial government officials who were basically the agents of imperialism.

Examples of these independent church movements include (d)

a. **The Watch Tower Church Movement** which operated mainly in Malawi from 1906

b. **The African National Church and church of God in Tanganyika**

c. **The Kikuyu Orthodox Church in Kenya**

By and large, these independent church movements created and implanted the spirit of oneness, unity and solidarity, awareness and encouragement amongst Africans

5. **The role played by peasant cooperatives.** Peasant cooperatives and organizations, which were established by farmers in order to fight for good and fair prices for their farms, produce. These included

   a. Kilimanjaro Native cooperative union (KNCU)

   b. Usambara Native growers, The Bukoba cooperative union

6. The independence of Ghana on 6th March 1957.

Ghana became the first African British colony to dismantle the colonial chains under the charismatic leadership of the late Kwame Nkrumah. The independence of Ghana became the point of reference to many African states, which were still under colonialism. It created awareness, consciousness and courage to the rest of African states, which were still under colonialism. To affect this, Ghana under Kwame Nkrumah led the liberation of other African states something, which steered very African nationalism.

7. Italo – Ethiopian crisis or conflict

Up to the mind 1930's, Ethiopia was one of the African states which did not fall under the chains of colonialism, the attempt to establish colonial domination by the Italians was militarily crushed in 1896 at the **battle of Adowa.** The conflict raised strong emotion throughout Africa, Asia and other black people in Diaspora. Many African states drew lessons from Ethiopia hence marked the highest time for Africans to wage mass nationalism.

8. **The played by political parties** There were different political parties formed in Africa these includes TANU in Tanganyika, ANC in Kenya, KANU in Kenya and CCP in Ghana. These political parties contributed to the rise of nationalism in Africa simply because they specified evils of colonialism to its members they also resisted colonial exploitation openly

9. **The played by colonial social infrastructures** also played a big role in facilitating the spread and the rise of African nationalism that's why some historian do say that colonialism sown a seed of its own destruction, infrastructures like railways roads facilitated the nationalistic activities in rural and urban centers by spreading the massage of liberations in all parts of Africa.

10. **The played by mass media especially newspaper** played a big role in spreading awareness among the population in both rural and urban areas such newspaper included Sauti ya TAA in Tanganyika The pilot and the comet in Nigeria.

11. **Formation of segregated African schools,** after realizing that the missionary and colonial schools taught

nothing but European based syllabus some African societies began their own schools, like among the kikuyu in Kenya Africans were taught African syllabus .this helped in educating Africans and developing the spirit of nationalism.

FORMS OF DECOLONISATION PROCESS IN AFRICA

African states employed or waged different means in the struggle for independence. The methods employed/used/waged depended of course on the nature of the colonial economy which was practiced in the colony, for example almost all African colonies which were settler colonies regained their freedom through the barrel of gun because the settlers had had invested much in the respective colonies thus they were not willing to grant them independence. The common forms of struggles were:

1. Constitutional/peaceful means

In this method, the colonies used peaceful means such as negotiation, dialogues diplomacy while demanding for their freedom. Most of the colonies, which attained their freedom through this means, were under the UNO Trusteeship council. The respective nationalistic leaders went almost annually to the UNO Trusteeship council to plead for the freedom of their countries examples of the African countries which regained their freedom through constitutional means are/were Ghana (1957), Tanganyika (1961) etc.

2. Armed struggle/guerilla warfare barrel of gun/bloodshed

This was the means employed by some African states to liberate themselves. Most of these were the ones in which settlers had invested much and that they were not willing to leave for it was like committing an economic suicide examples of African states which regained their freedom through this means were Kenya (1963), Zimbabwe (1980), Congo (1960), Angola (1975) etc.

3. Combinational means

It was a blend of both constitutional and armed struggle. Some countries embarked on this method following the failure of the peaceful means. A par excellence example is South Africa which embarked on armed struggle soon after the March 21st 1960 Sharpeville massacre. The ANC leaders being led by Oliver Thambo and Nelson Mandela formed the fighting wing (Ukhomto we sizwe). (The spear of the Nation) which led liberation movement.

4. Revolutionary means

A revolution is a complete overthrow of the existing system of governance by a group, which is subjected to it and is being mistreated, exploited, and discriminated; oppressed etc. a par excellence example of a colony, which waged this means for its liberation, is Zanzibar undertook holistic revolution on Sunday 12th January in 1964. The revolution, which completely overthrew, the Jamshid Abdullah Sultanate regime

THE CONTRIBUTION OF SOCIAL AND WELFARE ASSOCIATIONS IN THE DECOLONISATION PROCESS IN AFRICA

The social and welfare associations were very instrumental in the process of decolonization for they occupied the notable position in raising people's (Africans) awareness and consciousness such social and welfare associations included. The young Kavirondo welfare association, The Kikuyu social and workers' associations just to mentioned a few.

ROLES

1. The social welfare associations performed their tasks as trade unions whereby demanded good working and living conditions for workers as well as better salaries or wages

2. The social and welfare associations played a great role of providing political education to African communities in form of political meetings (rallies) by educating them of the evils of colonialism such as taxation, forced labor, land alienation and so forth.

3. Some social welfare associations organized protests and demonstrations against the colonial authorities. They also mobilized their members to raise funds to meet various financial needs; for example, the Kikuyu central association raised fund and sent Jomo Kenyatta to London to present their grievances to the colonial government

4. Some welfare associations in Africa published journals which acted as a communication channel for reaching out their supporters

5. Some social welfare associations awakened their members on the injustices of colonialism, for example, Ukambani in Kenya, demonstrations were called because of the increased awareness.

6. Some welfares' infrastructure such as offices, came to be used by the nationalist leaders for example in Tanganyika most of the TAA (Tanganyika African Association (1929) come to be used by TANU (Tanganyika African National Union (1954)

7. They also raised Africans awareness and that implanting the spirit of consciousness and courage in them (Africans)

QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the strengths weakness and contribution of protest and religious movements during the struggle for independence.
2. Explain the roles and problems experienced by social welfare associations during the struggle for independence

THE PROBLEMS, WHICH FACED WELFARE ASSOCIATIONS

1. Lack of enough funds

2. Colonial suppression. For example, most of their members were arrested e.g., Jomo Kenyatta was arrested.

3. Imprisonment and assassination of their members.

4. Banning of associations e.g. the Kikuyu central association were banning

5. Inadequate infrastructure for example office

6. Disunity among members (lack of unity among members) e.g. Harry Thuku

7. Illiteracy amongst members. Some of the members were not educated they did not know about their right so it was difficult to mobilize them to struggle for independence.

THE ROLES OF INDEPENDENT CHURCH MOVEMENTS IN THE DECOLONISATION PROCESS

The African religious movement was one of the major movements that prevailed in the early 20th c amongst Africans. This either took the form of indigenous protest movements or inform of meetings and teachings.

The Independent churches which had broken away from white missionary churches. The breaking away of Africans from various western missionary churches to independent churches was an expression of a protest against colonial domination in Africa. The independent African church movements were against all evils of colonialism. They broke away from the missionary churches having realized that the white men's churches did not intend to civilize Africans nor to spread Christianity in Africa but to smoothen Africans to accept colonialism. They broke away from the missionary churches having realized that the white men's churches did not intend to civilize Africans or to spread Christianity in Africa but to soften Africans to accept colonialism.

The independent African churches had the following features in common

1. They were led by Africans
2. They were against some aspects of the Western culture
3. They emphasized on in calculating the African culture
4. They worked hand in hand with the African political associations
5. They broke away from Western churches

ROLES

1. They established their own independent schools in which the African children were taught their culture as well as the evils of colonialism, later on, those students who received the education in those schools became political activists.
2. They taught Africans that the missionaries were the mere agents of colonialism and not fully evangelical as they preached.
3. The religious movements and churches instructed Africans not to pay tax. The protests and religious movements increased the level of consciousness amongst Africans.
4. They counter-attacked the colonial exploitation and domination.
5. They became a center through which various African nationalistic meetings were held to reach various plans.
6. They stimulated moral and courage toward fighting for national independence. For instance, the national church of Nigeria and Cameroon said prayers for Africans to free themselves from imperialism.
7. Through these movements, the message of freedom was easily conveyed to the people. This is because during church services Africans were emphasized to hate colonial affairs in their areas.
8. They emphasized unity for all Africans to fight for their rights. In this case, Africans became so strong in fighting against European exploitation, discrimination and oppression.
9. They provided a good forum through which the Africans expressed their strong ideas and feelings, which were against the evils of colonialism and European Christianity.

Generally, It can be concluded that, independence church movement played great role in the struggle against colonialism in Africa. As through these movements, Africans became active and prepared up to fight against colonialism and all its manifestation.

PROBLEMS, WHICH FACED INDEPENDENT CHURCHES MOVEMENTS

a. Conflicts amongst the church leaders, every one demanded leadership position so brought conflict amongst themselves.

b. Lack of enough trained professionals; most of them were not well trained.

c. Poor managerial skills; they were disorganized

d. Financial problem, they depended on the little amount of money from their churches

e. Betrayal/renegade

STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN GHANA

Ghana, a British colony, was originally called the Gold Coast. It was the first African colony South of Sahara to regain her independence. It regained her independence on 6th March 1957 from the British under the abled leadership of its first President the late Kwame Nkrumah (1909-1972) with his nationalistic political party CPP (Convention People's Party)

Kwame Nkrumah was the first elite to get colonial education and he was the strongest believer of Pan-Africanism. He employed different methods to demand for the independence of Ghana through constitutional means, for instance the use of boycotts and peaceful demonstrations following the CPP action against the colonial government in Ghana, Dr. Kwame Nkrumah was imprisoned in 1950. In 1951, elections were held in absence of Kwame Nkrumah but the CPP won 33 seats against the GGCC, which won 3 seats. Dr. Nkrumah was later released from prison to form a government after his Party's landslide victory. Therefore, in 1952 then he became the Gold Coast Prime Minister. As time went on the CPP's popularity grew-in the 1956 elections the CPP won 71 seats against thirty-three (33) seats of the opposition parties. On **March 6, Wednesday 1957,** the Gold Coast became independent taking the name of the ancient empire "Ghana".

In July 1960 Ghana became a republic, which Dr. Kwame Nkrumah became the full executive President and chief of all armed forces.

WHY WAS GHANA THE FIRST COUNTRY TO REGAIN HER INDEPENDENCE FROM THE BRITISH IN 1957/MARCH 6?

1. **Good strong and charismatic leadership of the late Dr. Kwame Nkrumah.** He was educated and very influential politician of the 20th c in Africa. He was able to form the nationalist political party CPP in 1949 which led Ghana to independence.

2. Good and clear policies and slogans of the CPP party which were well understood by all Ghanaians for example the most popular CPP slogan were "**seek first the political kingdom and all things will be added into to it, self governance now and independence now"**

3. Ghana did not suffer much from the **problem of tribalism and ethnicity** as opposed to other African colonies. The presence of few settlers in Ghana made it possible for it to regain its independence earlier than any African colony.

4. The presence of **few settlers in Ghana made it possible for it to regain** its independence earlier than any African colony.

5. The role played by the **ex-soldiers** in Ghana

The Gold coast was amongst many African colonies that recruited and supplied soldiers who fought for the

colonial administration during the first and the Second World Wars. The ex-soldiers were promised good jobs and other amenities once they returned from the wars. Unfortunately, due to high inflation, which was caused by the WW II, and I the colonial authorities failed to offer the ex-soldiers sufficient pensions and other benefits that they had promised them earlier. These unfulfilled promises led to riots

As a result, the ex-soldiers used the experience and exposure they had acquired during the war to organize and mobilize people to join the CPP towards the struggle for independence.

6. **The CPP got great support from cocoa growers (farmers and peasants)** who subscribed material support such as funds to engineer the struggle in Ghana.

7. **Ghana was considerably a small country geographically,** besides it had good transport and communication system, which linked people together.

8. **The role played by English language, which united Ghanaians together.** Through this language, it was easy for the people to use this language to understand policy documents and slogans easily.

9. **The role-played by newspapers for example the presence of the Accra Evening news.** Nationalist leaders and writers wrote different articles in it to government through this, newspaper the CPP messages, policies and slogans reached the majority poor.

THE INFLUENCE OF GHANA TO AFRICAN NATIONALISM

By its virtue of being the first colony south of Sahara to dismantle the chains of colonialism, the first President of the independent Ghana, the late Dr. Kwame Nkrumah uttered. ***"The independence of Ghana would be meaningless if the rest of Africa remained in the shackles of colonialism."***

To affect this, Ghana championed the decolonization of other African colonies

1. He (Nkrumah) embraced up the Pan-African movement and conferences. In April 1958, leaders and political activists from Egypt, Ethiopia, Morocco, Tunisia and Ghana met in Accra-Ghana. This conference had agenda on how best the decolonization process could take place. It laid down methods and tactics to be employed in the liberation process.

2. Ghana campaigned for the invitation of the countries, which were still under colonialism as they were given methods and plans as to how to paralyze (end) colonialism in their respective countries.

3. He (Nkrumah) championed the formation of the Organization of African Unity, which both materially and morally supported the decolonization process in Africa. Ghana under Nkrumah pled other African countries, which were independent by 1960's to form the OAU decolonization committee, which could work hand in hand with the UNO – Trusteeship council to end colonialism. The Nkrumah's dream came into a good fruition on 25th May 1963 when the OAU was officially founded with its headquarters in Addis Ababa-Ethiopia

4. Dr. Kwame Nkrumah and his independent Ghana provided financial and inspirited morally to continue with the decolonization process in countries like Nyasa land (Malawi) and Zaire

5. Ghana under Nkrumah, established an ideological college in Accra named after his name, which was responsible in teaching Ghanaians and other African teenagers the socialist Ideology and the struggle for independence. Many African leaders attended the training for example Robert Gabriel Mugabe attended the training where he harnessed a well of knowledge and skills on how best to struggle for the independence of Zimbabwe.

6. Ghana under Kwame Nkrumah strengthened Pan – African movement which opposed colonialism. In April 1958 all independent states like Libya, Ethiopia, Egypt, Morocco, and Tunisia were invited to meet in Accra. In 1960 there was another meeting in which the countries laid down plans which could be used to help other countries get their independence.

7. Ghana became a model to other African countries to emulate (cope). This made many African countries to go for vigorous campaign against colonialism and get sovereignty like that of Ghana.
8. It laid a foundation for other African conferences for stance in November 1959 the Cairo conference was led and proposed by Ghana.
9. Ghana became the headquarters of ant colonial groups of Africa following her independence all issues pertaining independence in Africa were discussed in Accra Ghana.
10. Ghana under Kwame Nkrumah strengthened Pan – African movement which opposed colonialism. In April 1958 all independent states like Libya, Ethiopia, Egypt, Morocco, and Tunisia were invited to meet in Accra. In 1960 there was another meeting in which the countries laid down plans which could be used to help other countries get their independence.

THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN TANGANYIKA

Tanganyika was once a German colony and a British colony at different times. It regained its independence on **Sunday at 12:00 am on 9th December in 1961** under the abled leadership of its first Prime Minister the late Mwalimu Julius Kambarage Nyerere with his party the TANU (Tanganyika African National Union)

THE MAIN OBJECTIVES OF THE TANU

It was founded on seventh of July in 1954 replacing the T.A.A (Tanganyika African Association). It had the following objectives;

1. To prepare the people of Tanganyika for self-governance and independence.
2. To dismantle tribalism and ethnicity which were great enemies to unity and the struggle for freedom as a nation.
3. To struggle for a democratic government and to have representatives in local district and the central government.
4. To encourage and sensitize workers to join trade and cooperative unions which could be the right forum for them to air out their grievances such as land alienation, taxation, poor working conditions together with low wages against colonialism.
5. To cooperate with other nationalistic political parties in other African countries towards the struggle for independence. For example, The T.A.N.U under the leadership of the late Mwalimu Julius Kambarage. Nyerere cooperated fully with the A.N.C (the African National congress) in South Africa to end apartheid policy in 1994.

Question: Why did Tanganyika regain her independence earlier than Uganda and Kenya?
Question: Assess the social, economical and political developments in Tanganyika, which made it the first East African colony to regain independence

REASONS, WHICH MADE TANGANYIKA TO ATTAIN HER INDEPENDENCE EARLIER THAN KENYA AND UGANDA

1. **Good and charismatic leadership of the Late Mwalimu Julius Kambarage Nyerere,** he was able to organize and structure the T.A.N.U from a mere welfare oriented to as a strong nationalistic party which led Tanganyika to independence, he used to travel almost annually to the UNO trusteeship council to plead for the independence of Tanganyika.

2. **Good, clear and understandable policies of the T.A.N.U, which were easily, understood by both literate and illiterate Tanganyikans both in rural and urban areas.** Examples of the T.A.N.U slogans and policies are/were: **UHURU NA KAZI, TANU YAJENGA NCHI and UHURU NA UMOJA.**

3. **The role-played by Kiswahili language as a lingua franca, it acted as a unifying factor;** it was spoken throughout the country. It became the corner stone which spread the T.A.N. U's policies and slogans.
4. **The absence of strong tribalism and ethnicity** unlike Uganda and Kenya where ethnicity acted as a great barrier towards the struggle.

5. **Tanganyika had no many settlers as opposed say to Kenya which was dominated by many settlers,** thus in Tanganyika, there were like European antagonism against Africans.

6. **Tanganyika was a mandate territory, which was administered by the British as a trusteeship on behalf of the League of Nations, and later the U.N.O,** Thus Tanganyika was the trusteeship territory being prepared ready for independence. Such status hurried the nationalists' campaigns for the independence of Tanganyika through the U.N.O forum; as a result, the British did not intensify their control because it was under protectorate. Thus, Mwalimu Nyerere used to travel almost annually to the U.N.O trusteeship council to plead for the independence of Tanganyika simply because it was a protectorate territory. For example, Nyerere stated in his independence address to the United Nations General Assembly on 14th December in 1961, that ***"Because Tanganyika was a Trust Territory under British administration, this was a great help in my work to achieve independence for the country, namely peacefully and through nonviolent methods".***

7. **The role played by newspapers such as SAUTI YA TANU**
   The educated people spread the TANU's policies and slogans through these newspapers, they wrote several articles on the newspapers emphasizing the need for the Tanganyikans to govern them; such messages awakened Tanganyika's towards the struggle for the freedom.

8. **Support from the last British Governor to Tanganyika that is Sir Richard Turnbull.**
   Sir Richard Turnbull became the best friend to Mwalimu Nyerere; he from time to time supported Mwalimu in his struggle for freedom that is why historians argue that the appointment of Sir Richard Turnbull in 1958 to be the Governor in Tanganyika facilitated the movement towards the struggle. He did not want Tanganyika to experience what happened in Kenya during the **MAUMAU uprisings** and when the state of emergence was declared. He thus gave great support to the TANU leaders because he did not want another **MAUMAU** in Tanganyika his support made Tanganyika achieve its independence earlier than the rest East African countries.

9. **The role-played by the T.A.N.U. youth league** which was composed of young energetic people who spread the TANU's policies and slogans to its supporters throughout the country. E.g. Christopher Mtikila and Willibrod Slaa and others.

10. **The role played by women in the T.A.N. U's politics made it popular thus; it gained** much support from the public. They played an important role in mobilizing the masses to support the TANU. They gave vigor and color to the TANU's public rallies and demonstrations. A notable example of these women was **Bibi**

Titi Mohamed, Vicky Nsilo Swai, and **Lucy Lameck** just to mention a few.

PROBLEMS FACED TANGANYIKA DURING THE NATIONALISTIC STRUGGLE

Sample question NECTA 2017. (Explain six problems faced nationalistic struggle in Tanzania).

INTROCUCTION: Independence is the state of a society to be free and be able to make its own decisions in its affairs without being interfered by any external pressure. An independent nation is also said to be a sovereign state. Tanganyika attained her full political independence in 1961, December 9th with the last British governor sir Richard Tumbull and the late Mwl. Julius Nyerere who was the prime minister and became the first president of Tanganyika.

However, in 1964 it united with Zanzibar to form Tanzania. Independence in Tanganyika was successful achieved under TANU (Tanganyika national unity) was a political party leadered by Mwl. Nyerere. There is no easy walk to freedom; it faced various challenges such as discussed below.

Lack of adequate funds to organize and run the activities. During the 1960s still many people under the colonial rule was extremely poor and depended on wages from colonial economy, so was the party even its leader Nyerere was a mere teacher thus the lack of funds made them to lack their accessibility to run the party activities and visit many places and hence slaved the walk to freedom. They also lacked transport fees and wages to activists.

They faced strong opposition from colonial government as they were not allowed to speak in clouds or meet to discuss issues concerning with independence. Some of the independence activists were assassinated, jailed while some were exiled. This was purposely to safeguard the colonial interest particularly trade.

Lack of unity among the people, some people saw the freedom fighters as troublemakers thus; they discouraged and weakened the freedom fighters by high criticism. Most of these people were those enjoyed the fruits of colonial era particularly Arab Swahilis also some people joined other parties and thus many political parties divided many people to different ideologies.

Vastness of the country this was one of challenges that hindered early achieving the independence of Tanganyika. It has about hundreds kilometers squares of land. Travelling to all places to meet the people and organize them to struggle for independence was a very tough challenge. Some places were very remote and others surrounded by physical barriers such as lakes and mountains just to mention few.

Poor transport facilities was primarily caused by poor advancement of technology in the sectors of infrastructure. There were impossible roads, seasonal roads and defective trains as major means for transport. In some areas, there were very dense wild animated forest and high dangerous mounts that passed as a barrier to transport vehicle like cars. This in turn slaved (limited) down the nationalists' activists to excel well.

Strong opposition from other opposition political parties such as AMNUT (All Muslim National Union of Tanganyika) and ANC (African National Congress) posed a very strong opposition to freedom fighters during their struggle to attain independence thus they supported the colonial government. Good example is cited in 1958 where Zuberi Mtemvu formed ANC (African Nationalist Congress) which went against TANU's policies. In this scenario, the move to attain independence was indeed minimized.

Generally, it may be concluded that despite tireless attempts posed by the people in Tanganyika, in the course of time they achieved for their independence in 1961 Mwalimu Julius Kambarage Nyerere spearheading the nation and immediately after the attainment of their political independence it united with Zanzibar to for the current Tanzania.

REVOLUTIONARY MEANS

A CASE OF ZANZIBAR

A revolution is a complete overthrow of an existing government or a way of life in any country or state by those who were previously subjected to it. OR. Revolution is a discontented reaction through violence exercised by the majority of the country's population ignored to gain recognition or reform when local and moderate means of political or social fail. Examples of political revolutions, which had occurred in Africa, is: The Egyptian revolution led by Gamal Abdel Nasser in 1952 and the Zanzibar revolution of 1964 led by John Tito Okello from Uganda.

THE CAUSES OF DECOLONIZATION THROUGH REVOLUTION IN ZANZIBAR.

Since the establishment of Arab administration, clove and coconut plantations in Zanzibar in 1840 by Sultan Seyyid Said, Africans were regarded as slaves. This situation created hatred (hostility) between Africans against Arabs.

Zanzibar regained her independence from the British on **10th December in 1963**. However, the independence was for the minority Arabs in Zanzibar for Sultan Jamshid bin Abdullah kept on holding the reign of Zanzibar as the Sultan. Thus, it became politically independent after the victory of the ZNP and ZPPP under Mohamed Shamte as the Prime Minister. However, economically and socially, Zanzibar was under the control of the Arabs and most of the Zanzibaris were not happy with the victory of the ZNP and ZPPP. They believed that this victory was for the minority Arabs alone who were not only exploiting them but also subjecting them to severe humiliation.

Thus, Zanzibaris believed that peaceful methods could not bring complete independence to all citizens. As a result, they prepared for a revolution from Saturday night at **8: 14p.m on 11th January 1964** and **by 11:30 am Saturday on 11th January 1964** Sultan Jamshid bin Abdullah and his officials had fled from Zanzibar hence complete revolution which made Zanzibar free from Sultanate exploitation, humiliation and racialism in Zanzibar. In addition, on 12th January in 1964, the Revolutionary Council of Zanzibar was established and the Late Sheikh Abed Amani Karume became its first President with his political Party the Afro- Shirazi Party (ASP). The ASP was founded on Tuesday 5th February in 1957 after the coalition of the African Association (AA) and the Shirazi Association (SA)

THE MAIN CAUSES OF THE ZANZIBAR REVOLUTION

1. **Zanzibaris were deprived of political rights** i.e. Political exploitation by the rulers that denied the Zanzibaris the right to vote were, a voter could vote if he was able to speak, read and write in Kiswahili /Arabic or English; A voter had to be a Zanzibar resident and had lived in his/her constituency for at least one year; A voter had to be a government employee for at least five years or possesses a

certificate for medal of good performance; A voter had to be above 25 years. Such qualifications limited the majority of Zanzibaris the right to vote. Hence, they continued to be victims of severe exploitation and oppression on their own land. However, Zanzibaris did not calm down; they sought the revolution as a means of setting them free.

2. **Land alienation in Zanzibar.** The Zanzibaris had no right to own land. Arabs who grew coconuts and cloves in the island occupied all fertile land. Zanzibaris were only recruited as labourers while remained poor peasants. This led to the revolution in Zanzibar.

3. **Monopolization of trade by foreigners.** Asians of Indo-Pakistan origin controlled the commercial life of Zanzibar. The Asians were mainly Arabs and Indians who controlled the commercial sector in Zanzibar while the majority of Zanzibaris had nothing to own; furthermore, they from time to time set high prices for goods and services, as a result, the poor Zanzibaris could not afford something, which created grievances and hostility between the Zanzibaris against the Arabs in Zanzibar.

4. **The question of taxation:** The government of Zanzibar under Sultan Jamshid bin Abdullah introduced various forms of taxes that Africans (Zanzibaris) had to pay. Furthermore, the taxes were high such that the majority poor who were mainly the Zanzibaris failed to pay, thus they developed economic grievances against the sultanate regime in Zanzibar something, which precipitated the Zanzibar revolution of January 1964.

5. **The role played by John Okello:** He was a man from northern Uganda who settled in Zanzibar in 1952 and worked as a painter; additionally, he had attained revolutionary training in Cuba. He was an official of the A.S.P. (Afro-Shirazi Party) in Pemba Island. He developed a belief as early as 1961's of involving himself in a revolutionary army to overthrow the sultanate regime in Zanzibar. Okello was a man of determination, a skilled technician who was endowed with organizational capabilities. He acted as an instrumental and logical organizer (mastermind) of the revolution.

6. **The fall in of the clove price in the world market created many problems in Zanzibar.** The government under Sultan Jamshid Bin Abdullah reduced government expenditures on social services like health care, education, a measure, which led to social sufferings, and unemployment in Zanzibar, the people of Zanzibar came together as one people to overthrow the Sultan from power hence, Zanzibar revolution.

EFFECTS OF THE ZANZIBAR REVOLUTION

1. The immediate effect of the revolution was that Sultan **Jamshid Bin Abdullah left the island of Zanzibar for Britain with his state officials** something, which granted Zanzibar its full independence following the holy revolution. Thus, Zanzibar became a revolutionary independent country on 12th January 1964 and Sheikh Abeid Amani Karume became its first President.

2. **Social stratification was dismantled soon after the revolution;** stratification such as religious differences, races and status were well checked by the new government under Karume.

3. **Zanzibar revolution facilitated the establishment of the union of Tanganyika and Zanzibar on 26th April 1964,** the idea which came into effect on Friday 22nd April 1964 when the two heads of the states signed the articles of the Union.
4. **Zanzibar revolution gave Zanzibar an international recognition as a sovereign state** and that she became a member of both the United Nations Organization and Commonwealth of Nations.

5. **It led to nationalization of all major means of production such as land, roads, commercial companies and banks which were previously owned by the few Arabs, Indians who were basically rich.** After the nationalization, they were taken and owned by the new independent revolutionary government on behalf of the public. Furthermore, the land, which was owned by minority rich Arabs and Indians, was as squarely and properly re-distributed amongst the majority of Zanzibaris.
6. **Zanzibar revolution guaranteed all Zanzibaris their political rights** which they were denied before as from time to time started holding periodic elections.

THE UNION BETWEEN ZANZIBAR AND TANGANYIKA.

Sample question. Necta 2009 (Private Candidates)

Explain the historical significance for the Union between Tanganyika and Zanzibar in 1964. OR
What were the reasons behind for the 1964 Union between Tanganyika and Zanzibar? OR
The amalgamation between Tanganyika and Zanzibar was a historical phenomenon. Discuss.

Introduction. The Union between Zanzibar and Tanganyika was an incidence in which the leaders of these countries joined together to have one country (Tanzania). J.K Nyerere of Tanganyika and Abeid Aman Karume of Zanzibar did this. It was formed from 26th April 1964 where the members (leaders) agreed to share among other things like defense, police, state of emergence and external affairs. However the reasons behind the Union can be grouped into internal and external factors in a sense that there were some forces within and that from outside Africans, these can be well explained as follows:-

a) Due to the rule played by Pan- Africanism in a since that panafricanism had for a long period been motivating all Africans to unite in order that they can fight for colonial injustices, oppression and exploitation in that case Nyerere and Karume being inspired with this idea of Pan – Africanism, they decided to be the first African countries unite.

b) Due to the influence of western countries like USA, British and France. This is because the countries regarded Zanzibar as Cuba because she bought the idea of communism which was a danger to the western Brock to be free from communism spread they decided to pressurize the president of Tanganyika to find the way out by conversing Abeid Aman Karume to Unite

c) Besides the spread of communism also Nyerere and Karume had a very long historical friend ship in a sense that Nyerere influenced the formation of ASP and Zanzibar Revolution thus to cement their friendship Union became to be very important.

d) On the other hand, there was internal opposition within Zanzibar after the revolution done by a group of radicals who in a sense spread opposed and challenged Karume as Karume became unsecured it later precipitated for the Union in order to contain over these radicals.

e) Likewise TANU and ASP as major political parties in this two countries had a very close relationship due to the fact that they all had common interests to unite Africans since ZAA and TAA in Zanzibar and Tanganyika respectively in this case the Union would further their close tie they had.

f) Proximity / closeness of the two countries played significant role to the Union simply because Zanzibar and Tanganyika geographically are too closer and it is said that the distance from Dar-es-Salaam to Unguja is shorter than the distance from Unguja to Pemba this significant that that people used to leave regular contact in trading activities, therefore Union to them was not a now thing.

g) Zanzibar and Tanganyika experienced same colonialism because they were all under British rule being

under the same rule; they experienced the same burden and administration this eventually made them to unite together so that they can keep on adopting same experience they had.

h) Other reasons that drove out for the Union between these countries were close relationship that the people of Tanganyika and Zanzibar had this are because most of the people in Zanzibar came from Tanganyika as Arabs took them during the slave trade. Thus the Union would help people of these countries to enjoy much with former brothers and sisters whom they separated each other.

Generally, *It should be put in mind that the Union between Zanzibar and Tanganyika brought much benefits to the people concerned because people are free to move from one place to another they also share many aspects such as social, political and even economic matters through to some extent there are many changes resulting from such Union to the extent that other members decide even to pull out from the Union.*

ARMED STRUGGLE /BARREL OF GUN /BLOOD SHED

Most of the African countries, which were massively dominated by settlers, regained their independence by armed struggle. A good number of these countries adopted this means following the failure of peaceful means. The presence of many settlers was one of the most crucial factors, which determined the nature of the struggle. Examples of the African colonies, which waged armed struggle as a means of liberating themselves, were **Mozambique, Zimbabwe,** and **Kenya**

A CASE OF ZIMBABWE

Zimbabwe was a settler-dominated colony and many of its people were divided in leadership. Zimbabwe was under the British colonialism. It became independent on **Friday 18th April in 1980** under the leadership of its first Prime Minister and President Mr. Robert Gabriel Mugabe who is still the incumbent President with his nationalistic political party ZANU – PF (Zimbabwean African National Union-Patriotic Front. Zimbabwe was formerly known as Southern Rhodesia. Being dominated by settler elements and racial policies carried out by the colonial state, the settlers never agreed to; any attempt at self-governance was encountered by strong opposition as a result political parties were banned and most of their leaders were imprisoned like Joshua Nkomo.

To make matters worse, on Thursday 11th November in 1965, Ian Smith's regime declared the Unilateral Declaration for Independence (UDI) independence from Britain. The independence was consolidated in 1970 by the negotiation made between settlers and smith's regime and the British. In these negotiations, the minority regime promised that African minority rule would be reached in 2035

WHY ARMED STRUGGLE IN SOUTHERN RHODESIA (ZIMBABWE)?

1. **Heavy investments in Zimbabwe by settlers.** From the so very beginning, the British settlers who engaged themselves in large-scale agriculture and in mining activities dominated Zimbabwe. Hence, the settlers were not ready to sacrifice their investments so easily thus, they were not ready to leave and that they did not want to grant independence to Southern Rhodesia for they were to stay. This facilitated the armed struggle.

2. **The constitution, which was adopted in 1922 October.** This constitution gave special power to the white minority (settlers) who from time to time and place to place suppressed Zimbabweans political autonomy. In this constitution, the settlers granted a responsible government. This made Southern Rhodesia a self-governing colony. Thus, it had its own parliament, army, and police force. This measure gave the settlers a lot of power they thus used their newly won power to consolidate themselves

against the Africans.

3. **Settlers' exploitation to Zimbabweans:** the settlers exploited Zimbabweans through forced labor, land alienation, low wages and so on. This is due to the undoubted fact that the Zimbabweans have had many social and economic grievances, which were practiced by the settlers. This precipitated armed struggle in Zimbabwe.

4. **Banning of political parties and imprisonment of radical political leaders intensified the choice of armed struggle as a means towards liberation in Southern Rhodesia.** The banning of the ZANU-PF and imprisonment of leaders like Joshua Nkomo did not bring to an end the consciousness and need of Zimbabweans towards independence. The ZANU-PF continued with its liberation at this time operating from Mozambique, where its leaders received much support from the Soviet Union id est. USSR.

5. **Zimbabweans were not politically united towards the demand for freedom.** The freedom fighters were divided amongst themselves that is why they were many political parties such as the U.N.C, D.P, ZANU, and ZAPU. All these political parties had no cooperation and that each party had its own mission. Due to this division, the white settlers in Zimbabwe (Southern Rhodesia) were able to introduce their puppets and policies to suppress the Zimbabweans without much resistance, this made the prominent nationalistic leaders such as Joshua Nkomo and Robert Gabriel Mugabe to wage/employ armed struggle to erode this puppet.

6. **Tribalism shown by Shona and Ndebele led the colonialists to foresee the occurrence of civil and tribal wars** if independence was granted without keen examination/assessment, hence, they delayed the granting of the majority rule in Zimbabwe under the fake excuse/pretext that they could enter into civil wars. A move that precipitated armed struggle in Zimbabwe.

7. At first ZANU as a nationalistic party had not attained much support from Zimbabweans for the puppets from other political parties such as the ZAPU implanted propaganda amongst the Zimbabweans that ZANU was an imperialistic and not a nationalistic political party. This propaganda made ZANU leaders to wage armed struggle as a means of proving to the Zimbabweans that it was not the imperialistic party as argued before.

8. **Lack of representatives in the legislative council.** Zimbabweans were not included in the legislative council and hence Zimbabweans hated this and used guns to fight for their freedom.

THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN KENYA

Kenya is/was one of the British East African colonies to regain its independence via armed struggle. The Mau Mau movement was the movement relying on nationalist and violence as the last resort (attempt) for attaining Kenya's independence from the British. It began following the banning of the Kenyan African Union (K.A.U) as a result, from 1945 – 1952, the movement engaged in guerilla warfare in the Mau Mau mountains and Aberdare forest with its aim of attaining majority rule by pressuring the colonial government; most of its members were the ex-servicemen, ex-soldiers, wage laborers, extremist groups etc. the struggle for independence did not end until 12th December 1963 when the KANU led Kenya to independence under the abled leadership of Jomo Kenyatta.

WHY ARMED STRUGGLE IN KENYA?

1. The first and foremost reason for the armed struggle in Kenya is that Kenya was a settler colony;

settlers flew to Kenya by 1900's where they established settler farms. The white settlers in Kenya regarded Kenya as a crown colony and that they were there to stay. They invested heavily in manufacturing and processing industries, and in transport and communication networks; this made them reluctant to grant Kenyans their freedom peacefully something which necessitated the application (use) of the barrel of the gun in the struggle for independence.

2. The influence from the ex-soldiers who fought wholeheartedly in the second world war (WWII) (1939 - 1945) it is estimated that more than 75,000 Kenyans fought on the side of Britain in the Kings' African rifles; the white soldiers who fought in the war were well enumerated, they were given loans with dear interests, on contrary the lives of the Kenyan soldiers became worse than when they left for the war, thus developed grievances against the colonial government in Kenya and that they joined the nationalistic movements in Kenya in their attempt to wipe away colonialism. A par excellence example was the logical and strategically organizer of the Mau Mau movements in Kenya who went by the names Dedan Kimath.

3. Intensive colonial exploitation in Kenya precipitated the armed struggle for the colonial government intensified land alienation especially in the Kikuyu high lands, which were fertile, furthermore, the colonial government introduced notorious taxation in Kenya. For example, the MATITI TAX was introduced and the Kipande system which increased exploitation in Kenya. Eventually Kenyans made up their minds and started armed struggle against the colonial government.

4. Banning of political parties and the imprisonment of radical political leaders intensified armed struggle in Kenya in the protest against the colonial government move of banning political activities in Kenya. For example, (KAU) i.e. Kenyan African Union was banned in 1952. The logical and strategically organizer of MAUMAU movements in Kenya, General Dedan Kimath was arrested on 21st October 1956; he was detained and secretly assassinated by the colonial government officials. All these precipitated and intensified armed struggle in Kenya.

5. Denial of basic human rights such as freedom of speech and the right of Kenyans to join in assemblies and associations.

6. Injustices; settlers were favored and were basically provided with better transport facilities, communication services and other indispensable social amenities such as better health care, education and of course security. On the other end of spectrum, Kenyans who were basically the majority in Kenya had no access to such facilities. The inequalities in these prompted Kenyans to take up arms and fight for their right whence armed struggle.

7. Kenyans were disturbed by the white's strict and brutal supervision of the government schemes. It is historically believed that the colonial government officials in different colonial government supervised corporal punishment to those who did not constantly supply their labor power in the schemes. All these intensified Kenyans' grievances and hatred against the colonial government hence armed struggle.

8. A desire to maintain African dignity. The colonialists despised their culture (Africans) to make matters worse; they abused and despised the educated Africans. Exempli gratia, Governor Philip Mitchell described educated people like Jomo Kenyatta as resembling twelve years old children.

In a nutshell, Kenya eventually got her independence in l963 under the leadership of Jomo Kenyatta of KANU, becoming the last country in East Africa to get her independence. KANU provided a country with

the ruling group of great ability. Within a year of independence, the opposition party KADU had gone into voluntary dissolution, its members deciding either to retire from politics or to join the ruling ranks.

However, it proved impossible to maintain the structure of one party-state. In O1966 Odinga Odinga after Kenyatta, the most powerful politician broke with his old associate and formed a new political party the Kenya peoples' union. He opposed Kikuyu domination in the politics, him being Luo many his followers were his tribesmen. He also opposed KANU ideological approach of handling the Kenyan problems. He favored the radical approach.

In sharp contrast to situation in Tanzania the Kenyan government policy had encouraged the growth of a class of local capitalists whose new acquired wealthy contrasted sharply with the poverty of the high growing unemployed urban population. That was-the starting point of Kenyan income inequality.

THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN MOZAMBIQUE.

Mozambique, like any other African countries began the struggle for justice in the late 1920's. In 1962, a group of exiled Mozambicans met in Dar-es-salaam and merged their parties to form one political party called the **FRELIMO (Frente de Libertacao de Mozambique)** i.e. Front for the liberation of Mozambique under their leader Eduardo Mondlane. After the unification of **UDENAMO, MANU and UNAMI**, the new party FRELIMO settled for two (2) years to properly organize it. Most of the nationalistic movements such as organization, mobilization and the training were done in Dar-es-salaam and the nearby region to Mozambique i.e. Mtwara in Tanzania despite being banned by the colonial government, by 1964. The **FRELIMO** had succeeded in setting up training camps inside Mozambique. By 1968, the **FRELIMO** had had controlled a reasonable area in Mozambique. In the same year, the party managed to hold the second congress party inside Mozambique. As a result, on Monday **3rd February in 1969** the party leader Eduardo Mondlane was assassinated by a parcel bomb while in Dar-es-salaam where the party's headquarters were temporarily located after following the banning of political parties in Mozambique.

GENERAL FACTORS FOR ARMED STRUGGLE IN PORTUGUESE COLONIES.

Portugal had three colonies in Africa which included; Angola, Guinea Bissau and Cape Verde, and Mozambique. These countries attained their independence late as compared to other African countries; the Portuguese government was therefore determined not to give independence to these nations because were seen as vital props to the Portuguese economy. It should however be noted that, the Portuguese had stayed in the colonies for about 50 years even before the Berlin Conference of 1884 – 1885 more especially along the coastal area, later occupied and colonized the interior parts.

Also the Africans in the Portuguese colonies were equally determined to win their independence thus prolonged guerrilla struggle began throughout the Portuguese colonies the lead was taken by a smallest colony of Guinea Bissau and Cape Verde, led by Amilcar Cabral, he founded the (P.I.G.C) Portido Africano, da independence da Guinea Cabo Verde in 1956 but He was assassinated in January 1976 only two years after the independence of 1974.

In Angola Agustino Netto led guerrilla struggle against the Portuguese after founding M.P.L.A (Movemento popular de libertagao de Angola) in December 1956 in Luanda among the working class, and were able to get their independence in 1975. Eduardo Mondlane led the struggle for Mozambique and his deputy Samora Machel after founding FRELIMO (Frente de Libertacao de Mozambique) found in 1962 in the capital of Tanzania Dar- es- salaam they declared war officially in September 1964.

WHY LATE INDEPENDENCE FOR PORTUGUESE COLONIES?

Sample questions, Necta 2005

1. *Why did the Portuguese colonies in Africa engage in armed struggle to liberate themselves?*

Approach:

Armed struggle refers to the technique / method adopted by African countries as a means to literate themselves especially in those colonies where colonial states were reluctant to grant independence (settler colonies). The case to Portuguese colonies in Africa like Mozambique, Guinea Bissau and Angola used armed struggle to liberate themselves because of the following:-

a) Poor/weak economic base of Portugal. She was the poorest country among the colonialists, she had not Under gone industrial revolution, therefore she regarded the heavily depended on her colonies for economic prosperity at home that is why she was very reluctant at granting independence to her colonies, which she viewed like committing economic suicide.

b) The Portugal colonial policy Portugal regarded her colonies as overseas provinces since Portugal was a small nation, she was very interested to acquiring more oversea land whereby they could stay forever and obtains raw materials exploit market for their goods and settlement of surplus population.

c) Settlers opposed the granting of independence to the Africans because of heavy investment in the colonies. The numbers of settlers were in big in numbers in many Portuguese colonies with high investment in agriculture and other economic ventures in the colonies. They therefore feared economic losses once the black majority takes over power.

d) The Portuguese exploited the Africa maximally as to support their economy in the metro pole such as, imposed harsh taxes like dog, tax poll tax, this was great economically to them that is why they hesitated to grant independence to the African early like other European nation.

e) Land alienation .All African fertile land was taken and known as crown land, it was confiscated for the construction of infrastructures, establishment of colonial economies establishment of white plantation, and this was too precious to them to give independence to the African easily.

f) Mass illiteracy. Many Portuguese were illiterate and hence conservative and ignorant of what was taking place outside world .Other European nations had changed their way of exploitation to neo-colonialism. Since Portuguese were short sighted, they never dreamt of granting independence to their colonies soon, such situation prompted the use of armed struggle for the African as a means to get their independence.

g) Furthermore, burning of political parties in the colonies this event made African nationalistic decide to have their centers in other independent African countries like Tanzania so as to mobilize their military struggle.

h) Portugal was a fascist state by natures, with no democracy. This was because through their dictatorial leadership of Salazar Africans were in turn oppressed, exploited as well as humiliated, this was followed due to the fact that, Portuguese believed to have ever lasting civilizing mission to Africans.

i) Due to wrong concept the Portuguese had to Africans of under estimating the strength of the colonial subjects (Africans) in their nationalist demands and struggles she expected that being a NATO member her subjects would always be suppressed and ruled forever, this wrong concept made Africans to be angry over it.

Generally *with all attempts made by Africans through their political parties such as FRELIMO in Mozambique, UNITA and MPLA in Angola and PAIGC in Guinea Bissau, Portuguese colonies eventually managed to attain their independence, this is because Guinea Bissau got its independence in 1974, whereas Angola and Mozambique in 1975 attained their independence.*

NATIONALISM IN SOUTH AFRICA.

South Africa being a settler colony, which was colonized by both Boers from Holland/Netherlands and the British at, different times, regained its majority rule via both peaceful and armed struggle means. This is due to the very naked fact that South Africa had suffered much from the "**Apartheid policy**" which separated the majority blacks from the minority whites in South Africa.

The first African nationalist political organization formed in South Africa was the South African Native National Congress (SANNC) in 1912. However, 13years later, the S.A.N.N.C changed its name into the African National Congress (A.N.C); i.e. in 1935. By the early 1940's the party (A.N.C) received young educated radicals like Walter Sithulu, Antony Lembele, Oliver Thambo and Nelson Madiba Mandela. These new men formed the strongest A.N.C Youth League.

In 1955, the A.N.C organized a congress, which produced the freedom charter. The charter declared that South Africa belonged to all races. Due to this declaration by the A.N.C, the government arrested the A.N.C leaders charging them with treason (kesi ya uhaini). By 1961, all of them were released. In 1959, Robert Sobukwe walked out of the A.N.C and formed Pan African Congress (P.A.C) under the pretext that the A.N.C leaders were too reluctant to employ armed struggle against the Apartheid policy in South Africa. However, on 21st March 1960 both the P.AC and A.N.C supporters made peaceful demonstrations against the Boers' government as far as the pass laws were concerned. It is historically recorded that 69 black African people were bitterly shot to death and wounding 180 by the police in Sharpeville where the demonstrations were held, thus termed as **SHARPEVILLE MASSACRE**

By and large, Apartheid is Afrikaans word, which means "Separate according to race", thus Apartheid policy was a color separateness policy between the black majorities against the white minority in South Africa. It was a color bar between blacks and whites. It started to mushroom in 1910 when the federal government was formed in South Africa.

However, the policy was officially declared and institutionalized in South Africa by the Boer's President Dr. Malan in 1948. During the course of the Apartheid, the blacks were oppressed, degraded and discriminated in all spheres of life. They were the third class citizens in South Africa; they received the worst social amenities (services) such as health care, education and security.

THE COURSE OF THE POLICY

In 1913, the Native Land Act was passed reserving seventy-eight (78%) percent of the fertile land and best of South Africa's land to the whites, black people comprised of 70% of the population in South Africa and were given (8%) of the unproductive land. The black people were forced to stay in reserve areas called **BANTUSTANTS.**

- In 1923, the Native Urban Areas Act was passed whereby Africans' movements to urban areas where the whites settled were restricted. This armed at reducing black political activism in the towns.
- In 1927, the immorality Act was passed which prohibited interracial sexual intercourse; each race was required to marry within its own race i.e. blacks and black; whites and whites
- In 1953, the Bantu Education Act was passed whereby Africans were not allowed to be given education similar to that of the whites.
- Apartheid policy suppressed individual rights and liberty. Blacks in South Africa were deprived of (Nyimwa) freedom to association, freedom to assembly, freedom to speech, and freedom to worship. The Boers government heavily taxed the blacks and the revenue collected was used to improve social services in the whites' settlement.

Banning of political parties; blacks were not represented in the government and the parliament. Thus, the parliament and government were for the whites only. For example, on 8th April 1960 after 21st March Sharpeville massacres both the ANC and P.A.C were officially banned.

SIGNIFICANCE OF SHARPEVILLE MASSACRES

1. The Killings of more than 60 black people and many others wounded during the demonstrations awakened the need for Africans to intensify armed struggle and that the Sharpeville massacres marked the end of peaceful means towards the struggle for the majority rule in South Africa.
2. The demonstrations and strikes united the young black Africans and the adult black Africans to resist the white domination in South Africa.
3. The killings at Sharpeville precipitated an international awakening and opposition to injustices and racial segregation in South Africa. The international community became aware of what was going on in South Africa.
4. The O.A.U (Organization of African Unity) pled and persuaded the western powers not to sell firearms to the South African white racist regime.
5. The Sharpeville massacres led to the formation of the **Ukhomto we sizwe (spear of the nation)** by Nelson Mandela as a fighting wing by the A.N.C Youth.
6. In 1964, Nelson Mandela and his colleagues were detained; Mandela was sentenced to life imprisonment. The leaders who were not imprisoned such as Oliver Thambo fled into exile and tried to set up an A.N.C (wing in friendly countries like Tanzania and Zambia. For example, the A.N.C wing was established in Mazimbu -Morogoro where the A.N.C opened its branch; military trainings were carried out there, furthermore, other fighters established **RADIO FREEDOM**, which was broadcasting from Mazimbu and heard in South Africa. The radio station aired radio programs, which awakened blacks in South Africa about the evils of the white racist regime in South Africa. The programs pled black South Africans to come together as one people against **APARTHEID.**

   Despite the fact that most of the ANC leaders were in prison, the ANC kept on with the nationalistic movements in and outside South Africa. For example Steve Biko organized a massive black students' demonstrations in South Western Township (SOWETO) on 16th June 1976 in which students were protesting against the government's decision of introducing separateness policy in education where African students were required to be taught in Afrikaans language as a medium of instruction in black African schools and colleges while the white students were to be taught in foreign languages such as French, English etc. as a result, dozens of black African students were shot to death before the very

naked eyes of the police officers while others were badly maimed (injured) and many others were imprisoned where they were brutally, tortured, the day is historically commemorated on SOWETO MASSACRES, and it is celebrated on 16th June every year as agreed by the AU by then O.A.U as an **African child day.**

METHODS, WHICH WERE EMPLOYED BY THE BLACK MAJORITY IN SOUTH AFRICA TO END APARTHEID IN SOUTH AFRICA

1. Formation of political parties such as the S.A.N.N.C (1912) later the A.N.C in 1935, despite that some political parties were banned yet; they played a fundamental role in awakening blacks in South Africa about the evils of Apartheid. Furthermore, some of the political parties organized peaceful demonstrations against the Apartheid policy.

2. The use of mass peaceful demonstrations, which pled the Boers' government to grant the majority rule in South Africa. Political activists, adult and children came together demanding for the liquidation of the Apartheid policy in South Africa. For example, the 21st March 1961 famously termed as Sharpeville demonstrations against pass laws in South Africa and the 16th June 1976, which is historically, recorded as Soweto (South West Township) demonstrations. These demonstrations made the black people aware of the evils of **APARTHEID POLICY.**

3. The use of arts such as poems, novels and songs, which raised the blacks' awareness and feelings as far as the Apartheid policy, was concerned. For example, Lucky Dube launched his music album "Together as One" which mobilized the black and whites in South Africa to come together as brothers and sisters, other musicians like Bob Marley (Jamaican) and Miriam Makeba played their distinguished roles in persuading the international community to intervene what was going on in South Africa. Furthermore, novelists such as Peter Abrahams published the novel titled **Mine Boy**, which illustrates the evils that the blacks were experiencing in mines.

4. Underground organizations. The black radicals and political leaders mobilized their supporters to secretly join political parties and underground guerilla movements in order to end the racist white regime in South Africa. For example, after the formation of Ukhomto women and we sizwe (the spear of the nation) Many ANC young men joined the movement.

5. The use of mass media such as radios. For example, some A.N.C leaders who were in exile in Tanzania in collaboration with the government of the United Republic of Tanzania established **RADIO FREEDOM** which was heard in South Africa from Mazimbu – Morogoro, the radio programs which were aired mobilized the black society in South Africa to join their hands firmly against the racist regime in South Africa.

6. Religious forums for example the formation of the United Democratic Front (U.D.F) which was a coalition of about 600 organizations led by Rev. Allan Boesak and Bishop Desmond Tutu, played a significant role in ending Apartheid in South Africa.

7. The International communities put international sanctions (Vikwazo vya Kimataifa) against the South Africa's racist regime. The O.A.U pled the western capitalist countries not to sell weapons to South Africa. South Africa was also denied air-landing rights.

8. Seeking international support from friendly countries within Africa and outside Africa, e.g. Cuba. Black

Nationalist parties such as the A.N.C and P.A.C set up their bases in foreign countries. For example, the A.N.C set up its base in Dar-es- Salaam and Morogoro in Tanzania.

9. Strikes, these persuasive means and hunger strikes attracted the international community, which helped to pressurize the racist government in South Africa to grant the majority rule in South Africa.

Question:
Why was the struggle to eliminate Apartheid in South Africa difficult and prolonged?

REASONS FOR THE PROTRACTION/DELAYOF SOUTH AFRICA'S INDEPENDENCE

1. Some western countries such as the US, France and Britain which had an economic stake in South Africa supported South African racist regime. The countries had had heavily invested in mining companies and plantations for example the B.P (British Petroleum).

2. The banning of all anti-apartheid movements and organizations in South Africa for example the A.N.C and P.A.C were banned following the 1960/March/21st (Sharpeville Massacres). All these hindered the pace towards majority rule in South Africa.

3. Imprisonment and assassination of radical political leaders. For example, Steve Biko was brutally tortured before the very naked eyes of the police and secretly murdered, while other radical leaders such as the late Nelson Rohilallah Tata Madiba Holisasa Mandela, Walter Sithulu were sentenced to life imprisonment while a few others like Oliver Thambo were exiled. All these hindered and complicated the way to majority rule **"LONG WALK TO FREEDOM** by Mandela describes how the safari was long and complicated through hills and thick tribulation and triangulation.

4. South Africa was the country that was recognized by UN to be independent country from 1980. But the fact was that because both political and economic power were in the hands of whites ,worse still there was apartheid that did not able the African excess to economic power the blacks were denied democracy.

5. Lack of unity among the nationalist organization .There were many movements working independently, they included the Indian National Congress [IAC], African people organization [APO], Pan African Congress [PAC] UMSA, ANO, and Inkatha Freedom Movement. These except ANC were less radical they could not bring any impact but rather weakened the strength of the struggle.

6. **Poverty:** It made it difficult for Africans to confront whites who were both militarily and economically strong. Most of the black African were pushed in the reserves of Bantustan were economic activity were very hard the land was barren no infrastructures to facilitate the activities of the movement thus it took long to achieve their independence.

7. Lack of political unity amongst the anti-apartheid political organizations such as the A.N.C and P.A.C (was a great set back to their liberation.

8. All liberation movements like ANC and PAC were declared illegal and banned in South Africa by the apartheid regime of the white. The killing of prominent political activities like mass killing in Sharpeville and the imprisonment of Nelson Mandela also made the struggle for independence to delay.
9. Methods of struggle were weak initially, until 1960s ANC and PAC were using non violent based on Mahatma Gandhi philosophy e.g. demonstrations petition strikes and boycotts .It was until 1960 after the Sharpeville massacre that ANC formed UMKONTO WE SIZWE meaning the spear of the nation and

adopted violence.

10. The big powers of western Europe feared that an independent south Africa may fall in the hands of Russia a communist nation this was because Mozambique and Angola who era geographically near South Africa had the elements of communism opposed to the situation. Thus, the struggle lacked international support of the big capitalist countries.

11. On addition to the above, the constant indiscriminant attacks earned out by the racist white regime of South Africa destabilized the activities of national struggle of the black Africans, their major purpose was to kill the nationalists of the blacks and destroy their political parties.

12. The puppets that were implanted by the racist white regime in South Africa. The puppets betrayed their fellow freedom fighters; these were great obstacles because whatever the nationalistic leaders secretly and confidentially planned was no sooner reported than they had started implementing it.

13. The possession of Namibia by South Africa racist regime, which was used by her as naval base and harbored the American French and British military men, hindered the military wing of the nationalistic movement.

PROBLEMS, WHICH FACED THE NATIONALISTS IN AFRICA DURING THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE

1. **Banning of political parties in Africa**. The colonial governments in different colonies employed their oppressive apparatus such as colonial army, police, courts to suppress African political movements for example the TANU in Tanganyika was banned in 1955, the A.N.C was banned on 8th April 1960, FRELIMO was banned, K.A.U in Kenya was banned.

2. **Tribalism and ethnicity.** During the nationalism movements, most Africans were divided along tribal and ethnic trends e.g. In Uganda, the Buganda and Nyankole did not unite to fight against European colonialism.

3. **Illiteracy:** Many Africans during the nationalism movements were illiterate and Europeans never took trouble to educate them. Some Africans did not know how to either read or write and that it was difficult for them to perceive and understand policies of the various nationalistic political parties.

4. **Imprisonment, detention without trial, exile and assassination of radical political leaders.** For example, Eduardo Mondlane of Mozambique was assassinated by a parcel bomb in Dar es Salaam on 3rd February 1969, Steve Biko in South Africa was assassinated after the Soweto massacre in 1976, Dedan Kimath in Kenya was assassinated on 27th October 1956, and on the other hand, other nationalistic leaders were imprinted. For example, the late Nelson Mandela a distinguished political icon in Africa was sentenced to life imprisonment in the Rivonial Trial in 1964 and he was taken to Robben island prison, others like water Sithulu were imprisoned, Dr. Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana was imprisoned, Jomo Kenyatta was also imprisoned for a couple of years. In Tanganyika, Mwalimu Nyerere was charged for Treason for the first time in 1955 and was required to ether serve a six (6) months imprisonment or to pay a sum of money equivalent to the charge; he got subscription from the TANU members and paid it as a fine.

5. **Financial problems (constraints).** The economic muscles of the nationalistic political parties were too weak to sustain the costs of running their political activities and of course, most of the political parties had no any other source of income rather than the little subscription obtained from their members as secretly as possible.

6. **Religious differences.** For instance, at the time of independence in Uganda, the Catholics led by Kiwanuka did not like to be dominated by the Protestants led by Milton Obote in Nigeria northern. Muslims dominated Nigeria. Whereas the southerners were basically Christians, as a result the Muslims did not want to be dominated by the Christians, whence the religious differences in both Uganda and Nigeria did not give a well-ventilated room for them to fight against their common enemy in colonialism.

7. **Poor infrastructure such as roads physical buildings such as offices for the nationalism political parties**. Remoteness of some areas made it difficult for the nationalistic part leaders to reach their supporters and members, also lack of physical structures such as offices were a great challenge that these parties faced. For example, following the banning of political parties in Tanzania by then Tanganyika the T.A.N.U was holding its meetings secretly in private houses of their members for instance several TANU meetings were held in Abdul Sykes' house.

8. The unwillingness of the colonial power to grant independence. Some European nations came in Africa to stay forever and regarded their African colonies as oversea provinces, thus they were very reluctant to grant independence this was mostly on Portuguese colonies like Mozambique, Angola.

9. The colonial state apparatus ware very oppressive and coercive to the nationalistic movements in many Africa nations these included colonial army, police and judicially/prison which were put in place to facilitate colonial production, e.g. in 1958 Nyerere was arrested, Kenyatta was also arrested in I954, Mutesa of Buganda was exiled to Britain.

10. Also there was lack of political structures to mobilize the people to the common struggle for independence; in rural areas most of the political parties lacked branches which would have been used as centers to create awareness and mobilization of the masses most of the nationalistic activities centered in urban areas.
11. Tribalism also was a problem in for the nationalistic struggle it brought disunity and weakened the nationalistic struggle for independence. Some tribes did not participant in national struggle in steady they involved secessionist politics, e.g. Buganda in Uganda, which demanded for her separate independence at the expense of the entire nation of Uganda.
12. The low level of education also affected the struggle for independence many masses in Africa were not educated and lacked political awareness about the essence of their independence this was a big hindrance in the path of independence since most of the indigenous did not know the significance of the struggle.

END OF NATIONALISM TOPIC

WELCOME TOPIC THREE



CHANGES IN POLITICAL, SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC POLICIES IN AFRICA AFTER INDEPENDENCE

Reasons for introduction of ideological, political and administrative changes

1. To look for unity among the Africans in order to bring unity. Many African states introduced mono -party system.

2. To eliminate social problems especially poverty which was inherited after independence; when Africans lived in poverty without education, health services, water and electricity. This needed ideological changes, which require government to take responsibility of giving service to its people and reduce poverty.

3. To destroy capitalism. Ideological change insisted the need for people to work together and share the product of their work equally. 4. Administrative changes were effected in order to organize the government pots and civil service so as to provide employment to Africans hence to get money to afford basic needs.

5. Administrative changes brought true independence because it eliminated the white workers who were the product of colonial rule.

6. To address issues such as land alienation, labor, laws, taxation etc.

BACKGROUND: In 1960 many African states began to achieve their political independence which generally has been referred to as **"flag independence"** despite the fact that African got their political independence, still African remained under indirect penetration of foreign domination, politically, socially, economically and militarily. The political independence had little impact on the life style of the masses that is why it has been referred to as "ceremonial independence" or "flag independence".

- The political independence was largely characterized with political and social economic problems legacy of colonialism, i.e. the problems were inherited from the colonial economy and colonialism, such problems included mass illiteracy of the masses, poverty, tribalism, poor infrastructures etc.

- The real political legacy of colonial government in Africa was that of an alien dictatorship, benevolent at times, but always prepared to crush outspoken opposition. Many of African leaders had suffered periods of detention without trials for daring to speak out against the unjust and arbitrary nature the government.

What is flag independence?

Flag independence this refers to the type of Independence that the Africa nations attained during their struggles in 1960s 70s and 80s from their colonial masters; it was just ceremonial independence of hoisting the national flags and bringing down the colonial flags. Still African remained victims of foreign domination in all spheres of life, Political economical and socially remained dependant to their former 'colonial masters, and at times it's referred to as Neo colonialism..

FEATURES OF FLAG INDEPENDENCE

- It leads dependence syndrome whereby the country will depend largely from their former colonial masters for any development programmes.

- It leads to the rise of puppet or sycophant leaders in the government who aim at serving and appeasing the colonial masters, but not to serve the interests of their people.
  Absence of national culture and national identity, where by the foreign culture largely Influence the culture of people like education dressing and even table manners.
- The constitution was written by the experts in the colonial government and then brought in the metropolitan parliament to approve.
- Western model of politics with all ceremony and formality is followed in the territory like mult-party system democracy was to be included in the national constitution.
- Absence of real political sovereignty in the sense that most of the political polices are made by the former colonial masters there is always political interference and sabotage from foreign countries.
- Weak and small military machinery since most of the military assistance come from former colonial masters.
- During the period of self-government, the colonial administrators reserved to themselves control of strategic areas these included the armed forces, finances and international relations.

THE SITUATION OF AFRICA AT THE POINT OF INDEPENDENCE.

BACKGROUND: Most of the African states immediately after independence faced numerous problems. The problems that most African nations faced since independence have, very largely, been the product of their history. The root of many African current problems in final decades of the twenties century are to be found in the period of colonial rule of the pervious eighty years or more. That were generated and inherited from colonial rule. Some of the problems included the following.

A*) Political problems*

a) They left a highly centralized administration system whereby the central leader has got a lot of power in the state in most cases this power was vested in the traditional leaders or kings in case of British colonies, Such a system of administration has proved a failure and produced many inefficient leaders, incompetence, unnecessary bureaucracy and misdirection in administration.

b) They left limited trained African labors to carry out the administration. The majority of Africans were uneducated or totally illiterates barely 10% were educated by the time of independence in sub -Saharan Africa that

c) The military structure was organized in the way that it was not separated from the political administration that is why most of the independent African states experienced numerous coups de-tat. Where by military juntas took over the political arena

d) The colonialist planted tribalism among the Africans as to maintain disunity during colonialism, but this was inherited even in the period of post independent African, divide and rule policy was given priority. Most of the Africa nations with multi-party system political parties were based more upon the personal ethnic or regional origin of a particular politician than upon differing economic ideologies to guide the country' s future development.

e) The boundaries left by the colonialist were mostly totally artificial. They had been created at the whim of European politicians with little regard for Africa's multitude of pre-colonial nation state and stateless villages and communities, divided various ethnic groups into boundaries in other words natural African borders were abolished and artificial ones were formed. The artificial boundaries caused a problem of

'national' unity after independence.

f) They introduced foreign administration structure where by foreigners especially the whites ware involved in the running of the colony. In the post independent African state the most important sectors like finance Military and national planning remained in the hands of foreigners.

B) Economical and Social Problems

a) The colonial government let Africa with the mounting economic crisis that had been the end- product of eighty year of colonial is rule. The African economies had been directed towards exporting cheap agriculture raw materials and unprocessed minerals to Europe and in return importing relatively expensive manufactured goods, thus an economic crisis.

b) They left inadequate Social infrastructures especially transport net work schools medical centers and imbalanced regional development. The infrastructures that were left were inadequate for the continental internal development, they were virtually no regional roads or rail links between one region from another which would promote internal trade most of the railway had been developed around the turn of the century to ease the export of continent wealthy to Europe. By the time of independence, the few structures that had been built were badly in need of repair.

c) African government inherited two particularly repressive economic policies from their colonial predecessors; poll tax and agricultural marketing boards. The former was charged on all adults males regardless of their income. The latter paid fixed low prices to farmers, while selling their products for higher prices abroad keeping the difference as government revenues. Both repressive policies were retained by the post independent African nations.

d) Created of economic stratification in the society i.e. the peasants who lived in rural areas were the majority living in miserable poverty their major economic activity being agriculture which fetched low prices that made their surviving ore difficulty by the time of independence around 95% of the population depended on agriculture for survival and the petty bourgeoisie/working class who lived towns in good standard of living.

e) They left a highly dependent economy, where by the post independent African states produced raw material for their former colonial master and consumed finished goods from the metro pole. This promoted the unfavorable terms of trade that led to indebt of many post independent African nations.

f) They left Avery small industrial sector by ensuring that Africa remain de- industrialized and prepare it as potential market for European finished goods.

g) They introduced traditional cash crops in Africa, which were monoculture to become the source of foreign earner from the metro pole.
h) Created cultural dependence by distorting of African culture and establishment of foreign culture. Where by African values and culture were destroyed and de-campaigned by the colonialists. Dress language eating manners religion were adopted and inferior complex was instilled to the Africa always to despise their culture and customs This created disunity among the Africans.

PROBLEMS THAT FACED BY AFRICAN NATION AFTER INDEPENDENCE

After the attainment of independence many African countries faced with many problems, these can be

grouped as political, social and economic problems as explained here below;

i) Mass poverty many Africans are living below the international poverty line surviving on less than one dollar a day this mass poverty was caused by colonialism were by African were denied to participant in meaningful economic activities apart from providing cheap labor. However, the most important is the fall in world commodity prices for Africa principle agriculture export in the mid1960s. Manufactured imports, which Africa had depended on relatively, became more expensive poverty in post independent Africa has been also contributed much by African new political masters to do much beyond enriching themselves, ignoring the majority peasant to live abject poverty.

ii) Mass illiteracy many African are unable to read or to write this was due to inadequate educational centers provided by the colonialists, the colonial education was segregate, and it was only children of the chiefs that were given priority. By the time of independence less than 10 % of Africans were fully educated most were in rural areas where they could not get access to proper education.

iii) Tribalism and nepotism are some o the major problems that are facing the post independent African states these were sown deliberately as a move of the colonialist to favor some tribes and leave others un developed, as to divide and rule. Even some political parties were built on the lines of ethnic groupings. A politician was supported not because he possessed good national policies but because he belonged to a certain ethnic group.

iv) Lack of political administrators that has witnessed corruption misdirection of the state and incompetence of some African leaders very few African were highly educated to provide quality administrative services, most of the Africans lacked skills of administration and political will to help their people. Indeed, it has been argued that within some African countries that the educated elites in the post independent Africa era had in practice done little more than replace white colonial rulers with 'black colonial rulers!'

v) Internal disputes that generated due to various political ideologies that made African nations to go to internal wars this was especially socialism vs. capitalism. Most African nations begun to abandon capitalism and multi-partism system of administration they went on one party state as to bring national unity. But this led to the suppression of opposition, detention dictatorship that accelerated civil conflict in the states

vi) The colonialist did not consider boundary disputes, the natural boundaries when partitioning Africa this generated disputes afterwards. The artificial of national boundaries caused serious problems of National unity after independence. Various tribes were divided by colonial bounders e.g. Luo in Kenya and Tanzania the Haya in Uganda and Tanzania.

vii) Lack of enough social infrastructures the colonialists constructed very few social infrastructures to serve colonial production, according to their needs in places where there was no colonial production ware ignored.

viii) Foreign interference in internal affairs, the post independent African nations have not been free or independent as its always portrayed, former colonial masters have always influenced the state especially through Neo colonialism were by the former colonial master always tend to influence the political arena economic and social aspect of African nations.

ix) Foreign debt from outside especially European nations this has been acquired especially from World bank and IMF with high interest rates, that makes it impossible to be paid back and to service it.

x) Military coup d' c-tat this was because the military was not separated from the political system many African states experienced military rule. Most of the French speaking countries apart from Senegal Guinea and Cote' d'ivoire, went over to military rule during the 1 960s. Togo and Dahomey (renamed Benin in 1974) suffered frequent military coups and counter-coups. From November 1965 coup followed coup with frightening regularity taking Nigeria and Ghana in early 1966. By the early I 970s military rule had became a serious Africa political option.
It remained the most frequent means for change of government through the 1970s and 1980s.

xi) Corruption has become very rampant in many post independent African states especially south of the Sahara, the political leaders like, government ministers, some civil servants and other branches of minority-educated elite are becoming increasingly wealthier. Through corruption, like embezzlement of public funds, office abuse, bribes misusing of public funds etc.
The income gap between the rural based poor and the urban civil servants is increasing day by day in the post independent African states.

xii) Lack of political awareness and sensitization due to mass illiteracy among the masses tend not to know their political rights and responsibility. They have been vulnerable to political manipulation and abuse due to their ignorance of political responsibility.

xiii) Existence of diseases like Malaria, which kills 2 out of 5 infants and aids, has proved a problem to the post independent African nations. Many post independent African nations have failed to come out with political and social solution to the menace

xiv) Lack of strong economic base agriculture has been dominant as the major economic activity, but their yield has been always very low and price fluctuation is too much. Since colonialism, African economies were directed towards exporting primary goods, which fetched low prices and based on imported finished European goods that were costly to purchase.

xv) Natural calamities like floods volcano eruption famine storms epidemics etc. These natural calamities are partly blamed on poor planning and lack of foresighted political leaders accompanied with political will to serve the masses

xvi) Religious differences it brought disunity and internal disputes like in Nigeria and Sudan Muslims fight Christians and many are killed in such crushes.

SAMPLE QUESTION

1. *The inherited problems from the colonial past are hindrances to the development of African societies after the independence. (Necta 2015 Qn. 10).*
2. *Analyze six problems facing African countries that originated from their colonial heritage. (Necta, 2012, Qno. 8).*

SOLUTIONS OF THE PROBLEMS FACED BY POST INDEPENDENT AFRICAN STATES.

a) To alleviate poverty in Africa can be solved by, increasing income for every family/home. This can be solved by increasing employment opportunities to the masses as to increase their purchasing power, by providing free and subsidized necessities to reduce the expenditure of the masses, which may include medical, school fees, and food.

b) To create a government of democracy and transparency whereby corruption can be checked and lavish government expenditure should be checked and be stopped.

c) Equal distribution of national cake by stopping nepotism whereby it's only few people of one tribe or one region that dominate the government and enjoy sweet jobs, equal representation should be in place to all regions and tribes in the government jobs.

d) To elect capable leaders who are patriotic and able to care for their people, with good economic plans for development of the people.

e) To provide basic education and technical education to the masses so as they can solve the problem of unemployment and engage into serious economic ventures/business. This calls for revising national syllabus, which trains job seekers instead of job Creators.

f) Get rid of neo-colonialism and develop an independent self-sustaining economy, which would help to solve the problem of Africa without foreign intervention.

g) To diversify our economy from agricultural based to be both industrial and agricultural as to create link between these two major sectors .What we produce can be used as raw materials in industries and industrial product can be purchase/consume by the agricultural sector. This will increase the market base and solve the problem of poverty.

h) To promote national unity among the masses through one party system so as to avoid many party systems that may bring divisions among the masses, and also national languages should be promoted as to forge unity of the people:

i) Introduction of national education that is based on the environment of Africa and needs as to avoid the colonial education that produce white collar job seekers instead of job creators, this definitely will solve the problem of mass unemployment.

FACTORS (REASONS) THAT HINDERED POLITICAL UNITY IN AFRICA

Since independence nationalistic leaders (heads of states) of post independent African countries such as late JK. Nyerere, Kwame Nkrumah, Nandi Azikiwe, Jomo Kenyatta etc tried their best to bring political unity but there were factors which hindered political unity in Africa to date as follows.
1. **The effects of colonial legacy and influence of capitalist**. Africa countries failed to build political unity because since before and after independence capitalist countries disunited and divided Africans so as to rule them easily; or capitalist countries divided African countries so as to rule them easily during colonial period and after independence.

2. **Different political ideologies.** Ideologies of African countries are not the same due to the effect of colonial rule for example some countries in Africa apply capitalist ideology including Kenya while others socialist ideology hence hinder political unity.

3. **Different political priorities;** African countries after independence to date do not have the same social, political or economic priorities because each country faced different challenges, for example Tanganyika priority were fighting against poverty, ignorance , disease, bring development etc.

4. **Timing of attainment of independence.** African countries attained their independence differently.

Most government achieved their independence in 1960's, 1980's, as result fail to share one agenda of building political unity.

5. **Poverty;** Many African countries still experienced poor economy depended from external donors as result fail to unite.

6. **Political instability**; politically many Africans countries are not stable due to poor political systems, leaderships etc hence hinder after political unity.

7. **Civil wars**. There were no peace and harmony to many African countries since government and civilians act one another hence failure of political unity.

8. **Tribalism;** tribalism in most of Africans countries was still a problem because Africans separated themselves basing on tribal differences.

9. **Religious conflict.** In some of African countries, there were religious conflicts between Muslims against Christians hence hindered political unity example Nigeria Boko haram, in Somalia sasa weed, Somalia.

10. **Dictatorship of leaders in government**. Since African leaders and government do not exercise democracy, do corrupt, and do not observe rule of law and good governance hence hinder political unity for e.g. Liberia, Zimbabwe, Sudan, and Somalia etc.

11. **Poor communication and infrastructure**. Many Africans countries had no good link and interaction of communication due to poor infrastructures such food road, railways, ports harbors etc. hence hinder political unity.

12. **Borders conflicts.**

POLITICAL CHANGES IN AFRICA

This was introduction of new political systems that could govern the newly independent countries.

There were so many political changes but the following were the main ones. These were;

1. *Introduction of single party system 2. Military rule/government*

DEVELOPMENT OF ONE (SINGLE) PARTY SYSTEM. [MONO PARTY]

BACKGROUND*:* During the struggle for independence, many African states had developed multiparty politics as a system to prepare them for independence; it was encouraged by the colonial masters as their pass for independence. E.g. in Tanganyika there was T.A.A and T.A.N.U. in Uganda they were U.P.C, D.P, and K.Y. However, from 1960-1970s many African states begun to reject multi-party parliamentary system as unworkable.

They pleaded the particular circumstances of their country's crying to unite in order to achieve rapid national development in social and economic. By the late 1 980s only Botswana with its low population of one million people had maintained unbroken record of multi- party democracy since independence. Nevertheless, almost all post independent African states had switched to one part system.

FACTORS FOR ONE (SINGLE) PARTY SYSTEM AFTER INDEPENDENCE.

- To promote unity and solidarity among the Africans under one party system after having been disunited on political lines by the colonialist, e.g. C.C.M in Tanzania, U.P.C in Uganda K.A.N.U in Kenya emerged as single party. The argument in favor of one party system was that parliamentary opposition based on multi party democracy bases upon ethnic regional interest was destructive rather than constructive

opposition.

- It was introduced to eliminate political parties that showed interest to protect colonialism during the struggles for independence e.g. U.T.P in Tanganyika allied with British leaders feared that such parties would overthrow the government of newly independent nation.
- To avoid civil wars among Africans since they were politically inexperienced immediately after independence and multi-party politics was viewed as a tool to divide the masses basing on their ethnic origin that in the long run may result into civil conflicts, where by every tribe or region struggling to dominant political power. For example in Rwanda and Burundi were the ethnic Tutsi fight ethnic Hutu to control political power.
- Greedy for power among few African leaders who wanted to rule for many years without being taken out of the post by political party.
- To avoid imperialist influence on local politics, through passing in other political opposition parties. Multi -party politics also was avoided as one of the method for not allowing foreign influence into local politics especially the former colonial power who still wanted to control their former colonies through third party.
- To eradicate poverty, ignorance, and diseases this can be well dealt with less than one party system, thus promoting national development by avoiding useless political rivalry of multi-party politics.
- To promote good governance by checking on corruption .and misallocation of public funds, in some one-party states such as Tanzania and Zambia, election showed that unpopular government ministers could indeed be voted out of office. However, the awful lot depended upon the political integrity of the party leader and his ability to control the enthusiasm of local party member. However, in some states one party system led to abuse of state power like in Malawi, Uganda.

WEAKNESS OF THE SINGLE PARTY SYSTEM.

1. Encouraged authoritarianism due to lack of competition in politics i.e. only few people in the country dominate decision making without allowing any critics.

2. Lack of enough checks and balance on government and so encouraging management and corruption.

3 Led to abuse of power.

4. Suppress diversity of opinion, which endangers development.

DECLINE OF SINGLE PARTY SYSTEM IN AFRICA

QUESTION: By the early 1990's single party system in Africa was replaced by multiparty system, why?

REASONS FOR THE FALL OF MONO-PARTY SYSTEM.

I. People opposed the system of mono-party, which worked against democracy and human, rights e.g. Right to vote, right of expression and association.

2. The collapse of U.S.S.R (United Soviet Socialist Republic) in 1980's. The system could not get support from this super power any longer.

3. Donor countries such as USA, British, and Germany did not support the system.

4. Economic decline in most countries with single party system in 1970s and 1980s.
5. The rise of USA as a sole super power.

POST INDEPENDENT MILITARY COUP D'ÉTAT IN AFRICAN CONTINENT.

BACKGROUND: Coup d'état refers to the sudden military overthrow of civilian government by armed force. The post independent African countries were dominated by military regimes, which were witnessed by military coups, especially in 1960s up to 1970s.

The first military coup was in Egypt in 1952, this marked the beginning of other coups in Sudan 1958, 1969, 1971, and later in 1980, in Zaire 1960 whereby Lumumba was overthrown by Kassa Vumbi, in Togo 1963, in Nigeria, more than five military coups were conducted, in Algeria in 1971, in Uganda 1971, etc.

FACTORS FOR THE COUP D'ÉTAT IMMEDIATELY AFTER INDEPENDENCE.

a) Failure of the civilian government to bring development after independence, coup d'état was always seen as the .only means of overthrowing an incompetent or unpopular leaders it made the military men to become frustrated and overthrow the government most of the post independent African leaders were puppet leaders that tended to serve the interest of imperialist and themselves, this made the military to over throw the civilian government.

b) Secondly, the cause of coups in the post independent Africa was that the army inherited at independence had generally and originally been found as part of the process of initial colonial period had generally been held in reserves for internal use against potential rebellious subject rather than for defense of the country against potential hostile neighbors. At independence they had little initial role to play beyond being part of trappings of an independent nation state.

c) Rigging of election by civilian government also prompted the military intervention to take over the government e.g. in Nigeria the widespread that election of 1964-5 had been rigged finally destroyed the credibility of civilian government that led to the military first coup in Nigeria in January1966

d) The influence of cold war between capitalism and socialism .Many governments, which advocated one ideology, the opposition, prepared a coup to replace it with either bloc U.S.A capitalism or Communism of Russia.
e) Corruption and nepotism made the military government to overthrow the civilian government. In 1 960s military coups were reactions against inefficient and corrupt civilian regimes, the military were known for being well disciplined and usually free from corruption, thus won a lot of support from the masses, and e.g. Milton Obote in Uganda who promoted nepotism with corrupt leaders was eventually overthrown by Iddi Amin Dada in 1971.

f) Colonial policy of divide and rule, which encouraged differences among ethnic groups, the colonial government, left fragmented society, which was very difficult to satisfy, this created political struggle among various ethnic groups.
g) Involving military in politics, most of post independent African nations failed to separate politics and military as it had been made by the colonialists' .This involvement of the military men into politics led to the overthrow of the civilian government.

h) Regional imbalance and tribalism E.g. in Nigeria, Uganda, this was brought by colonialism whereby

military men came from labor zones which- were undeveloped, thus the overthrow of the civilian government. In Uganda, the northern part was dominated in the army, in Burundi it is only the Tutsi who dominate the army such situations prepared for a military coup.

i) Suppression of opposition .Many post independent African states suppressed political parties and begun one party system which many people viewed as a dictatorship, this paved way for military coups e.g. In Nigeria the civilian government of 1979-83 demonstrated freedom of speech freedom of the press but within few years personal greedy suppression of the opposition lavish government spending, were all welcomed by the coup of 1983 as to restore moral authority and discipline in the public.
j) Mass illiteracy .After independence many African had not attained the basic education thus they were very easy to be manipulated by any political opportunities

k) The rise of African elite politicians who had studied in Europe with little experience about African situation, thus after assuming power they failed to change the political, economical and social life style of the masses which made many masses to lose confidence in them and supported military regimes e.g. the February coup in Ghana in 1966 which led to the over throw of Nkrumah who was accused of spending most of his energies into being an international statesman while ignoring his own country mounting problems which led to cut off military defense budget and the government intervention of day to day military affairs.

l) Vicious (brutal) poverty in Africa after independence many African governments failed to meet the standard of living for the army. Many military men were paid less and lived in miserable conditions. Poor living conditions they shared a single room with the family the general welfare was declining every another day. This made them very annoyed and tried to overthrow the government as a solution to solve the problem.

m) The bag of African problems most of which generated from colonialism, colonialism emphasized separateness, and fragmented. This has retarded the force of solving common problems of African unity, and instead promoted military over throws of civilian government

WHY MULT-PARTY SYSTEM IN 1990?

BACKGROUND: It should be remembered that during independence many African states began multiparty system, which did not last for so long after the attainment of independence where by one party system was adopted especially in 1960s andl97Os. However, in 1990s, one party system began to collapse especially after the fall of Soviet Union, which was the socialist bloc, and then many African nations began to adept multiparty system. E.g. in Tanganyika 1995 there was multiparty election, Kenya in 1992, some of the reasons for multiparty politics was internally motivated while others were externally motivated as we can expand below;

a) Collapse of U.S.S.R in early 1990s, the leading communist state which used to offer both ideological and material assistance to those countries that followed communist ideology, which called for the formation of one party system known as vanguard party or workers party.

b) The influence of the leading capitalist nations of Europe and U.S.A, also influenced the African nations to adopt multiparty system if there to be given aid from IMF and World Bank which USA had strong influence.

c) The influence U.N. under her international organization of I.M.F and World Bank, which persuaded the African Nations to change from mono-party to multi-party system.

d) The influence of mass media especially the international mass media like B.B.C, C.N.N etc which criticized one party system as a dictatorship of socialism .This made many countries especially in Africa to change their system.
e) Changes in national ideology. Many African countries adopted multiparty system after crossing from socialism to capitalism, which calls for many party systems, as their national ideology.

f) Integration of European Union. In 1956 the integration of European Union also had an impact to the African countries to adopt multiparty system as to get assistance from members of European Union.
g) Failure of one party system to bring development contributed to the rise of many party politics, to check on corruption, nepotism, egoism, and dictatorship.

h) Increase of elites who had acquired their education in western European nations. During 1990 the elite' people in Africa increased in number and begun to criticize the one party system, as type of dictatorship of socialism.

i) More commonly one party politics led to an abuse of state power. In countries such as Nkrumah Ghana Banda's Malawi and most of the former French colonies, the one party was used to give the ruling party dictatorial powers in suppressing any criticisms of the government thus it became more and more unpopular among the masses especially the educated elite.

POST INDEPENDENT POLITICAL INSTABILITIES IN AFRICA.

INTRODUCTION: Political instability is a situation where by a country is currently going through political turmoil. It may also involve the death of people within that country and in many cases the country detoriates in terms of its economic progress. The post independent African states were dominated with political problems that led upheavals like civil wars. The major causes of these of political instabilities were;

- The rise of dictators to power like Iddi Amin Dada in Uganda, Haile Sellasie in Ethiopia Kamuzu Banda in Malawi, forced people to use force as means to overthrow them, thus rise of civil wars.

- Tribalism, regionalism, and religious differences, e.g. in Nigeria Muslim v/s Christians, in Uganda the central region v/s the northern part, in Burundi Tutsi v/s Hutu, all these promoted instability and civil wars.
- Weak economic base /poverty .This has been the root cause of civil wars and instability in Africa. Many Africans have turned against their government accusing them to segregate them from sharing the national cake.
- Existence of military Regimes like in Nigeria under San Abacha, in Uganda under Idd Amin. Such military regimes encouraged terror and violence that lead to political instability as their technique to continue clinging in power.

- Colonial boundaries and inter regional conflict e.g. in Kenya and Somalia, Ethiopia and Eritrea, Cameroon and Nigeria, Uganda and Tanzania these boundaries were established by the colonialists, But now they have promoted political instability in the regions.

- Corruption, Nepotism and lack of transparency in public offices, among the political leaders of Africa after independence, which have led to embezzlement of public funds and uneven distribution of national resources. Some people are segregated from the national cake, this make them to fight against the domination.

- Violating human rights, like freedom of speech, freedom of marriage, freedom of movement, freedom of expression heavy punishment, arbitrary arrest, extra judicial killings, etc.

- Lack of able political and patriotic administrator, who are forecasted leader who could organize Africans to achieve development. Most of the leaders after independence in Africa were puppets that were planted by colonialist for their own interest.

EFFECTS OF POLITICAL INSTABILITY IN AFRICA.

a) It promoted national disunity among the masses, basing on tribal lines and regional basis e.g. in Rwanda Burundi the Tutsi and the Hutu are highly divided basing on ethical background.

b) Civil wars caused misery, death, and destruction of properties e.g. in Angola, Sudan Uganda and Rwanda among others million of civilians have been internally displaced living in refugee camps were their subjected to all sorts of suffering and misery, while others were killed in the course of war.

c) It discourages economic development whereby governments spend a lot of money and time to suppress the insurgency or rebels this may be done at the expense of other social development, lack of social development like infrastructure and other social overheads may perpetuate the poverty syndrome in many countries of Africa that faced civil wars.

d) Occurrence of coup d'état as a result of dissatisfaction among the disgruntled people and this may increase more political tension among the masses which may increase the suffering and misery among the people e.g. in Uganda 1971 where Iddi Amin took over the government that made even foreign forces to intervene.

e) It leads to the outbreak of diseases like small pox, malaria, aids since little tension is given to healthy sector such diseases happen to increase in numbers in Southern Sudan as much as the war claimed many lives of innocent women and children also diseases have claimed a significant number of children and women in the war zone etc.

f) It leads to internal displacement of people from places of war to safe places this lead to the discouragement, of agriculture and other economic activities, this may bring famine, and malnutrition related diseases.

g) It brought foreign intervention into national affairs e.g. United nations may intervene European Union or USA, and this is very dangerous at times where by some times such power may not have interest to help or to solve the conflict but rather to increase it for their own national interest e.g. to guarantee market for weapons like in Angola and Southern Sudan were civil wars have taken more than 20 years.

MEASURES/ CHANGES AND PRIORITY OF POST (NEO) INDEPENDENCE AFRICAN STATES.

(i) Post independent African states (countries) inherited (forced) different social, political and economic problems/ challenges from colonial government.

(ii) Therefore, after independence African countries focused on solving social problems, which African had, due to colonial legacy by setting up new priorities and changes in their social, political and economic systems, which suit Africans. There were the changes;

(iii) Changes of political legacy of colonial rule. After independence post independent African states changed brutal military political systems, which adopted by colonialist by emphasized (advocated) on Portia monetary democracy.

(iv) Maintaining Sovereignty and security, post-independent African states after independence they created a new system of sovereignty to avoid disintegration of people and maintain peace and security of the state.

(v) Building national unity, post independence African countries priorities was to build national unity among its people who were divided by colonialists based on ethnicity (tribes) language and religion difference.

(vi) Fight against Tribalism; post independence African countries put also a pressure of eradicating any forms of tribalism, which was created by colonialist who favored one tribe and made it superior than the other.

(vii) Fight against regionalization; Post independent African countries also focused on removing uneven development in the same region in the countries because colonialist left some part of the country more developed and having good social service and infrastructure than the other e.g. in northern was much developed than southern.

(viii) Eradication (removal) of poverty; these was most priority of most independent African countries because after independence many African countries were poor as a result all were focused on improving their economies e.g. improving Agriculture, industries etc.

(ix) To improve peoples' and national economy; post independent African countries encouraged their people to involve and improve agriculture production so as to improve their economies and national economies, for e.g. in Tanzania agriculture become a backbone of national economy.

PROBLEMS HINDERING DEVELOPMENT IN AFRICA AFTER INDEPENDENCE.

The following were the factors that led to changes in economic development policies and strategies

(i) Economically, Africans were exploited during colonialism and the independent governments wanted to address this situation by giving equal job opportunities to their people.

(ii) Some cash crops were prohibited to grow by the Europeans. For example, cash crops like coffee and tobacco. Africans were not allowed to grow some cash crops, which were reserved for Europeans only.

(iii) African countries mainly depended on the export of mineral resources and cash crops for their foreign exchange.

(iv) Most of African countries were economically dependent on the former colonial masters especially in the area of trade with few exceptions such as Republic of Guinea.

(v) Colonialism contributed to massive regional disparities, with European areas enjoying the best developments, which the African governments also wanted to reduce. Infrastructure was well developed in European areas but not in African regions.

Strengths of the economic policies and strategies adopted since independence

The following are some of the strengths of the economic policies and strategies adopted since independence.

(i) The African public was trained so that they could take part in development. Some Africans public servants in various fields.

(ii) The economic strategies and policies led to the expansion of industrialization in the continent, as careful economic planning was done with a view to improving the economies.

(iii) There were improved infrastructures such as roads, railways and ports which were established in many African countries

(iv) Many socialist countries achieved some measures of economic independence in particular Tanzania under Julius K. Nyerere and Ghana under Nkrumah advocates self-sufficiency in food production v. Many African people were mobilized to participate in development for example The Ujamaa village's policies were useful in enhancing mobilization.

WEAKNESSES OF ECONOMIC STRATEGIES ADOPTED IN AFRICA SINCE INDEPENDENCE

(i) Africanization of Public positions was accompanied by corruption. This led to in efficiency, as the new public officers were not well acquainted with administrative responsibilities.

(ii) The civil servants fought against the interference with their work by politicians. For example, there were many instances where unauthorized use of fund was done for purposes of building political constituencies.

(iii) The implementation of agricultural strategies was hampered by the fact that some of the settlement schemes were established in marginal land while other were created away from infrastructure such as roads, railways.

(iv) The bureaucratic administrative machinery was mainly modeled on the institutions of the metropolis tan countries, and it was expensive to run and difficult to staff without the assistance of expatriate staff.

The following are some of the contributions of the economic strategies and policies adopted since independence

(a) Development in infrastructure was experienced, for example in Tanzania; a new railway line was established that connected the country to Zambia.

(b) Fast economic growth was realized in some countries. Agricultural production increased due to the need to produce more cash crops for export, industrial raw materials and food self-sufficiency.

(c) New industries were established, the new industries were established and also dams were opened for supplying hydroelectric power.

(d) Employment opportunities the foreign investment created more employment opportunities for the people. Especially in capitalist economies such as Kenya and Ivory coast

(e) It was easy for individuals to work hard and accumulate wealth in African countries.

CHANGES IN THE PROVISION OF SOCIAL SERVICES AFTER INDEPENDENCE

Education after independence

Objectives of Education in Africa after Independence

(a) To promote self-reliance, social justice, national unity, economic development, equity and scientific literacy.

(b) To promote African cultural values that the colonial education had neglected.

(c) African countries wanted to eradicate racialism in the education sector.

(d) Colonial education was tailored to create a structure that would perpetuate African dependency upon well- trained non- Africans thus the objectives were to eradicate dependency on the colonial masters on the all spheres of life.

Features of Education in Africa after independence

(i) Religious organizations and communities continued to sponsor and run the schools even after independence.

(ii) Local staff as most and post- secondary teaching staff were trained. Therefore, much effort was made to infuse the African values and local patterns of life to the education system.

(iii) Many Africans emphasize great effort to acquire academic education as during colonialism, Africans were usually provided with vocal training due to the prevailing racial discrimination.

(iv) University education was emphasized, given that there were fewer than one hundred Tanzanians with University degrees by 1960. After independence in 1961 University of Dar es salaam was started with a view to achieving self- sufficiency in line with the policy of socialism. In 1963, the University of Dar es salaam, Makerere University College of Nairobi were merged to form university of East Africa.

(v) After independence, African countries had to continue using colonial structure of education since they had to study how to structure their education system due to the shortage of local skilled personnel, Africans government concentrated resources on the expansion of Secondary and higher education. Enrolment in higher education in East Africa increased

Objective of Health services after Independence in Africa

(a) To expand modern health facilities for Africans citizens

(b) To increase living standard of people

(c) To reduce and remove the high infant mortality rate and high material death rate during child labor.

(d) To remove racial discrimination in the provision of health services through promoting health to citizens.

Features of Health Services after independence

(a) Through Ujamaa villages, health services were improved a large group of people were able to receive services from one centre.

(b) The 5- years development plan, (1964- 1969) Tanzania's ambitions to improve health services in rural areas which benefited many people and support for preventive rather than curative aspects of health services.

(c) The government recognized the values of medical auxiliaries after Arusha Declaration. Health services were provided free of charge due to the introduction of socialism until 1980's other agencies charged a small amount for health services.

(d) During 1970's and the 1980's Tanzania received a lot of aid towards promotion of health services. After economic crisis, progress in health care was undermined by lack of enough financial allocation. As the result, user charges were introduced in government hospitals.

Strengths of provision of health services in Africa after independence

(a) Provision of free health services; enable many Africans to get health services they really needed.

(b) None Africans have now been trained to take charge of health sector in their particular countries medical doctors, nurses and other caregivers were trained. These enable individual countries to have their own expert therefore reduced dependency on expatriate personnel.

(c) Provision of vaccines has enabled countries to eradicate many epidemic diseases existed in Africa for a long time such as polio and measles.

(d) Establishment of health practitioners training institutions including medical training centers and universities.

(e) Infant mortality has reduced dramatically in most African count vi. Alternative medicine has now been adopted in a number of African countries to tackle health

Objectives of provision of water services after independence

1. To improve provision of clean water and reliable to all citizens.
2. To provide clean and reliable water supplies to the citizens so as to improve the standard of living.
3. To improve sanitation level in the countries.
4. To provide more equitable distribution of infrastructures in the countries.
5. To ensure good health of citizens due to the availability of clean water

Success of provision of water services after independence

Some of the achievements in the provision of water services in Africa after independence are

a) Establishment of boreholes and dams so as to preserve water.

b) Private companies has been given licenses to provide clean bottled water so as to avoid it's citizens to drink unsafe water.

c) Water treatments plans have been established.

d) Infrastructures have been established many countries so as to ensure supply of water to citizens this includes provision of piped water

Weakness in the provision of health services in after independence

(a) Enough financial resources to provide health services was a problem to most countries.

(b) Poor planning and lack of resources has affected provision of infrastructure including clean water and transport.

(c) Due to failure to research on local traditional medicines has led African governments to spend many resources in buying medicines from other part of the world.

(d) Number of incurable diseases such as HIV and AID, Diabetes and Cancer also undermines medical services. Heart ailment has increased in Africa and has also contributed to the rising costs of providing health and medical services in the continent.

(e) Lack of enough well-trained personnel as many Africans as man Africans were neglected to be trained during the colonial period. In some African countries, a high level of corruption has led to the sale of government-funded medicines at a throw away to unscrupulosis business people. This caused great suffering among the population.

(f) International drug manufacturers promoted the Western Approach to medicines due to their self- interests. Africans were encouraged to use powdered milk for infants, although they cannot guarantee access to safe water.

CHANGES IN PROVISION OF WATER SERVICES IN AFRICA AFTER INDEPENDENCE

Availability of clean water in Africa cannot ignored due to its importance. In order to improve health care in the world clean water is very important. Good sanitation cannot be available in the absence of clean and reliable water supply

The objectives of the provision of housing services after independence

The following are some of the objectives of provision of housing services in Africa after independence.

a) To establish modern housing for Africans. The establishment of modern housing was due to the promises made by politicians during the struggle for independence thus helped to promote standards of living.

b) To promote sanitation for the benefit of the citizens. Majority of African citizen were ensured sanitation.

c) To eradicate racial discrimination, after independence the people of African were supposed to eradicate racial discrimination.

d) To promote better planning in urban centers in order to enhance development.

e) To provide enough accommodation spaces for the and do away with slums especially in urban centers.

The pattern of housing distribution after independence

The most of the patterns of housing distribution after independence were;

(i) The best houses have been located in urban centres, urban centers such as Dar es salaam, Harare, Mombasa as well as Nairobi.

(ii) European and Asian communities own the best houses. Although we got the political independence in the 1960's but most of the African communities occupy the poorly constructed houses.

(iii) There were increased of population in the urban centers, after independence the population was increased in the cities such as Dar es Salaam, Nairobi.

(iv) They used local materials to construct houses in the village (rural areas).

(v) The tall buildings mark the main urban centers such as the cities of sky's carpers

THE STEPS TAKEN TO CHANGE THE COLONIAL PATTERN OF DISTRIBUTION OF HOUSING AFTER INDEPENDENCE IN TANZANIA.

The following are some of the steps taken to change the colonial pattern of distribution of housing after independence

(a) The government controlled land allocation in the country. All free, hold land reverted to government ownership and previous owner were expected to pay rent to the government.

(b) The government used the control of building and land strategy so as to alleviate pressure on urban housing and community services. The government established the National Housing Corporation (NHC) whose mission was to provide housing needs through financing as well as other associated services in the country.

(c) The government of Tanzania did not have a systematic policy on how to deal with the challenges of urban growth. The African population in the urban centers growing rapidly rather than at the villages.

(d) The government of Tanzania emphasized on the need to make use of low – cost materials for construction purposes so as to provide housing for more people, rather than following international standards blindly

Challenges facing the provision of housing services after independence

There are some challenges facing the provision of housing services after independence such as;

(i) Lack of adequate human resources for instances there were few number of qualified town planners in the country who could help to plan and implement the desired programmes in most countries.

(ii) The increase in squatter settlements in most countries like Kenya and Tanzania after independence. This was mainly due to the fast rise in population expansion especially among the youth.

(iii) There was corruption and bias in funds allocation consequently, more taxpayer's money was used to fund establishment of better housing for the middle class in society and less funds were allocated for the housing of the poor.

(iv) Most beneficiaries of the new housing schemes were unable to pay their rents to the NHC there by under mining its efficiency in both Tanzania and Kenya.

(v) The bias in the implementation of the projects. This leading to the low income earners

getting disadvantages at the project implementation stage by giving priority to the middle -income earners.

NEO-COLONIALISM.

Background: Neo-Colonialism, Refers to the indirect control of the African nation by their former colonial masters socially, politically, and economically. This came about following the attainment of flag independence from the colonial masters. The colonial administrators took steps to ensure that the transfer of power would not jeopardize their economic interest.

One of the methods was to prepare ground for the creation of puppet leaders by involving leaders of national movement into colonial government. This ensured that emerging leaders were groomed to up hold the existing exploitative relations.

Secondly the process of handing over power ensured that neo colonial relation would follow independence as to grantee the economic interest of the former colonial master, the constitution was made and approved by the colonialists, they made sure that the western model of political authority was followed in the independent country, The strategic sectors were preserved to the colonial masters like Finance, and International relation. In fact, even in those fields that African was given responsibility the colonial did not vacant.

FORMS OF NEO-COLONIALISM.

Neo-colonialism has got four forms and it's through these forms African countries are controlled and exploited by their former colonial masters and other capitalist countries, like USA. In other words how neo colonialism operates, as to meet the interest of the imperialists.

ECONOMIC FORM

- Through massive investment by imperialist multi-corporations companies, as a way to exploit market area for investment and cheap labor of Africa e.g. such corporations include. Coca-Cola, Barclays Banks, Shell mining companies etc.

- Through controlling the World market by fixing price of African cash crops by keeping the prices low so that African remain dependant to their aid.

- To make Africa a damping place for cheap European manufactured goods, so that Africa remain dc-industrialize, and depend on them for consumer goods.

- Monopolizing technology by preventing Africans to engage into new technologies,
  e.g. EEC - ACP relation signed in 1976 between European Economic Community and African Caribbean and Pacific, prohibiting African nation to produce sensitive commodities that are produced by European nations.

- Through giving loans and grants under World Bank and IMF to Africans with very high interest rate and unrealistic conditions, this proves hard for African nations to pay back, that result into debt burden.
- Sending of European 'expatriates' to work in African countries for interests of their countries and then are given higher standard of living than the local people like high wages expensive accommodation, luxurious cars, which makes all the funds given as aid to be spent to the foreigner expatriates.

- Through international financial organs like IMF, W.B, IBRD, EU, GATT etc to make policies that enable them to continue exploiting the third World countries e.g. S.A.P.

POLITICAL FORMS.

- Through establishing relation with a ruling class and create a puppet leader, so that can be influenced according to their interest (the imperialist).
- Through political influence and ideology following the imperialist democracies like parliamentary system election and multi party system, under the influence of UN.
- Through propaganda of mass media making Africans to listen their radios like BBC, CNN, VOA, and D.W.
- Through planting and supporting puppet leaders who serve their interests e.g. Yoweri Museveni in Uganda J. Rawlings in Ghana.
- Over throwing communist oriented government and putting capitalist based government e.g. Zaire in case of Lumumba in l96O and Ghana in case of Nkrumah

IDEOLOGICAL METHODS.

- Through influence of films, books, and education syllabus where by the curriculum is developed by the agents of colonialist that it is European based to a big extent.
- Provision of scholarships to Africans to study abroad, in their countries.
- Brainwashing Africans' mind through ideological indoctrination.

MILITARY METHODS.

- Establishment of military bases e.g. USA has got 234 military base in 44 countries of Africa.
- To provide military assistance like weapons and instructors to train African military men.
- By conducting coup d'état in the case of stubborn leaders who are against their economic interests.

HOW AFRICAN COUNTRIES SHOULD DISENGAGE FROM NEO-COLONIALISM.

African countries can disengage from Ne-colonialism by doing the following;

a) By developing self-sustainable and self-reliance economies which may reduce the problem of dependence to the metro pole.

b) African should develop science and technology of their own, by encouraging science subjects in school and higher institutions, research must be conducted often to come out with new ideas, instead of depending foreign on technology.

c) African should encourage and strengthen the regional integration, which may increase their economic power and political dominance. E.g. EAC, SADC, ECO WAS, etc.

d) African countries should diversify their economies from monoculture to both industrial and agricultural sector, this will reduce over dependence of one sector, so that incase of the collapse of prices of one sector should not heavily affect the national economy

e) African should socialize and nationalize productive forces to reduce individual monopolies in economic and political power.

f) African should form democracy, transparence accountability in public offices to reduce the danger of corruption nepotism and embezzlement
g) To reject western interference in the political, economic and social affairs of African issues so as we develop an independent decisions and independent mind.
h) African should reject western standards like culture dressing foods etc because they only create market for European goods and make African damping place. This discourages the development of infant industries in the continent.
i) Avoid civil war and conflicts that bring about economic backwardness and concentrate on political solution to iron out internal dispute instead of applying

.....

TOPIC FOUR

AFRICA IN INTERNATIONAL AFFAIRS

CONTINENTAL COOPERATION: African countries worked together to solve political, social and economic problems which faced the continent after independence.

Origins of continental cooperation the origin of continental cooperation in Africa could be traced back to the pan- African movement, which refer to the unity of all people of African origin or descent. The word "pan" means 'together' or 'all' Africans refers to people, implying the unity of all people of black color

OBJECTIVES OF ESTABLISHMENT OF CONTINENTAL COOPERATION

Some of the objectives of establishing continental cooperation in Africa include

- To preserve political independence and freedom
- To fight against economic exploitation such as land alienations, poor wages and force labor.
- To unite all people of African origin in the struggle against polities oppression
- To challenge the ideology of European supremacy which undermines African political independence, economic stability and cultural civilization
- To protect African dignity
- To preserve African culture from destruction

African co-operation existed through the formation of various organization as shown below;

THE ORGANIZATION OF AFRICAN UNITY (O.A.U)

The organization of African unity was founded on 25' May 1963 in Addis Ababa Ethiopia by thirty- two heads of state of the independent African states the first chairman was Emperor Haile Sellasie of Ethiopia. This was inspired by pan- Africanist sentiment of bringing all people of African origin in both the Diaspora and Africa under a single organization, to fight and protect their rights.

Nkrumah one of the pioneers of African union and the founding father of Ghana was greatly influenced by his education in USA. he believed that the only way to achieve complete economic as well as political freedom from European domination was to create a powerful new 'United states of Africa' then through

continental wide cooperation, Africa would really take place on the world economic and political stage on terms o equality. In unity, Nkrumah saw strength, but in practical terms, his dream proved illusory.

OBJECTIVES OF O.A.U

- The primary aim of OAU was to promote African unity and solidarity as the only way forward to achieve complete economic as well as political freedom from other countries of the world, because unity and solidarity would make Africa a superpower among other countries.
- To co-ordinate and intensify the cooperation and the efforts of African states to achieve a better living of people of Africa and to help the speeding up of the decolonization in the rest of Africa.
- To defend the sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence of African states, one of the OAU principle states the acceptance of the principle of non-interference in internal affairs of member state.
- To eradicate all forms of colonialism in Africa and acts of slavery in the entire continent of Africa by promoting freedom and human rights to be given first priority.
- To promote international cooperation in accordance of the United Nations Organization and the universal declaration of human rights.

PRINCIPLES OF O.A.U

These were the guidelines, which had to be followed by the member states in order to achieve their goals and objectives;

(a) Non-interference in these domestic matters of this member states.

(b) The use of peaceful ways in finding out the solutions to conflicts and disputes between member states.

(c) To accept the movement of Non- Alignment of Afro Asian states.

(d) Respect the rights of status to exist as independent countries.

(e) Sovereign equality of all member states had to be respected by all members' countries.

(f) Condemn all political assassination and encouragement of people to oppose domestic dictatorship government

ACHIEVEMENTS OF O.A.U

a) It achieved to unite the diverse countries of Africa; this has been attained despite discrepancies in political ideology, levels of economic development, language colonial experience and vast geographical differences. There was of course disagreement between states and groups of states but its main aim was unity and OAU survived its first three decades with no permanent sprit.

b) It has achieved in providing a forum for discussing common problems of African states and offering solution like discrimination or apartheid, diseases and civil wars among others. Which to a big extent have been dealt with.

c) The regular meetings of ministers and heads of state have helped to generate greater awareness of other countries problem

d) OAU has also achieved in Liberation' of Africa from colonialism e.g. Zimbabwe, Angola, and Namibia, through the provision of moral and material support to .the nationalistic movements in various nations.

e) The African development bank, which grew out of the OAU in 1967, became an invaluable tool for mobilizing world finance for Africa development projects. The idea of coordinating and mobilizing international capital for the benefit of Africa was of particular value during the 1 970s and early 1 980s.

f) O.A.U has provided many African refugees with jobs and education, who came as a result of internal

conflicts in various African nations

g) The organization has taken measures to improve agriculture, industry, transport and communication trade and education cooperation in various countries.
h) The meeting of heads of states each year to discuss the problems and achievement of the continent is one of the achievements.
i) Many conflicts have been solved by the organization in the continent e.g. the war between Tanzania and Uganda 1978, Mali and Burkina Faso 1985, Kenya and Somalia 1970 etc.
j) OAU has encouraged Regional integration among is member states, such as ECOWAS 1975, SADC 1980, COMESA 1993, has its roots from O.AU.
k) OAU has achieved in acting as chief mediator between various African states to avoid the occurrence of bloodshed e.g. between Ethiopia and Eritrea.

PROBLEMS OF O. A. U

1. A member state decides individually and voluntarily to be the member of the organization and it could withdraw its membership at any time that it fills to do so, this weakens the strength of the organization e.g. Morocco is not a member.
2. Another big problem that faced OAU was that it had no legal sanction to enforce its resolutions. Member state could decide to refuse or ignore to implement the organizations decisions, that is why it has always been blamed for being little more than 'a talking-shop' with no serious implementation of her resolutions.
3. Lack of adequate funds it largely based on the annual contributions of member states Most of the member states delayed to pay or defaulted to pay their contributions, this made the organization to fail to run its activities.
4. Unequal development of the members of the organization caused by poverty, illiteracy, and unequal distribution o resources.
5. There are many refugees in Africa, which is the result of civil wars in many areas of the continent such as Burundi, D.RC, Sudan, Somalia, etc.
6. The continent is still poor depending on debts and loans from World Bank and I.M.F, with difficult conditionality to fulfill.
7. Differences in languages and religion, some societies are proud of their mother tongue; other countries are using English, others Arabic, French etc every state/tribe wants to use the language of her interest. There is tension between fundamentalist Muslims who want to apply Sharia law while Christians wants western system of democracy.
8. African countries are affected by natural disasters such as drought, floods, earthquake, A.I.D.S, etc these affects the welfare of the people.
9. Difference in ideology of the member states, head of states are unable to come together to discuss their problems.
10. Lack of a single currency to be used by all member states since it is not decided on to be used; this hinders trade activities in the continent.
11. Weak economic base of many of the member states most of the member state just had their independence from European imperialist nations; all are based on production of primary goods of agriculture products and minerals that fetched little prices.
12. Civil wars in the member states such as Sudan, Somalia and Sierra Leone killed many people in the member countries in 1990's.
13. Assassination of head of states in many countries for example Melchior Ndadaye of Burundi in 1993.

Through O.A.U succeeded, it had also failures, which include

(a) O.A.U failed to bring better and good standard of living among the Africans

(b) It failed to eradicate neo-colonial exploitation, which was practiced by the countries in Western European countries. After its formation Africa export to European markets continued to suffer from lower prices determined by big powers.

(c) It failed to solve political conflicts which normally led to this rise of civil war and overthrow the elected government for example Ghana when Dr. Kwame. Nkrumah in 1966.

(d) It failed prevent inter-state conflicts. There were conflicts over boundaries and eventually there were wars for example Tanzania and Uganda in 1978 and Kenya and Somalia in190's

Generally, despite its failures O.A.U existed for almost thirty-seven years. In the late 1990's Mr. Mwammar Ghadafi, Libyan head of state proposed to other member head of states to create a new organization, which could take necessary steps to eliminate problems, which were not solved by O.A.U. His proposal was taken positively and the members accepted to form A.U (African Union)

THE FORMATION OF AU (AFRICAN UNION)

AU is the organization of African countries which originally started by the declaration to the heads of states and Government of the O.A.U. to establish African Union on 9/9/1999. The Constitutive Act of the African Union was adopted and entered into force in 2000 at the Lome summit in Togo.

In 2001 the African countries putdown the plan for the implementation of the Union in Lusaka while in 2002 they held the first Assembly of the Heads of states of AU in Durban where Thabo Mbeki of South Africa became the 1st chairman. Its headquarters are in Addis-Ababa, Ethiopia

THE REASON WHICH LED TO THE RISE OF AU

The fulfillment of the basic O.A.U objectives led to the formation of AU. Formerly O.A.U. had succeeded to achieve such objectives like eradication of colonialism in Mozambique, Angola, Zimbabwe, and destruction of apartheid in South Africa. Then, the leaders realized that there was a need to create a new organization, which dealt with the social, economic and political problems in the rapid changing world in 1990's. During this time, Africa faced economic decline, unfavorable economic relationship with the developed nation and the rise of new political systems.

There was a need to make an organization to unite Africans against the problems from the situation, which prevailed at the moment.

Objectives /Goals of AU

African Union has so many objectives:

- To achieve greater unity and solidarity between the African countries and the people themselves.
- To defend the sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence of members.
- To accelerate or increase the political and socio-economic integration (unity) of the continent.
- To promote and defend African common positions on issues of interest to the continent and its people.
- To encourage international co-operation in line with the Charter of the United Nations and the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.
- To promote peace, security and stability in Africa.
- To promote democratic principles and institutions, popular participation and goods governance.
- To promote and protect human and peoples' rights in line with the African charter on Human and

Peoples' Rights and other relevant human rights instruments.

- To establish the necessary conditions which enable Africa to play its rightful role in the global or world economy through international negotiations.
- To promote sustainable development at the economic, social and cultural levels as well as the integration of economies.
- To promote co-operation in all fields of human activity to raise the living standard of African peoples.
- To coordinate and harmonize the policies between the existing and future Regional Economic communities and the gradual achievement o the objectives of AU.
- To enhance the development of the continent promoting research in all the fields especially Science and technology.
- To work with relevant international partners in the elimination of preventable disease and the promotion of health on the continent.

The Organs of the African Union

A.U has about 10 organs, which included:

(1) **The Assembly-** It is a supreme organ of the Union. It is composed of heads of states and Government. It has to meet at least once a year in ordinary session, at the request of any member state and on approval by a two-thirds majority of member states. It is headed by a chairman for a period of one year.

(2) **Its functions are:-**

- Determine the common policies of the Union.
- Receive, consider and take decision on reports and recommendations from the other organs of the Union.
- Consider requests for membership of the Union.
- Establish any organ of the Union.
- Monitor the implementation of policies and decisions of the Union as well as ensure compliance by all members.
- Adopt the budget of the Union.
- Give directives to the Executive council on the management of conflict war and restoration of peace.
- Appoint and terminate appointments of judges of the court of justice
- Appoint the Chairman of the commission and his or her deputy and the commissioners as well as determining their functions and terms of office.

(2) **The Executive Council** - It is composed by the ministers of Foreign Affairs or such other

Ministers as decided by Member states. The Executive Council meets twice a year in ordinary session. It also has to meet in extra ordinary session at the request of any member states and upon approval of 2/3 of all members.

3) T**he Pan - African Parliament** - It is established in order to provide a chance for full participation of African people in the development and economic integration of the continent. The first speaker has been Gertrude Mongella from Tanzania since 2004. Many officials will succeed the post from the members in future.

(4) **The African court of Justice-** when it is fully established the union will give its functions and -composition.

(5) **The commission** - It is the secretariat of the union. It is composed of the chairman, his deputies and the commissioners together with other staff. The Assembly is responsible to provide the functions and regulations of the commission. The current chairman of the commission is H.E. Alpha Oumar Konare of Mali.

(6) **The Permanent Representative Committee** - It is charged with the responsibility of preparing the work of Executive council. Facts also on the instructions of Executive council. It may set up sub-committee or groups as it sees necessary

(7) **The Specialized Technical Committees** - it includes:

- The committee on Rural Economy and Agricultural matters.
- The committee on Monetary and Financial Affairs.
- The committee on Trade, Customs and Immigration Matters.
- The committee on Industry, Science and Technology, Energy Natural Resources and
- Environment.
- The committee on Transport, Communications and Tourism.
- The committee on Labor, Health and Social Affairs.
- The committee on Education, Culture and Human resources. -

The Assembly has to restructure the existing committees and establish others. Ministers compose the body with competence of respective areas.

The functions of the committees are:

a) To prepare projects and programmes of the Union and submit it to the Executive council.
b) Ensure the supervision, follow-up and the evaluation of the implementation of decisions taken by organization of the union.
c) Coordinate the projects and programmes of the Union.
d) Submit reports and recommendations on the implementations of the Act of the Union to the Executive council.
e) Carry out other functions as assigned to any of the committees.
f) **(8) The Economic Social and Cultural Council** -This is an advisory organ which is made of professional groups of the member states. All its functions have to be given out by the Assembly.

(9) The Peace and Security Council -It is a body, which will deal with peacekeeping and conflicts settlements in the member states.

(10) **The Financial Institutions** -The Union intends to have the African central Bank, the Africa monetary fund and the African Investment Bank to provide financial help to its members.

PROBLEMS WHICH THREATEN FUTURE SUCCESS OF AU

a) Lack of fund —most of its member are poor nations. It does not get enough money to run its activities.
b) Civil war in countries such as Sierra Leone, Ivory Coast, Sudan, and Northern Uganda seem to keep these countries far from the goals of AU.
c) Corruption such as mismanagement of public money by the leader like former president of Zambia, Mr. Chiluba discourages good governance, which is one of the interests of AU.

d) Poor infrastructure such as roads, railways and waterways continued to weaken smooth transport of raw materials from productive areas to industries as well as transport of products from towns to the rural areas.
e) Epidemics such as HIV/AIDs kill skilled labor, which would have been used by AU to develop many sectors like agriculture, industries, fishing and tourism.
f) Unfavorable economic relationship between African countries and developed nations still makes African countries fall behind than what is required in economic and social development. They export products to world market and sell them at lower price, which in turn could not develop the AU members. All these problems threaten future success of AU.

THE BENEFITS OF AU TO TANZANIA

There are so many benefits, which will be acquired by Tanzania from being a member of AU. The

benefits include:

i. Tanzania would get an opportunity to unite with other African countries to solve political conflicts peacefully in several African states and the country will use AU to discuss for the presence of good relationship between Africa, Europe and U.S.A.
ii. Tanzania will make friendship with other African countries through the joint activities and programmes in social and economic sectors. This condition would reduce the number of countries, which might have intended to act as enemies of Tanzania on the continent.
iii. Tanzania will get new ideas and information that will be used to solve many problems, which exist in agriculture, industry and the 1ea4Th sectors. They will be obtained from various meetings and workshops attended by the leaders of the government.
iv. The financial institutions such as the African central bank and the African investment bank obviously would provide money as loans and grants to Tanzania. The money would be used by the country to develop agricultural production, science and technology, transport and education.
v. Tanzania gains territorial dignity through participation in the military operations

AFRICAN REGIONAL COOPERATION

The need for regional cooperation in Africa, like elsewhere in the world arose from the need to tackle political, social and economic needs of the people.

This regional approach was found more beneficial given that this people in one region are likely to work more closely together due to geographical, historical and cultural advantages. Among the regional grouping existing in Africa, include the east African community (EAC) COMESA, ECOWAS and SADC.

EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY (E.A.C)

BACKGROUND. It was founded on 6th June 1967; the government of Tanganyika, Kenya and, Uganda signed a treaty in Kampala Uganda. Its history goes back to 1923 when the governor of Tanganyika, Kenya, and Uganda formed the East African Governors Conference to facilitate the cooperation. In 1948 it changed to East Africa high Commission, in 1961 the East Africa common services organization was established. Arusha became the head quarters in the community in Tanzania.

AIMS OF THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY

- To promote free trade in goods and services produced among the members.
- To provide common services such as railways, harbors, posts and telecommunication.
- To provide wider and more secure market for industrial and agricultural goods
- To allow free movement of people in the region for trade recreation and other social activities.
- To achieve technological innovation and advancement.
- To conduct research activities in agriculture, population, medicine and mining for its development.
- It aims at solving region problems jointly by the heads of the member states

- **PROBLEMS OF E.A.C**

The problem of the distribution of different services, the distribution was more beneficial to Kenya than Uganda and Tanzania.

a) Border conflicts e.g. between Tanzania and Uganda during ldd Amin.
b) The ideological disparity between the three countries, Tanzania self-reliance and socialism, Kenya

capitalist ideology, Uganda during Idd Amin fascism.

c) Uneven distribution of the community cake, Kenya took a lion share at the expense of Uganda and Tanzania.
d) The organization had its roots from colonial period nothing changed fundamentally that Britain went on benefiting through Kenya.
e) The East African Bank failed a balance development of industries in the three countries Kenya benefited more than Tanzania and Uganda in income tax and custom duties.
f) Currency differences the governments' restricted free transfer and exchange of currency. This discourages interstate transactions in goods.
g) The community experienced great losses and debts.
h) The failure of the member country to contribute the agreed annual fees

Achievements of EAC The first East African Community had the following achievement:

(i) It put the East African countries on a course of cooperation when these countries worked together on areas like post, telecommunication and railways.

(ii) It provided a chance for political leaders to discuss economic and political issues of their region.

(iii) Free movement of people, for example Kenyans and Ugandans could move easily to Tanzania.

(iv) Provision of funds to the members of state. This was possible through the East African Bank, which was made by the EAC. For example, Tanzania managed to produce aluminium sheet, assemble radio and make motor vehicles tyres and tubes. - Uganda managed to manufacture bicycles and nitrogenous fertilizers. - Kenya made electric bulbs from the capital given by the bank

The collapse of EAC

(a) The East African Community existed for a period of ten years. It collapsed in 1977 and revived in 2000 there were several reasons to its collapse, they includes.

(b) Difference in ideologies. Tanzania used socialism and self-reliance in which the government controlled all means of production in the national economy while Kenya and Uganda were mainly based on capitalism, which allowed the existence of private owned economy, hence they could not work together.

(c) Higher growth of Kenyan economy over Tanzania and Uganda, Kenya had many industries and business companies, either member felt they could be exploited.

(d) Absence of common currency. It made it difficultly for people to fully not buy good and serves in Uganda and Kenya because their currency was not accepted.

(e) Misunderstanding between the late presidents for example Julius K. Nyerere and Idd Amin of Uganda. Nyerere did not like to work with Amin after overthrowing Milton Obote in 1971.

(f) Shortage of fund among the East African government. The member states were less development National which could not have financial requirements for community programmes.

(g) All these reasons contributed to the collapse of the first EAC in 1977. Today the new EAC might not grow stronger because of similar ideological practices among the countries. It is implemented on 7th, July 2000.

THE PRINCIPLES OF THE NEW EAC

The principles of the New EAC are guidelines, which must be followed by the community members in realizing their goals or objectives. They include-

(a) Mutual trust between the people of EAC states

(b) Peaceful co-existence and good neighborliness

(c) Peaceful settlement of disputes

(d) Good governance, acceptance of principles of democracy, rule of law and respect for social justice

(e) Co- operation for equal mutual benefit among the member states.

The goals/objective of the new EAC

The objective refers to the desire ends, which will be achieved by the members. The objectives includes;

(a) Establishment of a monetary union

(b) Establishment of a common market in which there services and information technology

(c) Formation of the East African Federation

(d) To promote peace, Security and stability within the region and good neighborliness

(e) To develop policies and programmes aimed at wide ring co-operation in polities, economic social defense and judicial matter for the benefit of the postures state

(f) To promote sustainable and balanced growth and development among the members

(g) To promote the role of women in socio-economic development

(h) Achieve equitable economic development and higher standard of living for the people of Africa.

THE SOUTHERN ARICAN DEVELOPMENT COMMUNITY -S.A.D.C.

It was formed as the replacement of Southern African Development coordination Conference-SADCC formed in April I980. It was in 1993 when it was changed to SADC, with headquarters in Gaborone, Botswana. Currently SADC has a total of 15 members. The member states include Angola, Botswana, Democratic Republic of Congo, Madagascar, Seychelles, Mozambique and Tanzania. Other members are Lesotho, Malawi, Namibia, Mauritius, Swaziland, South Africa, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

OBJECTIVES SADC

. To harness resources in the region for the benefit of all member states

2. To promote economic growth and standards of living of the member states

3. To promote environmental protection and utilization of resources

4. To promote peace and security among member states

5. To promote sustainable development through cooperation among the member states

6. To consolidate the age-old social, cultural and historical sites existing among the region

7. To enhance economic development by promoting transport and communications in the region.

PROBLEMS/ CHALLENGES EXPERIENCED BY SADC MEMBER STATES.

- Weak financial base, members rely on foreign aid and loan.
- Members produce similar agricultural goods such as coffee, sisal, tobacco which compete for market.
- All members depend on agriculture rather than industries, when the price of agricultural commodities fluctuates which leads to low earnings.
- Lack of qualified and skilled labor to run the organization, they depend on foreign experts.
- Unequal distribution of the benefits of the association discourages other states.

- Every member tries to cater her national interest first rather than those of SADC
- South Africa is seen as domineering over other member states due to her strong economy this causes a lot of anxiety to some countries.
- Political instability some of the member states experienced political instability, which has interfered with the organization operations e.g. Democratic Republic Congo.
- Differences in political ideology- e.g. Tanzania and Angola capitalism, others capitalism

Achievements of the SADC

The achievements of the SADC are:-

9. Enhancement of security in the region. For example establishment of Ecomog in the Western part of Africa.
10. Promotion of democracy and rule of law among the member states
11. SADC has facilitated the development of infrastructure among the members states, for example roads, harbor, railways etc
12. Promotion of agriculture among the member states agreed in a treaty signed in 1995
13. Member state were able to consult on matters that affect the region using SADC as the main forum
14. Sharing of water resources in the region. This was agreed in a treaty signed in 1995.

THE COMMON MARKET FOR EAST AND CENTRAL AFRICA (COMESA)

Before 1993 COMESA was known as the Preferential Trade Area for Eastern and Southern Africa- P.T.A. The heads of member states met in Kampala Uganda on 61h November 1993 and signed a treaty, which created COMESA. A member of COMESA includes Kenya, Uganda, Tanzania, Rwanda, Burundi, Malawi, Zimbabwe, Lesotho Botswana, Swaziland, Mauritius, Comoro, Djibouti, Ethiopia Somalia and South Africa.

OBJECTIVES OF COMESA

- Promoting and facilitating cooperation among member countries in trade, trade, transport and communication.
- Harmonizing and coordinating development strategies, policies and plans within the region, it encourages cooperation in monetary and financial affairs in order to facilitate sub regional integration.
- It aims at establishing joint industrial and agricultural institution to raise the production capacity.
- It aims at reducing and eventually eliminating tariffs among members in order to facilitate trade
- It encourages economic independence of the region by establishing strong economic base

- **ACHIVEMENT OF COMESA**

  Member states have become more cooperative in the field of trade of trade, industry and agriculture. The organization has also established a bank known as the trade and development bank situated in Bujumbura Burundi, which finances trade and development projects.

  PROBLEMS OF COMESA

- Different levels of development of member states
- Poor transport shipping facilities and communication links
- Existence of too many currencies in the region
- Weak economic base of member states i.e. dependency economies
- Civil wars, natural calamities and neo colonialism

The Reasons, Which Made Tanzania, Withdraw From COMESA:

- As shown earlier Tanzania withdrew from COMESA in 2002. There are various reasons, which made this country move out of the organization.
- Firstly, Tanzania was discouraged by political conflicts in Zimbabwe and Civil war in Sudan, Ethiopia and Somalia. She realized there could not be effective economic co-operation with the members, which had these problems now.
- Secondly, the country wanted to maximize her efforts in some organizations like East African Community, which was formed in early 2000s'. The government could not be able to unite fully with other EAC if she was still a member in many other organizations.
- Thirdly, Tanzania withdrew from COMESA because she was avoiding duplication of regional co-operation. The country learnt that there were no new benefits the people could get from COMESA. Most of the benefits were similar with those, which were gained, from SADC and EAC.
- Fourthly, financial contributions to various economic organizations became a burden on the government expenditure. The country could not be able to collect and spend money in many organizations like SADC, EAC, AU and COMESA. Withdrawal from COMESA was a way to reduce financial cost on regional co-operation
- Fifthly, Tanzania moved out of COMESA as a way to protect its industrial development from other COMESA members such as Kenya, South Africa and Zimbabwe. This country still lagged behind in industries. She feared that those countries could use many opportunities in regional co-operation to export manufactured goods, which could compete against the products from Tanzania industries. Thus, she withdrew to protect domestic industries and their markets.

All the points given above could explain the possible reasons, which made Tanzania, move out of COMESA in 2002

THE ECONOMIC COMMUNITY OF WEST AFRICAN STATES (ECOWAS)

ECOWAS is an organization, which was formed by English, French and Portuguese speaking countries West Africa under the Treaty of Lome on 28th May 1975 to bring unity for economic development in fields such as industries, transport, telecommunication, energy, agriculture monetary and commerce

Its members.

It has about 16 members such as Burkinafaso, Benin, Gambia, Ivory Coast, Ghana, Cape Verde, Nigeria, and Guinea cannonry, Senegal, Guinea Bissau, Togo, Mali, Liberia, Sierra Leone, Niger, Nigeria and Cameroon

AIMS OF ECOWAS.

(i) ECOWAS aimed at removing barriers and allowing free movement of people services and capital for the development of the member states.

(ii) It aims at developing industries, agriculture and mining by using good and applicable policies.

(iii) To remove custom duties between the members states to as to make West Africa a free trade area

ACHIEVEMENTS OF ECOWAS

(a) It brought unity among West African states by printing conditions in which two different countries could carry out joint projects such as food and transport cooperation between Nigeria and Niger after 1975.

(b) ECOWAS formed a military force known as ECOMO the force helped to defeat a military regime which over the forced helped to defeat a military regime which over the force helped to defeat a military regime which over the force helped to defeat a military regime which over thrown civilian government in Sierra Leone in 1990's

(c) It set up a fund in 1986 by getting loan from financial institutions in Western Europe and America. The

fund improved agriculture, industries, transport and telecommunication in 1929.

(d) It made the movement of people between the member states easier since 1979. The member states agreed to eliminate obstacles, which prevented people from moving for various activities in the summit held in dalcar, Senegal.

(e) It provided a winder market for the member states commodities.

(f) The organization has managed to set energy resource development fund for oil mining industry in the region.

(g) There have been agriculture and communication development of the whole part of the region this has been through special fund to develop the projects and through joint ventures between members.

a) **PROBLEMS OF ECOWAS.**

i) Each member wants to benefit more than the other members of the community according to their interests do.

ii) Political instability affects member states, there have been civil wars and coup d'état in 'the region e.g. Nigeria, Sierra Leon, Liberia, Ivory Coast etc.

iii) Poor communication network system in many parts of the region hinders organization activities to all places

iv) Language differences, other members are using English others French, this causes communication barrier between members.

v) Lack of a single currency creates the problem of the rate of exchange between the member states.

vi) The problem of members to have a membership in more than one organization, all the organization have demands in terms of contributions i.e. it is difficult to contribute membership to all the organizations due to poverty.

vii) Poor infrastructure such as roads still exists in many West African States. This situation hinders easy movement of goods, services and labor.

viii) . Bilateral and triple cooperation, which began before the formulation of ECOWAS, appear as obstacle to the realization of its objectives. For example Liberia and Sierra Leone had mano River project in 1973 to work in joint economic development, Senegal, Mali and Mauritania started the organization for the Development of the Senegal river to construct dams since 1973

ix) Some of the member states failed to remit contributions to the organization as required, and this make the running of the organization very difficult

x) Some of the smaller economics among the member states find the immerse military and economic power of major economies such as Nigeria overwhelming.

xi) Ideological differences especially between the capitalist countries and socialist countries. For example cote d'ivore under Felix Houphout – Boigny-capitalist and Burkinafaso under under Thomas Sankara- socialist

xii) Border quarrels for example Nigeria and Cameroon had to go to international court in the Hague for arbitration over the ownership of the Bakazi Region.

xiii) x. Foreign interference in the affairs of the member state. For instance, the stationing of French troops in Cote d'ivoire since the 1960's which made the neighboring states including Guinea very uncompromising.

xiv) xi. The vast geographic region makes it difficult for affairs of the organization to be coordinated well.

AFRICA IN THE WORLD INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

The world international organizations are referred as co-operation between the countries, which exist in the world between various continents. This sub-topic intends to examine the origin objectives and the way African countries have joined and benefited from the world international organizations popularly mentioned as the United Nations, Common wealth of Nations, the French Community and Non —Aligned Movement (NAM).

Most of African states gained political independence in the 1960's long after, most of the global organizations like United Nations had been established, thus nevertheless played an important role in Global affairs.

OBJECTIVES OF PARTICIPATING IN INTERNATIONAL AFFAIR

The following are some of the objectives of Africa participating in international affairs

(a) To show solidarity with other states of the world especially during emergencies

(b) To give the continent a forum through which thus could discuss the continental affairs

(c) Increased participation in the United Nations General Assembly meant that Africans would henceforth receive more international attention than was the case before.

(d) To demonstrate their sovereignty through participation in global affairs

(e) To enhance Africa's development for example the participation in the common wealth of Nations intended to develop Africa though English – speaking states that are more developed.

(f) African participation in Non-Aligned Movement was to put the continent in a strategic situation in the struggle for between the Eastern and the Western block during the cold War.

Similarly, the French community was meant to coordinate cooperation of the francophone and their former colonial masters

UNITED NATIONS (UN)

United Nation (UN) is an organization of the world independent countries, which was formed to promote and maintain international peace and security after the failure of the League of Nations in the prevention of the rise of the Second World War of 1939-1945.

The representatives of 50 countries in San Francisco USA on 26th June - 1945, originally drew the charter of the formation of UN. However, the representatives made the charter based on the ideas and proposal given out by the delegates from China, USSR, UK and U.S.A in 1944. After its formation, Poland immediately signed the charter and became one of the original 51 member states of the UN.

The UN officially came into existence on 24th October —1945 when the charter was formally approved by China, France, the Soviet Union (USSR) UK (Britain) and USA and by a majority of other countries. Its headquarters today are in New York USA and the United Nations day is always celebrated on 24thOctober each year.

Objectives of United Nations

Objectives of UN are all the desired ends, which UN intends to achieve as the members work together as world independent states. Objectives are:

- Maintain peace and security internationally.
- Develop friendly relations among nations.
- Encourage international co-operation in solving economic, social, political and humanitarian problems.
- Promote international respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms.

❖ UN becomes a center for harmonizing the actions of nations in attainment the objectives

The Principles of UN

The principles are guidelines of UN as it works to achieve its goals. The principles are:

- All its member states are sovereign and equal.
- All its members have to fulfill in good faith the charter obligations
- All its member countries have to solve international conflicts peacefully without jeopardizing peace, security and justice.
- Members must avoid the threat or use of force against other states.
- Members should provide any help in the action it takes.
- Members should not give help to any nation being under punitive measures.
- Non-members have to act according to these principles in order to maintain world peace and security.
- UN should not interfere in internal matters of any nation:

The Organs of UN

There are important organs through which UN performs its duties such organs include.

(f) **The UN General Assembly:** - This is an organ made by all member states. All member states always have one vote regardless of size and powers. Decisions on issues require two thirds of members' votes. It functions are: Recommends on the world peace, security, disarmament and regulation of armament discuss any matter, which endangers peace and security. Elects non-Permanent members of Security Council and Judge of International court of justice jointly with the Security Council. The latest UN General Assembly took place in September, 2004, in New York, U.S.A

b) **Secretariat** — it is an organ, which is headquartered in New York, USA. It contains international civil servants under the leadership of the General Secretary who is appointed by the General Assembly based on recommendations by the Security Council.

There have been several General Secretaries since the creation of this organ. These officials by their names included:

- Trygve Lief of Norway from 1946-1952.
- Dag Hammarskjold of Sweden from 1953-1 961.
- UThantMyanmar (Burma) 1961-1971.
- Kurt Waldheim of Austria from 1972-1981.
- Javier de Perez de Cuellar of Peru from 1982-1991.
- Boutros Boutros -Ghali of Egypt from 1992-1996.
- Kofi Anan of Ghana from 1997-2006
- Ban Ki-Moon of South Korea from 2007 to the present until the appointment of new secretary.

The Secretariat carries out important functions such as:

- It administers peacekeeping operations in many countries, which have wars and conflicts.
- It implements the decisions of the General Assembly and the Security Council.
- Informs the world's communications media about the work of United Nations.

- It mediates international disputes.
- Interprets speeches and translate documents into the UN's official languages.
- It draws annual budget of the UN

b) **The Security** - It an organ, which makes decisions that, bind all other UN members. Before 1963 the council had only eleven members of which 6 members were elected by the General Assembly for two years terms and there are also five permanent members.
After 1963 the number of members increased to fifteen including the permanent members such as Britain, USA, France, USSR and China and Ten Non-Permanent members continued to be elected for two years terms.
The UN Secretary Council has a veto vote in which all the decisions cannot be passed unless all five permanent members approve the decisions. When any permanent member casts a "No" vote the decision automatically, get blocked. This situation creates dissatisfaction among other members; today they demand more enlargement of the permanent membership seat so as to include many countries from Africa, Asia, and Latin America in deciding matters of the UN. They also recommend the elimination of veto, which is used to defend the interests of few people.

The functions of UN Security Council are:

- Maintain international peace and security in line with the principles and purposes of the United Nations.
- To investigate any conflict or situation which can lead to international war
- To formulate plans for the establishment of a system to regulate armament.
- To persuade members of UN to fix sanctions on the aggressive states.
- Takes military actions against the aggressors.
- Recommends the admission of new members.
- Recommends the appointment of the secretary - General to the UN General Assembly.
- Works with the General Assembly to elect the judges of International court of Justice.

c) **International court of Justice**- This is a court of 15 judges who are elected by the General Assembly and Security Council. It has headquarters at Hague, Netherlands. Its judges are elected for 9 years. The court normally deals with all matters of the UN charter. However, the decisions only advise the General Assembly and the Security Council.

d) **Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)** - It is an organ which works through UN specialized agencies and other autonomous bodies in the UN system. It promotes high standard of living, economic and social development as well as respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms.

There are several UN specialized agencies under ECOSOC. Some of those institutions include:

1. FAQ - (Food and Agriculture organization) was founded in Quebec, Canada on 16th October, 1945
2. ILO- (International Labor organization) - It was firstly formed under the Treaty of Versailles in 1919. It allied with UN as specialized agency to rise up the living standard of the workers.
3. UNESCO - (The UN International Children and Education Fund). It was founded in December1946 to provide care for children.
4. WHO - (The World Health organization). It was founded on seventh – April-1947 as autonomous organization to improve health for all people in the world. Its head office is in Paris, France. It has worked under ECOSOC to eliminate health problems in the world.
5. UNHCR - (The UN High Commission for Refugees). It started in 1951 to help people who are forcefully shifting their nations as refugees.
6. UNCTAD - (The Conference on Trade and Development). It began on 20th December, 1994 to promote international trade
7. UNDP - (The UN Development Programme it was formed in 1965

8. UNIDO - (The UN Industrial Development Organization) it was made in 1967 to promote industries.
9. GATT - (General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade) it was made in order to make the developed world fix lower tariffs and fair prices of products from developing countries.
10. Trusteeship Council -It was an organ, which was formed in 1945 to supervise the administration of the Trust territories .taken from the Mandate status of the League of Nations .The aim of the trusteeship council, was to prepare the trust territories such as Tanganyika, Rwanda Burundi and Namibia for their self- government and independence. The council was allowed to examine and discuss the reports from the administering authority on the political, social and economic progress of people in the territories. The members of the council were, all. Five permanent members of the Security Council such as China, France, Russia, United Kingdom and U.S.A. The council suspended its duties on 1st, November 1994 when Palau, the last remaining trust territory achieved independence on 1St November-1994.

The Achievements of UN

Since the creation of UN there have been several achievement reached by this organization. They included:

a) UN has assisted many countries in the struggle for independence. Many countries, which are members of UN, were helped by the organization in the elimination of colonialism. UN worked tirelessly in ending apartheid in South Africa. It put economic sanctions, arms embargo to the white regime. The United Nations General Assembly even called apartheid a crime against humanity. All these efforts led to the elections in April 1994 in which African people got a chance to participate on equal terms with the whites and followed by the formation of a majority government.

b) Though UN has proved failure in maintaining peace in many parts of the world, it has attempted to make peace by negotiating many peaceful settlements, which ended regional disputes. For example, the UN succeeded to end Iran - Iraq war, the withdrawal of soviet from Afghanistan and an end of civil war in El Salvador.

c) UN has tried to promote development of people in the member states. For instance, the United Nations Development programmes (UNDP) and other agencies of UN carries out projects for agriculture, industry, education and environment. It is said that UNDP supports more than 5000 projects with a budget of $ 1.3 billion. UNICEF spends more than $.800 million a year on immunization, health care, nutrition and basic education in 138 countries. In areas where these projects exist, they lower poverty levels.

d) The United Nations has been able to provide humanitarian aid to the victims of conflict in Sudan, Somalia and other states. There so many refugees who receive aid from the UN High commissioner for Refugees since 1951. It eliminates scourges of war or conflicts from the Africans.

PROBLEMS FACING THE UNITED NATIONS

United Nations faces many problems in its daily activities. The most significant problems include:

a) Non-compliance of UN decisions is a problem. Some members especially developed countries like USA and Britain sometimes do not comply with the decisions, which prevent these countries from taking action against the other states. For instance, UN disapproved US invasion of Iraq but the USA and Britain could not respect the decisions. They invaded Iraq in 2003.

b) UN's veto among the five permanent members of the Security Council hinders just decisions and course of action. When one of its members cast a veto vote, all the decisions get blocked. This has been used by the big powers to serve their own interests as opposed to the general interests of the members.

c) There have been inter-states and civil wars among the members. For example, the war between Tanzania and Uganda in 1979 destroyed many properties. Civil wars have occurred in Rwanda in 1994, Liberia in 1997 and Southern Sudan for a long period. Many people have lost their life.
d) Though the UN give humanitarian aid to improve the living standards of people, the organization still has mainly third world countries, which suffer from poverty, which endangers peace and security in the world.

BENEFITS OF UNITED NATIONS TO AFRICAN STATES

1. African states benefit from being members of the United Nations. The benefits, which can be, shown below are:
2. Many African states, which do not have enough food for their people in some parts of their countries, receive food aid from the World Food Programme (WFP) of the UN. This assistance has been given to the people in Somalia and Sudan.
3. African states normally attempt to improve health standards of their people through vaccination services, which are conducted by the World Health Organization under the United Nations. In the present UNAIDS gives fund to fight against HIV/AIDS in African states.

4. African states receive financial help from UNDP to invest in sectors of education and water services.

5. The UN Security Council always sends forces to keep peace, order and end violence in areas, which have civil wars. For example, UN peacekeeping forces have been sent to Liberia and Democratic Republic of Congo to keep peace in these countries between 1995 and 2005.

6. UNO provides a platform to African states to air out their grievances against the mistreatments, which are done over the people by the developed world. It can be used to influence policies of big powers to Africa.

Conclusion: The United Nations is very important organization for the countries in the world. However, it provides aid to African states and other countries outside Africa many member states complain against the UN. They see it as an organization, which mainly works in favor of USA and European countries. UN has been found to take very slow action to solve problems in Africa. It neglected the civil war in Rwanda where about 800 000 people were killed by the rebels in 1994. Even the General Secretary, Kofi Anan admitted that UN had no active measures to end civil war in Rwanda.

It normally carries out quick actions to end the crises in European countries. It cannot be effective organization unless the UN treats all its members equally and conducts its functions fairly in all its organs.

COMMON WEALTH OF NATIONS

Common Wealth of Nations is a voluntary association of independent sovereign states mostly formed by the UK (Britain) and its former colonies. The members of common wealth recognize Queen Elizabeth II as the head of the common wealth.

It's Origin. The Common wealth originated from the Imperial Conference of the late 1920's which recognized the colonies, which had self-government within the British Empire. Such colonies were Canada, Australia and New Zealand. They were considered as equal in status with Britain. In 1931, Britain made a statute of West Minster to establish Common wealth as an association of free and equal states and membership based on common allegiance to the British Crown. Many countries joined after Independence though many think it is after British imperialism.

Its Principles

- The principles were given out by the Declaration of Commonwealth in the summit held in Singapore in 1972.The principles are:
- They believe and accept that peace and order are essential to the security and success of humankind.
- They put beliefs in liberty of individuals and equal rights for all people.
- Recognize discrimination as an evil in the member countries.
- Oppose all forms of colonial exploitation and discrimination in the members.
- They believe absence of equality in wealth create social tensions. Therefore, they are committed to development and improve the living standard.
- Attain free flow of international trade for all countries.
- Promote international co-operation and tolerance.
- Maintain the security of each member from foreign aggression.
- Promote the exchange of knowledge, ideas on education, culture, economic and legal matters.

It's Organs. Common Wealth has 4 organs including:

a) **The Secretariat-** It was made in 1965. It has been based in London. Secretary General elected by heads of the government heads it. Since it started, secretaries such as have headed it: Arnold Smith, Shadrack Raphael, Emeka Anyaouku from Nigeria and Don Mackinnon, from New Zealand in 2004.
The secretariat is the main body far the exchange of information among the members and solving various problems. It functions through several branches such as:
International Affairs —, which deals with matters like democratic practices in many countries.
Economic Affairs Division - which is concerned with trade, finance, and industrializing the members.
Science and technology -It tries to promote rural technology and energy.
Food production and rural development.
Export market Development — helps less developed nations to secure markets and improve their goods.
Arts and sports—deals with regular performance of the dancers from all members of Common Wealth in London. It also organizes all Common wealth Games.

Education - members co-operate in areas like teacher training and book production.

The common Wealth fund for technical co-operation provides fund to train personnel in sectors like agriculture and transport.
Others are Youth, Health, Law and Information.

b) **Common wealth heads of Government Meeting** — it contains presidents or prime ministers. They meet for a week after every two years to discuss political problems and economic affairs. Then establish consensus on various matters.

c) **Ministerial Meeting**- It is composed of ministers of member states. They meet to consult on issues. The foreign ministers meet before heads of state. Ministers of Finance meet annually. Ministers of Education Health and law also meet to discuss matters of co-operation.

d) **High Commissioners**-they work as ambassadors to countries they are posted.

Members of common wealth

Many ex-British colonies are members with exception of Mozambique which was ruled by the Portuguese but joined Common wealth in 1995. Zimbabwe was firstly suspended in 2002 over concerns with unfair elections and land reform policies of Robert Mugabe's ZANU — PF. The Government of Zimbabwe left completely in 2003 after Britain Australia and other members condemned its policies. United States,

Egypt and Israel do not show interest in joining the common wealth in spite of being ex-British colonies.

Most of the members share similar culture such as the use of English language, the common law system and wigged judges in courts. British system of administration and driving on the left side of the roads. Currently there are 59 members in the world.

The Benefits of Common Wealth to Tanzania

a) Tanzania expands markets and sources of foreign currency because normally members charge low tariff on the export from common wealth.
b) It provides a chance to Tanzania to join international forums for discussion of social, economic and political problems.
c) Tanzania gets aid and services of the division of the secretariat of Common wealth. For example economic affairs division deals with industrial problems in Tanzania while common wealth Youth programmes help to train some youth leaders and officials in Community development.
d) Tanzania sportsmen, women, and those who participate in different games get a chance to promote their talents by participating in common wealth games. They can also get some money for their own life.

Problems in the Common Wealth

- Some problems are facing common wealth countries. These problems include:
- Civil war in Sierra Leone in 2000 led to the loss of lives. The war still made it impossible for Sierra Leone to unite with others against political, social and economic problems.
- Poverty especially in African and Asian states create situations in which majority the people cannot get adequate income education, water and health services.
- Britain's domination over other members has prevailed since the creation of Common Wealth. Britain has had much power in making decision and determining major actions by the members. All the members conduct their ways of life according to the British culture; former colonial master.
- Poor leadership has existed in many member countries. Many leaders especially in Africa tend to mismanage the economy of their nations by using the national income for their private personal gains. An example of such leaders is Mr. Chiluba the ex-president of Zambia was accused of the misuse of money during his rule.
- Multiple memberships among the member states such as Tanzania have membership in SADC, EAC and AU. Members like Tanzania can stressfully participate in this organization.

NON - ALIGNED MOVEMENT (NAM): It was a movement, which was mainly formed by Afro-Asian states and Yugoslavia in order to protect themselves against any exploitation, oppression and pressure from either the capitalist camp led by USA or socialist camp led by USSR during the cold war and any other imperialist nations after 1945. NAM officially started under Tito to as the chairperson in 1961 in Belgrade, Yugoslavia after efforts, which had been made in Bandung, Indonesia in 1955 expressing the need for unity between Afro -Asian states.

Its Objectives or Goals

- Promote economic balance between developed and developing nations.
- Oppose any policy, which violates human rights and self-awareness of all over the world.
- Oppose segregation or discrimination based on race.
- Solve conflicts peacefully between nations.
- Oppose military alliances and pacts such as NATO and Warsaw Pact led by U.S.S.R
- Oppose establishments of foreign military base in the third world countries.

In September 1998, NAM members had XII summit in Durban, South Africa. In this summit, they seem to have added new objectives to the original objectives. They introduced those objectives because they experienced new problems such as terrorism, famine, AIDS, poverty, environmental destruction, changing world from two to single super power and globalization in which the rich countries require the weak nations to open boundaries for foreign investments.

The new objectives included:

- Emancipation of women and respect for the rights of people such as children, Elders and disable persons.
- Creation of jobs and increase of education, health and water for the people.
- Eliminate corruption, and promote good governance in member countries.
- Co-operate in order to remove the burden of debts on developing countries.
- Maintain peace in the members and oppose terrorism in the world.

The Principles of NAM

- Attain solidarity and oppose all actions, which endanger independence.
- All members have the right to participate in international relations on equal basis.
- Members have to give support to the efforts of disarmament.
- Work together with regional organizations such as SADC, COMESA, and ECOWAS.

Problems of NAM

- It had members, which still abused human rights for example in Uganda under Idd Amin in 1970's many people was killed.
- Poor economy among the members still exists to the present.
- Civil war in many countries such as Pakistan and Indian weakened unity between the members.
- Un-equal terms of trade between the members and the developed nations in the world market. Developing nations normally sell their products at low prices.

Benefits of NAM to the Members

- They secure larger markets for products from agriculture and industries.
- They were able to make neutral decisions, which were not imposed by U.S.A. or USSR.
- It helped the members to reduce dependence on western capitalist nations.
- It united the developing nations in the struggle against any mistreatment from powerful nations during the period of world war.
- It helped some nations such as Namibia to get her independence from the Boers.

Conclusion: Though NAM was formed by the states to protect themselves against the super powers and other imperialist nations, the movement is still needed at this moment where the U.S.A acts as a super power of the world. The states face many problems such as unequal terms of trade with big countries, poverty, low level of technology and production in agriculture. They have to unite ad press for equal terms of trade and assist each other in technology, industries and bring social services to the people in their countries. Changes which can be made in the organization is the name 'Non-Aligned Movement because in the matter of fact its members today are aligned with the policies of U.S.A. and western European countries.

Even the period before the late 1980's many of the NAM members were allied to the socialist camp at the same time tried to practice non-alliance. However, the situation today is worse because all members are openly linked with USA-policies. They do not have to call themselves Non-Aligned countries.

SAMPLE QUESTION

1. *Examine eight challenges of Non Aligned Movement (Necta, 2011, Q no. 8)*

HOW TO ANSWER HISTORY ESSAY QUESTIONS

When answering history essay type questions you should adhere to the following procedures;

1. Read the asked questions thoroughly so that you can detect what exactly the said questions demand. In order to know exactly what the demand of the question try to observe the terminologies used in the question.
2. Make a recall on the points necessary in answering the given questions.
3. Start writing your essay by providing introduction: Normally, an introduction should clearly define the key words, giving periodisation, as well as other relevant issues based on the asked questions.
4. Then, create a coherent (linking) words/statement in order to draw attention to the one who will be reading your essay.
5. Put your points at the beginning of every paragraph; never hide your points by putting it at the middle of your paragraph. Normally the given point has to be well explained followed by relevant and plausible examples basing on the asked question.
6. Create a relevant conclusion, when concluding avoids making repetition of the given points, you should give your general comment/judgment. Most of the students fail to score in this part since they provide conclusion, which do not qualify in academic writing.
7. Make sure that you maintain tidiness and cleanliness by having good handwriting, using simple and well grammatical English so that your work can be more attractive to anyone who sees it.
8. Be precise in choosing the right question. Sometimes a question carries two sides for example, a candidate may be asked to discuss the causes and effects of First World War. In this regard, the allocation of marks will base on causes and effects thus do not put much focus on only one side rather both. Alternatively, if there are other questions that you may opt it is potential to skip a question that has two sides and instead attempt a question that direct ask a candidate to produce only points basing on one side example, Explain the roles of agents of colonialism to the colonization of Africa.
   To enable your competences in writing good and scholarly essays, read the given sample essays to guide you.

1. Analyze six characteristic features of first non-exploitative mode of production

Communalism refers to as the first mode of production, which was non-exploitative in nature. It implied the communal ownership of major means of production by all members. Each specific group was assigned communal works to perform according to their age, size and capabilities. It was mainly practiced by societies like Tindiga, Hadzabe and Dorobo. The following are the characteristics of the communal mode of production.
It was characterized by communal ownership of major means of production. This is because all major means of production in terms of land and labor were owned and controlled by the whole society, additionally, there was no private ownership of major means of production and the products obtained were equally divided to all members in society.

Production relations was based on cooperation as there was no exploitation of man by many people cooperated during production without allocating specific task to individual person and the product obtained especially out from the harvest or hunting exercise was further equally shared by all members.

It was characterized by low level of development of productive forces such as tools (hoe and axes) developed to be used in production was so poor (crude), this forced them to perform subsistence agriculture in which production is only meant for food source and surplus if present is sold.

It was characterized by low level of development of political institutions such as political institution by this time like armies were hardly developed, there was no any army or court that was prepared but for the case of emergency the whole clan or communal area would have to go into war to their interests.

Societies lived in small kingship according to the blood relations. This was seen through clan expansion in a small area as people lived basing on the relationship existed.

Generally, communalism did not last for long time because of the social changes that occurred, the increased in population and need for surplus production was few factor to mention that spearheaded the need to change mode of production to slavery mode of production, which was indeed exploitative in nature.

2. Elaborate six techniques used by colonialists to obtain laborers during the colonial period

Colonial labor refers to the labor that was employed (used) by the colonialists in various colonial sectors for instance in mining, agriculture, industries and even in the whole process of building/ construction of infra structures like, roads, railways, and office work. The colonialists made use of African laborer deliberately as it was difficult and expensive to get labor from Europe in thus colonialists had to think on how they could meet this challenge African laborers became a solution to this phenomena as colonialists exploited heavily their energy by paying them how wages. The notable techniques used by colonialists to get laborers during colonial period were as follows;

They imposed different taxes to the Africans; this was because colonial government imposed poll, cattle and head taxes to Africans. The introduced taxes were to be paid in cash and it was difficult for the Africans to get cash needed to meet the introduced taxes Africans were eventually forced to sell their laborer power to the white settlers' plantations and mines order get cash for paying tax.

Colonialists passed legislation (laws) that aimed to force Africans work for them. Good example in 1920's the British colonial government passed Master servant land act popularly known as Kipande system in Kenya in which Africans in Kenya were forced to work in settlers' farms for a certain agreed number of days (90 -180 days) per year and there was a special identification card (Kipande) which mark the a completion of assigned task.

Colonialists Introduced foreign goods especially luxurious items in terms of clothes, food staffs and ornaments. Africans being made a market for European manufactured goods from Europe made up from African raw materials it later motivated them to provide their labor power so that they can have access to possess these finished European goods.

Colonialists introduced land alienation and this was manifested with Master ordinance land act of 1915 especially in Kenya in which the British colonial government forced Africans to surrender all best land to the white settlers and who ever went against this law could be severely punished by being sentenced to prison, in course of time Africans remained landless. This act brought much consequence to Africans having been removed from their area,

which were fertile, and being squeezed into unfertile (marginalized) area, they started living by depending on their labor power especially by working to the whites to earn a living. (for survive).

Colonialists created labor reserves centers (regionalism). This was because some area were made to act as a source of their labor for instance Kigoma, Ruvuma, Rukwa and Dodoma were made to produce labor where as Morogoro, Tanga and parts of Kilimanjaro were for plantations, similarly, in Uganda especially northern region was made to provide their labor. This enabled the colonialists to have access in getting needed laborers who would in turn work in their farms.

They destroyed the Africans economies such as industries and replaced with European imported goods. In so doing African self-sufficient economy like barter trade that in a sense enabled them to have equal exchange of goods among Africans particularly for their immediate consumption (demands) like food later European destroyed it and introduced system of money economies forced all transactions (buying of goods) to be done through cash bases this forced Africans work in colonial plantations as a solution of getting money.

Briefly, African laborers were extremely undermined by the colonialists as seen on how African laborers were poorly fed, accommodated and lowly paid. Besides, the act of utilizing African laborers during colonial period can be counted as the root cause for the underdevelopment of African continent because Africans economies lacked needed laborers to work for them.

3. Elaborate six roles of agents of colonialism to the colonization of African continent.

Colonialism refers to the process whereby one powerful nation dominates the weaker nations in all aspects of life that is socially, politically as well as economically. This was very much common due to the imperialist nations like Britain, France, Belgium and Italy dominating the African colonies during the 19th C. Colonialism was facilitated by the agents of colonialism of which were the ones of whom persuaded/penetrated the rise of colonization in the African continent. This involved the explorers like David Livingstone, John Speke, Mungo Park, and Missionaries like Dr. Living Stone, Ludwing Kraft and John Rebman. Also the Merchants like William Mackinnon under IBEACO (Imperial British East African Company), Cecil Rhodes under BSAC (British South African Company), and George Goldie under Royal Niger Company, all with the aim of causing colonization.

The following were the contributions of the agents of colonialism to the colonization of Africa.

They abolished slave trade (1873); this was the strategy of the imperialist nations due the industrial revolution in their nations. In this way, missionaries were sent to African continent to remove the slavery and slave trade. In addition, some of the British abolitionists like Moresby (1822), Harmeton (1845) and also Barrle feere (1873). This was to concertize their interests of coming in Africa and colonizing it easily by the imperialists.

They signed bogus treaties; this involved the work done by the explorers and some of the traders/merchants in many parts of Africa. This was to encourage the officialization of the resources like land from the chiefs, for example, Karlpeeters of GEACO (Germany East African Company) made a bogus treaty with sultan Mangungo of Msowero, and Cecil Rhodes of BSACO (British South African Company) made a bogus treaty with chief Lubengula of Ndebele in Southern Rhodesia.

They exposed the hinterland of (interior) to the external world; this involved the collection of the various information from the African continent towards their mother countries. Explorers of whom they sent sensitive information of land scenery mainly did this. For example, John Speke went back in his mother country with the information about source of river Nile of which was Lake Victoria, David Living Stone discovered the Victoria Falls (Zambia).

They spread Christianity, this was the role played by the missionaries in the African colonies so as to allow the prevention of colonialism. It was through the civilization of the Africans towards imperialists' colonization for example, Dr. Ludwing Kraph formed the Crus at Rabai mpya at Mombasa in 1844. In addition, there were several church societies like the Holy Ghost fathers, London Missionary society, UMOA and white fathers.

They introduced cash crop production; the missionaries in the African colonies mainly did this by putting more emphasis on cash crop production like the coffee, cocoa, sisal, tea and tobacco, these were the raw materials for the imperialists, as they would come to the African areas to colonize for imperialistic interests. For example, the missionaries in Ghana motivated much on the cocoa production as the raw materials.

They sent important information to their mother countries this involved the sending information of the strategic areas towards the imperialists. The explorers did this and also some traders from companies for example, De Braze of Congo of whom was working for King Leopold II of Belgium, Cecil Rhodes in Southern Rhodesia under B.S.A.Co, George Goldie of Royal Niger Company in the Niger Delta potentiality.

Generally, the agents of colonialism led to the occupation of African continent towards the imperialists during the 19th C. this is whereby it was after the Berlin conference of 1884-1885. The evils of colonialism were the effective exploitation of the African resources, destruction of the African culture and also the inferior of African race.

4. **Examine any six reasons as to why Mandika resistance took long time than any other resistance in Africa.**

Colonialism refers to the situation whereby developed nations like France, Britain and France control or rule another weak country in social, economic and political affairs. Colonialism started during the 19th C due to the development of capitalism in its monopoly stage. On the other hand, Mandika resistance was a type of African resistance against the establishment of French rule in Guinea. Samoure Toure led the movement from 1891 to 1898. The following are the reasons as to why Mandika resistance took long time;

They had strong army called "sofa" that were well drilled and disciplined, so, they developed their efforts to fight against the French encroachment from 1891-1898.

They had an efficient system of calling up the reserves who then calves underwent annual military training. Each time the number of soldiers could be decreased in the battle while others would be called to fill the gap and confront the French.

They already had an efficient trade network of getting fire ours from the coast, even from French trades. He used such weapons to fight against the French. Samoure Toure also opened up his Owen armories, which not only repaired his weapons but also manufactured effective copies of them.

They used good military technique that is scorched earth policy. As the army fought the soldiers burnt all the crops on the way of the French they could not have food for their troops. This eventually weakened French soldiers since they faced with hunger and starvation.

The Mandika people had a very efficient administration of his empire so that when he was defeated in the battle he could move the headquarters without too much destruction for example; he moved his whole empire eastwards to a completely new area in the face of French successes. The French could not capture Samoure Toure easily. He held off French advances while he rebuilt his empire.

The use of guerilla was tactics helped Samoure Toure and his people so much. His soldiers did not only confront the soldiers in open battle but also crushed them bunch which his troops known much better that the French army.

Generally, the French army defeated Samoure Toure and his people since they used the modern weapons than that

of Mandika people, the emergence of natural disaster, which affected the Mandika people, and other weaknesses that faced Mandika people fueled to their defeat.

5. Inherited problems from colonial past are major hindrances to the development of African countries. Justify this statement.

Development is a gradual change from low to higher stage. Imperialists mostly colonized African countries for quite long. The colonialists only aimed at exploiting African wealth such as minerals and raw materials such as ivory, gold, iron, cotton and wax. In this way, the colonialists left Africans with number of problems that now become hindrances to African development. The following are some inherited problems from colonial legacy.

Poverty and unstable among African countries is among the challenges facing most African countries right from the attainment of independence in a sense that colonialists heavily exploited Africans to the point of remaining extremely poor and thus live in bad conditions. In addition to that, Africans still live by depending on foreign countries led by Britain, USA and the like. This has become an obstacle to the development of the continent because Africans cannot decide on their own matters, majority also still living under dollar they cannot afford meeting a balanced diet and other social demands.

Poor social service is another challenge mostly encountered African countries right from the independence. This is because during the colonial era colonialists posed it purposely and unevenly depending on the site of colonial economy like plantations and mines, however, these services were poorly provided. The education given to Africans meant to train few Africans who could serve for the colonial interests as messengers, clerks and teachers. This situation made it difficult to get well-trained African personnel who would work for their favor. Besides, the health services provided by then were poor.

This trend still facing many African countries despite the attainment of their independence because transport system is indeed poor, hospitals still lack experts worse still Africans' education still of European curricular.

Gender imbalance is another problem facing African countries to development. This has its roots right from colonial social services where education was provided basing on gender lines. Equally important, after independence women still remaining in backwardness as they are less regarded and majority regard them terrible comparing to men.

In Tanzania for example, many women are only responsible for family taking care rather than contributing in national building. Imbalances in gender have been acting as a barrier to development of a given nation in Africa.

Ignorance and illiteracy is among the stumbling factor to the development of African continent. This is because most people in Africa are un educated and the root cause of this phenomena emanated from colonial era where few especially sons of chiefs had access to education. This trend has in turn created a big gap among Africans where the educated among Africans exploit no-educated class causing chaos and mistrust among them.

New-colonialism as a situation in which an independent country becomes less free in deciding her own matter in terms of resources (both human and materials) utilization is a critical problem that hinders the development of African countries because mostly, Africans still depending on donors from developed countries through being granted aids and grants this in turn creates the exploitation our valuable resources particularly minerals and raw materials due to the fact that the prices for our produce are determined by foreigners, also the exchange of money is un fair and unevenly to Africans. More than those African leaders are being remote by foreigners in leading their countries. In this case whatever decided by African leaders aim at meeting foreign interests.

To bring to a close the above discussion it may be concluded that African countries have been employing several accounts aiming to mitigate the problems that impinge them particularly the declaration policies like Ujamaa and self-reliance in Tanzania. Others decide to establish campaign for national buildings like Harambee in Kenya as well as humanism in Zambia

are few examples to mention in this regard. In addition, they have keenly involved in regional groupings like COMESA, ECOWAS, SADC, EAC and the likes. All these have been aiming at maintaining African development.

6. Appraise six roles played by the colonial state to support Settler agriculture in Kenya

Settler agriculture was a type of colonial agriculture established by Europeans who came to settle in Africa and later they engaged in production of raw materials. It was much developed in Kenya and Zimbabwe where it was characterized by land alienation, existence of taxation, forced labor, low wages as well as existence of monoculture.

The following are the central arguments on the roles played by the colonial state to support settler agriculture in Kenya.

The settlers were given improved social services like education, health services and water supply. This was done as the way to motivate the white settlers to engage in production of raw materials like cotton, sisal, rubber which were indeed needed as raw materials in capitalist's industries from Europe.

The colonial government ensured constant supply of labors to the setter farms. To this, accomplish this, the colonial government introduced land alienation, forced labor and taxation. For instance, Kipande system, low wages were put in place in order to encourage the natives to provide labor in their farms.

The colonial government exempted (excluded) the white settler from paying taxes. This was to encourage settler production where setter was not allowed to pay any kind of tax. This was deliberately reserved to Africans who were forceful to pay it.

The colonial government did not allow the natives to grow cash crops. This was because the colonial government wanted to avoid market cooperation between Africans and white settlers. In addition, they wanted to ensure availability of labor in settler farms.

The colonial government provided subsides during drastic climatic change. The white's settlers were given soft loans, fertilizers and pesticide so as to encourage them to engage in production of raw-materials such as cotton, sisal and coffee which were highly needed so as to solve the industrial needs in Europe.

The colonial government introduced and improved the introduction of modern infrastructures such as railways and roads, which passed through the white settler farms. The whites later on used these infrastructures as a means to

transport their crops to the coast ready for export of raw materials and labor.

To sum up the settler agriculture in Kenya has both positive and negative impact in Kenya. This is because, issues like introduction and improvement of modern infrastructures like railways, improvement in provision of social services, intensive exploitation forced labor and low wages.

7. Examine six contributions of welfare associations to the rise of nationalism in Africa.

African nationalism refers to the political desire of Africans to unite as the nation so as to eliminate the foreign rule with the intention of ruling themselves in social, political and economic affairs. The movement gained momentum after the Second World War due to the internal pressure such as the role played by African elites like Nelson Mandela who championed for the decolonization of African country, intensive colonial exploitation. Apart from internal influence, there were external factors as supported by the role played by ex-soldiers, the role-played United Nations Organization (U.N.O. Welfare associations were the workers associations which formed by the African who were employed in various colonial economic sectors like mining industries and plantations. Examples of welfare association formed by Africans were Tanganyika African Association (TAA) and Kenya African Association (KAA).

The role played by welfare associations to the rise of nationalism in Africa were as follows;

They opposed racial discrimination, which was practiced by Europeans. The formation of welfare associations such as Tanganyika African Association started to oppose the racial discrimination hence this action raised self-awareness to Africans, thus they started to demand for their lost independence from the colonial government.

They created foundation for education. This was because the formation of welfare associations demanded the Africans to get access to education so as to oppose the use of African chiefs as the puppets during the system of indirect rule. They wanted their posts to be run by elected Africans hence it raised African nationalism so as to demand their lost independence.

They showed the evils of colonialism to their fellow Africans such as force labor, raised discrimination, low wages and land alienation. These factors created the rise of self-awareness to Africans and they saw the need of uniting so as to oppose the colonial government. from the point is where the Africans started to demand for their lost independence from the colonial government.

They facilitated the formation of political parties. This was as the way of uniting all Africans regardless of their job, religion or color in order to achieve this situation is where most of this welfare associations changed to political parties for instance, the Tanganyika African Association changed to Tanganyika Africans Nationalist Union (TANU), which enabled the attainment of independence on 9th December 1961.

They exposed Africans political feelings to the colonialist. Through this way is where colonialist discovered the needs of Africans towards achieving their major roles. Again, these factors created self-awareness to Africans hence they started to force various as the way to demand for their majority rule.

Most of welfare associations opposed colonial intensive exploitation. For example, peasant co-operatives disliked low prices of cash crops, the workers associations demanded high salaries and opposed low wages.

Generally, welfare associations contributed greatly to the attainment of African independence after the change of these associations to political parties for instance the change from Tanganyika African Association (TAA) to Tanganyika African National Union (TANU) a political party that spearheaded the attainment of the independence in Tanganyika due to its effort to cement a solid unity among the Africans.

8. Why did Ethiopians managed to defeat foreign encroachment and give any six (6) reasons for the success of Ethiopia.

Answers:

Ethiopia resistance was a type of African resistance against the establishment of colonial rule in Ethiopia. Menelik II led the resistance from 1986 over the Italians. The Ethiopian leader was able to unite his people by encouraging strong unity and solidarity so as to fight against the Italian in order to preserve their culture and protect their trading interest. They aimed at promoting social political and economic development of their country.

The following are the central arguments as to why Ethiopians managed to defeat foreign encroachment and access their resistance;

The geographical advantage. This factors influenced greatly to the success of Ethiopian resistance since the country consists of mountainous great valleys, semi desert which hindered penetration of Italians.

The existence of strong unity and solidarity motivated the success of Ethiopian resistance since it enables them to have the common goal to fight against the Italians. The strong unity and solidarity was influenced by the spread of Christian religion to many Ethiopians hence, they were able to fight against the Italians.

The emergence of strong and outstanding leadership of Menelik II. The presence of strong leadership motivated the success of Ethiopian's resistance since he was able to encourage strong unity and solidarity also he could encourage the people to fight against the Italians. He was also able to organize his people on their way to fight the Italians.

The existence of strong standing army, which contributed to the success of Ethiopian resistance since it, managed to defeat the Italian's army.

Italy was still poor and weak nations, this factor motivated the success of Ethiopians resistance since they were not capable to fight against the Ethiopians because of being economically weak. This in turn made them to have poor organization to defeat the Africans.

Menelik II adopted military weapons and fighting tactics from other European nations such as Britain, Russia and Portugal who in turn encouraged and motivated the Ethiopians to fight against the Italians.

Generally it may be concluded that, although Ethiopians were succeeded to defeat the Italians encroachment still they were badly affected by the war taking into account that they faced economic stagnation, death, massive destruction of social and physical infrastructure like roads and health services.

9. Account for the challenges that were faced by the traders in the Trans-Saharan trade.

Trans-Saharan trade was the trade, which was conducted across the Saharan desert between the people of North Africa and West Africa. It also includes the people around Mediterranean Sea Arabs from Asia. The trade started during the 8th century and developed in 10th century after introduction of camels.

In connection to the main body, the following are the central argument on the challenges that were faced by the traders in the Trans-Saharan trade.

The introduction of Christian religion in West Africa societies. The introduction of direction religion led to the emergence of religions conflict among the Muslims and Christians. The situation resulted into the emergence of political unrest among the West Africa societies, which resulted into the decline of Trans-Saharan trade.

The introduction of slave trade by the European. Slave traders. This factor caused the transportation of slave who

was taken to America to work in mines and plantation such as sisal and coffee. This situation caused the emergence of depopulation to the decline of Trans-Saharan Trade.

The introduction of European manufactured goods. The introduction such as clothes, beads and alcohol discouraged market for Trans-Saharan Trade as their products lacked market. In addition, it created fear and insecurity to trade. This was much influenced by the coming of European traders who were capturing the African traders hence the Trans-Saharan trade was no longer developed.

Fall of Western Sudanic States like Mali, Ghana and Songhai. These were trading centers for Trans-Saharan Trade and the source of market for the commodities from North Africa. Hence the trade was no longer developed.

The introduction of Triangular Slave Trade, this was because, the Triangular trade changed its direction of trade routes instead of going to North Africa the trade route changed to European, this made Trans-Saharan trade to collapse.

Despite its decline, Trans-Saharan Trade contributed greatly to the availability of strong armies due to the presence of guns from the Arabs. However, more importantly, cities like Gao, Timbuktu grew steadily because of high population, which acted as a catalyst for the state formation.

10. Why did centralized states developed in interlacustrine region and not in arid areas?

A state means the political unit with the centralize power to provide necessary services like security needed by the people as well as collecting taxes. Interlacustrine regions fares to the areas around Lake Victoria. Basically, in interlacustrine region there was for motion of centralized states like Karagwe, Buganda and Bunyoro, which were influenced by geographical setting to the area. The formation of these states was due to the influence of pre-colonial societies to create social, political and economic development.

The following are the central arguments on the reasons as to why centralized states developed in interlacustrine region and not in arid areas.

Development of agricultural activities like bananas, maize. This was the one of the factor that facilitated the formation of centralized state in intercustrine regions since the agriculture was developed as these areas received high amount of rainfall throughout the year compared to semi arid areas, which has a tendency of receiving low amount of rainfall in this case arid areas did not support agricultural development.

The emergency of large population influenced agriculture, which went hand in hand with the emergence of surplus population. The emergence of large population facilitated the emergence of centralized states in interlacustrine region since the population provided labor in production activities as well as acted as market contrary to arid areas, which tend to have low population due to poor production.

The emergence and development of trade especially long-distance trade. This was a contributing factor for the development of centralized states in intercustrine region since the trade facilitated the growth of population, which is contrary to semi arid region where the trade was not developed.

The emergence of good geographical location especially equatorial region. The regions around Lake Victoria had a tendency of receiving high amount of rainfall throughout the year, which is unlike to semi- arid region. Due to this reason, it contributed greatly to the emergence of centralized states to the intercustrine region since the geographical location encouraged population growth, which in a sense promoted the development of agriculture as well as development of of trade within these regions.

The presence of strong leadership like Rumanyika. The emergence of strong leaders like Rumanyika, Kabaka

Mutesa motivated the formation of centralized states since they were able to encourage unity and solidarity among the people, which is contrary to semi-arid region.

Generally, the emergence and development of centralized states in intercustrine region verify (signifies) the development of political system in pre-colonial African societies as the European claimed that there was no development of any kind before the advent of colonialism which is not historically fact.

SECTION C (60 Marks) (NECTA 2015)

Answer **three (3)** questions from this section.

5. Explain six characteristics of the first non¬exploitative mode of production.
6. Elaborate six techniques used by colonialists to obtain labourers during the colonial period.
7. Analyse the problems experienced during the struggle for independence in Tanganyika.
8. Discuss six contributions of the agents of colonialism to the colonization of Africa.
9. With examples show how the establishment of colonial economy affected the African societies. (Give six points).
10. Inherited problems from colonial past are major hindrances to the development of Africa after independence. Justify this statement by giving six points.

SECTION C (60 Marks) NECTA 2014

Answer **three (3)** questions from this section.

1. Explain six effects of the pre-colonial contacts between the people of Africa and Asia.
2. Elaborate six reasons, which made the Boers to escape to escape the Southern African Cape between1830 and 1850.
3. Analyze six methods that were used by the imperialists in imposing colonial rule in Africa.
4. How did the First World War affect the East African colonies? Give six points to support your answer.
5. Examine six factors, which enabled Tanganyika to attain her independence earlier than Kenya.
6. "Migrant laborers were very useful to the capitalists during colonial economy in Africa." Substantiate this statement by giving six points.